



# School Standards and Framework Act 1998

## 1998 CHAPTER 31

An Act to make new provision with respect to school education and the provision of nursery education otherwise than at school; to enable arrangements to be made for the provision of further education for young persons partly at schools and partly at further education institutions; to make provision with respect to the Education Assets Board; and for connected purposes. [24th July 1998]

Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

### Extent Information

**E1** Act: amendments and repeals are coextensive with the enactments affected, see [s. 145\(8\)](#).

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Act modified (1.10.1998) (temp.) by [S.I. 1998/2248, reg.2](#)
- C2** Act amended (1.9.1998) by [S.I. 1998/1973, reg. 3\(6\)](#)
- C3** Certain functions transferred (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/672, art. 2\(1\), Sch.1.](#)
- C4** Act extended (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/704, regs.11, 12, 16, 17, 19.](#)
- C5** Act excluded (26.5.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1287, reg. 5\(2\).](#)
- C6** Powers to delegate certain functions restricted (Wales) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2242, reg. 42\(1\)-\(5\)](#)
- C7** Act: Certain functions of a local education authority made exercisable by authorised persons (E.) (1.4.2002) by [Contracting Out \(Local Education Authority Functions\) \(England\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/928\), art. 3, Sch. 2](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART I

### MEASURES TO RAISE STANDARDS OF SCHOOL EDUCATION

#### CHAPTER I

##### LIMIT ON INFANT CLASS SIZES

### 1 Duty to set limit on infant class sizes.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall by regulations—
  - (a) impose a limit on class sizes for infant classes at maintained schools; and
  - (b) specify the school years in relation to which any such limit is to have effect.
- (2) Any limit imposed under this section shall specify the maximum number of pupils that a class to which the limit applies may contain while an ordinary teaching session is conducted by a single qualified teacher.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), regulations under this section shall be so framed that—
  - (a) the maximum number specified in pursuance of subsection (2) is 30, and
  - (b) that limit has effect in relation to the 2001-02 school year and any subsequent year.
- (4) Regulations under this section may—
  - (a) provide for any limit imposed under this section to take effect—
    - (i) at the same time in the case of each of the age groups into which the pupils in infant classes fall, or
    - (ii) at different times (which may be earlier than the beginning of the school year mentioned in subsection (3)) in the case of different such age groups;
  - (b) provide that, in any circumstances specified in the regulations, any such limit either is not to apply or is to operate in such manner as is so specified.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order amend subsection (3)—
  - (a) by substituting for “30” such other number as is specified in the order; or
  - (b) by substituting for the reference to the 2001-02 school year a reference to such other school year as is so specified.
- (6) Where any limit imposed under this section applies to an infant class at a maintained school, the local education authority and the governing body shall exercise their functions with a view to securing that that limit is complied with in relation to that class.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C8** S. 1 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.  
 S. 1 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 2 Plans by LEAs for reducing infant class sizes.

- (1) Every local education authority shall prepare a statement setting out the arrangements which the authority propose to make for the purpose of securing that any limit imposed under section 1 is complied with in relation to infant classes at schools maintained by the authority.
- (2) The statement shall—
  - (a) contain such information as to the proposed arrangements, and
  - (b) take such form,as may be prescribed; and in preparing the statement the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) In the course of preparing the statement the authority shall carry out such consultation as may be prescribed.
- (4) A prescribed body or person, or a body or person falling within any prescribed category, shall provide the authority—
  - (a) with such documents or information, or
  - (b) with such other assistance,as the authority may reasonably request from that body or person for the purpose of enabling them to prepare the statement.
- (5) The authority shall submit the statement to the Secretary of State for his approval—
  - (a) by such date as may be prescribed, or
  - (b) by such later date as he may allow, where he is satisfied that it is reasonable to do so in view of any particular circumstances relating to the authority;and different dates may be prescribed for different authorities.
- (6) If the Secretary of State decides not to approve the authority's proposed arrangements—
  - (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision and of his reasons for it; and
  - (b) the authority shall prepare a revised statement under this section in respect of their proposed arrangements.
- (7) Where the authority are required by subsection (6) to prepare a revised statement, the preceding provisions of this section shall apply to it as they applied to the original statement, except that—
  - (a) in preparing the revised statement the authority shall have regard to the Secretary of State's reasons for not approving their original proposals; and
  - (b) the revised statement shall be submitted to the Secretary of State by such date as he may determine.
- (8) In subsection (4) "document" includes information recorded otherwise than in legible form, and the reference to the provision of a document is, in the case of information so recorded, a reference to the provision of a copy of that information in legible form.

---

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C9 S. 2 modified (1.9.1998)(temp.) by S.I. 1998/1968, reg.2

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### 3 Payment of grant in connection with reductions in infant class sizes.

- (1) Regulations shall make provision for the payment by the Secretary of State of grants to local education authorities in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them for the purpose of securing that any limit imposed under section 1 is complied with in relation to infant classes at schools maintained by them.
- (2) Regulations under this section shall provide for the Secretary of State—
  - (a) to withhold grants under the regulations from a local education authority where no proposed arrangements by that authority have been approved by him under section 2; and
  - (b) when determining whether any grant (and, if so, what amount) should be paid by him under the regulations to a local education authority, to have regard to their proposed arrangements as so approved.
- (3) Regulations under this section may provide—
  - (a) for the payment of grant under the regulations to be dependent on the fulfilment of such conditions as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations, and
  - (b) for requiring local education authorities to whom payments have been made under the regulations to comply with such requirements as may be so determined.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C10** S. 3 modified (1.9.1998) (*temp.*) by [S.I. 1998/1968, reg.2](#)

### 4 Interpretation of Chapter I.

In this Chapter—

“class” means a group in which pupils are taught in an ordinary teaching session;

“infant class” means a class containing pupils the majority of whom will attain the age of five, six or seven during the course of the school year;

“ordinary teaching session” does not include a school assembly or other school activity usually conducted with large groups of pupils;

“qualified teacher”, in relation to an infant class, means—

- (a) a person who is a qualified teacher in relation to that class for the purposes of section 218(1)(a) of the <sup>M1</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (regulations relating to teachers’ qualifications, etc.), or
- (b) any other person who in accordance with regulations under that provision may be employed as a teacher of that class.

#### Marginal Citations

**M1** 1988 c. 40.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER II

### GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES OF LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITIES

#### *Duty to promote high standards of education*

#### **5 Duty of LEAs to promote high standards in primary and secondary education.**

After section 13 of the <sup>M2</sup>Education Act 1996, there shall be inserted—

##### **“13A Duty to promote high standards in primary and secondary education.**

- (1) A local education authority shall ensure that their functions relating to the provision of education to which this section applies are (so far as they are capable of being so exercised) exercised by the authority with a view to promoting high standards.
- (2) This section applies to education for—
  - (a) persons of compulsory school age (whether at school or otherwise); and
  - (b) persons of any age above or below that age who are registered as pupils at schools maintained by the authority;and in subsection (1) “functions” means functions of whatever nature.”

#### **Marginal Citations**

M2 1996 c. 56.

#### *Education development plans*

#### **6 Preparation of education development plans.**

- (1) Every local education authority shall prepare an education development plan for their area, and shall prepare further such plans at such intervals as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations.
- (2) An education development plan shall consist of—
  - (a) a statement of proposals, which sets out proposals by the authority for developing their provision of education for children in their area, whether by—
    - (i) raising the standards of education provided for such children (whether at schools maintained by the authority or otherwise than at school), or
    - (ii) improving the performance of such schools,or otherwise; and
  - (b) annexes to that statement.
- (3) In subsection (2) “children” means—
  - (a) persons of compulsory school age (whether at school or otherwise), or
  - (b) persons of any age above or below that age who are registered as pupils at schools maintained by the authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The statement of proposals must—
  - (a) deal with such matters, and relate to such period, as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations, and
  - (b) be approved by the Secretary of State under section 7.
- (5) The annexes to the statement—
  - (a) must contain such material as may be prescribed; and
  - (b) may contain such other material as the authority consider relevant to their proposals as set out in the statement.
- (6) In preparing an education development plan the authority shall have regard, in particular, to the education of children (within the meaning of subsection (2)) who have special educational needs.
- (7) In the course of preparing an education development plan the authority shall consult—
  - (a) the governing body and head teacher of every school maintained by the authority;
  - (b) the appropriate diocesan authority for any foundation or voluntary school in their area which is a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school; and
  - (c) such other persons as they consider appropriate.
- (8) In its operation at any time before the appointed day (as defined by section 20(7)), subsection (7)(a) above shall be read as referring also to the governing body of every grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school situated in the authority's area.
- (9) In performing their functions under this section the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C11 S. 6(2)(a)(i)(3)(b) modified (12.1.1999) by [S.I. 1998/3217](#), [art.2](#)

## 7 Approval, modification and review of statement of proposals.

- (1) Where a local education authority have prepared an education development plan in accordance with section 6, they shall, by such date as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations, submit the plan to the Secretary of State for him to approve the authority's statement of proposals under this section.
- (2) The Secretary of State may in the case of any statement submitted to him under this section—
  - (a) approve the statement in any of the following ways, namely wholly or in part, for a limited period of time, or subject to conditions;
  - (b) require the authority to make such modifications to the statement as he may specify; or
  - (c) reject the statement.
- (3) If the Secretary of State approves the statement—
  - (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the authority shall implement the proposals set out in the statement, so far as approved by the Secretary of State, as from such date as he may determine.
- (4) If the Secretary of State requires the authority to make modifications or rejects the statement—
- (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision and of his reasons for it, and
  - (b) the authority shall prepare a revised statement and submit it to the Secretary of State for his approval under this section by such date as he may determine.
- (5) Once the Secretary of State has approved an authority's statement of proposals under subsection (2), he shall keep under review the authority's proposals, as approved by him, and their implementation by the authority, and—
- (a) where he is of the opinion that the statement should be modified (or further modified), he may withdraw his approval and require the authority to make such modifications to the statement as he may specify; and
  - (b) where he is of the opinion that the authority's proposals are not being properly implemented by them, he may withdraw his approval for such period as he thinks fit.
- (6) If under subsection (5) the Secretary of State withdraws his approval of a statement of proposals—
- (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision and of his reasons for it; and
  - (b) in a case falling within paragraph (a) of that subsection, the authority shall prepare a revised statement and submit it to him for his approval under this section by such date as he may determine.
- (7) Section 6 shall apply to the preparation of a revised statement under subsection (4) (b) or (6)(b) above, with such modifications (if any) as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (8) At any time after the Secretary of State has approved an authority's statement of proposals under subsection (2)—
- (a) the authority may submit modifications to the statement to the Secretary of State for his approval,
  - (b) the Secretary of State may approve the modifications, whether in whole or in part, for a limited period of time, or subject to conditions, and
  - (c) if and to the extent that he approves those modifications, he shall notify the authority of his decision and—
    - (i) the statement shall have effect with the modifications, and
    - (ii) the authority shall implement their proposals as modified, as from such date as he may determine.
- (9) Once the Secretary of State has approved—
- (a) an authority's statement of proposals under subsection (2), or
  - (b) the modification of an authority's statement of proposals under subsection (8),
- the authority shall publish their education development plan (or their plan as so modified) in such manner and by such date as may be prescribed, and shall provide such persons as may be prescribed with copies of that plan or of a summary version of that plan.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (10) In section 484 of the <sup>M3</sup>Education Act 1996 (education standards grants) references to “eligible expenditure” include expenditure for or in connection with the implementation by local education authorities of their education development plans.

**Marginal Citations**

M3 1996 c. 56.

*Intervention by Secretary of State*

**8 Reserve power of Secretary of State to secure proper performance of LEA’s functions.**

After section 497 of the <sup>M4</sup>Education Act 1996 there shall be inserted—

**“497A Power to secure proper performance of LEA’s functions.**

- (1) This section applies to a local education authority’s functions (of whatever nature) which relate to the provision of education—
  - (a) for persons of compulsory school age (whether at school or otherwise), or
  - (b) for persons of any age above or below that age who are registered as pupils at schools maintained by the authority.
- (2) If the Secretary of State is satisfied (either on a complaint by any person interested or otherwise) that a local education authority are failing in any respect to perform any function to which this section applies to an adequate standard (or at all), he may exercise his powers under subsection (3) or (4).
- (3) The Secretary of State may under this subsection direct an officer of the authority to secure that that function is performed in such a way as to achieve such objectives as are specified in the direction.
- (4) The Secretary of State may under this subsection give an officer of the authority such directions as the Secretary of State thinks expedient for the purpose of securing that the function—
  - (a) is performed, on behalf of the authority and at their expense, by such person as is specified in the direction, and
  - (b) is so performed in such a way as to achieve such objectives as are so specified;
 and such directions may require that any contract or other arrangement made by the authority with that person contains such terms and conditions as may be so specified.
- (5) Where the Secretary of State considers it expedient that the person specified in directions under subsection (4) should perform other functions to which this section applies in addition to the function to which subsection (2) applies, the directions under subsection (4) may relate to the performance of those other functions as well; and in considering whether it is expedient that that person should perform any such additional functions, the Secretary of State may have regard to financial considerations.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) Any direction under this section may either—
  - (a) have effect for an indefinite period until revoked by the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) have effect until any objectives specified in the direction have been achieved (as determined in accordance with the direction).
- (7) Any direction given under subsection (3) or (4) shall be enforceable, on an application made on behalf of the Secretary of State, by an order of mandamus.

#### **497B Power to secure proper performance: further provisions.**

- (1) Where the Secretary of State gives directions under section 497A(4) to an officer of a local education authority, the person specified in those directions shall, in the performance of the function or functions specified in the directions, be entitled to exercise the powers conferred by this section.
- (2) The specified person shall have at all reasonable times—
  - (a) a right of entry to the premises of the authority, and
  - (b) a right to inspect, and take copies of, any records or other documents kept by the authority, and any other documents containing information relating to the authority, which he considers relevant to the performance of the specified function or functions.
- (3) In exercising the right to inspect records or other documents under subsection (2), the specified person—
  - (a) shall be entitled at any reasonable time to have access to, and inspect and check the operation of, any computer and any associated apparatus or material which is or has been in use in connection with the records or other documents in question, and
  - (b) may require—
    - (i) the person by whom or on whose behalf the computer is or has been so used, or
    - (ii) any person having charge of, or otherwise concerned with the operation of, the computer, apparatus or material,to afford him such assistance as he may reasonably require (including, in particular, the making of information available for inspection or copying in a legible form).
- (4) Without prejudice to subsection (2), the authority shall give the specified person all assistance in connection with the performance of the specified function or functions which they are reasonably able to give.
- (5) Subsection (2) shall apply in relation to any school maintained by the authority as it applies in relation to the authority; and without prejudice to that subsection (as it so applies)—
  - (a) the governing body of any such school shall give the specified person all assistance in connection with the exercise of his functions which they are reasonably able to give; and
  - (b) the governing body of any such school and the authority shall secure that all such assistance is also given by persons who work at the school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Any reference in this section to the specified person includes a reference to any person assisting him in the performance of the specified function or functions.
- (7) In this section “document” and “records” each include information recorded in any form.”

#### Marginal Citations

**M4** 1996 c. 56.

### *Parent governor representatives on education committees*

## 9 Education committees to include representatives of parent governors.

At the end of section 499 of the <sup>M5</sup>Education Act 1996 (power of Secretary of State to direct appointment of members of education committees) there shall be added—

- “(6) Regulations may require—
- (a) any such committee as is mentioned in subsection (1) or (3), and
  - (b) any sub-committee appointed by any authorities within subsection (1) or (3), or by any committee within paragraph (a) of this subsection, for the purpose mentioned in subsection (5)(b),
- to include one or more persons elected, in accordance with the regulations, as representatives of parent governors at maintained schools in relation to which the committee or sub-committee acts.
- (7) Regulations may make provision for—
- (a) the number of persons who are to be elected for the purposes of subsection (6) in the case of any local education authority;
  - (b) the procedure to be followed in connection with the election of such persons and the persons who are entitled to vote at such an election;
  - (c) the circumstances in which persons are qualified or disqualified for being so elected or for holding office once elected;
  - (d) the term of office of persons so elected and their voting rights;
  - (e) the application to any such committee or sub-committee, with or without any modification, of any provision made by or under any other enactment and relating to committees or (as the case may be) sub-committees of a local authority;
  - (f) such other matters connected with such elections or persons so elected as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (8) Regulations may also make provision—
- (a) enabling the Secretary of State to determine, where he considers it expedient to do so in view of the small number of maintained schools in relation to which a committee or sub-committee acts, that the requirement imposed on the committee or sub-committee by virtue of subsection (6) is to have effect as if it referred to representatives of parents of registered pupils (rather than representatives of parent governors) at those schools;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(b) for any regulations under subsection (7) to have effect, where the Secretary of State makes any such determination, with such modifications as may be prescribed.

(9) In subsections (6) and (8) “maintained school” and “parent governor” have the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

#### Marginal Citations

M5 1996 c. 56.

### CHAPTER III

#### EDUCATION ACTION ZONES

#### 10 Establishment of education action zones.

(1) If the Secretary of State considers that it is expedient to do so with a view to improving standards in the provision of education at any particular [F1 eligible schools] , he may by order provide for those schools to constitute collectively an education action zone for the purposes of this Chapter.

[F2(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1) “eligible school” means—

- (a) a maintained school;
- (b) a nursery school;
- (c) a pupil referral unit; or
- (d) an independent school.]

(2) An education action zone shall be established in the first instance for three years; but the Secretary of State may, by an order made before the end of that period, provide for the zone to continue in existence for a further two years.

(3) [F3At any time when an education action zone is in existence, the Secretary of State may by order vary the order establishing the zone by adding to the schools for the time being included in that order—

- (a) any school in relation to which section 15 applies by virtue of subsection (1), (4) or (6) of that section; or
- (b) with a view to enabling it to achieve improving standards in the provision of education once it becomes a maintained school, any new school which has a temporary governing body.]

(4) No order shall be made by the Secretary of State under subsection (1) [F4or (2)] except on an application made for the purpose with the consent of the governing body of every school which it is proposed should be a participating school.

(5) Any school which ceases to be a participating school by virtue of subsection (2) may nevertheless be included in a further order under subsection (1).

(6) In this Chapter—

- [F5(a) references to a governing body—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) in relation to an independent school (other than an Academy, city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts), are to the proprietor of the school, and
  - (ii) in relation to a new school, include the temporary governing body of the school;
  - (b) “participating school”, in relation to an education action zone, means one of the schools that—
    - (i) for the time being is included in the order under subsection (1), or
    - (ii) has been added to the zone by virtue of section 11B, other than a school that has been removed from the zone in accordance with section 11C;
  - (c) “pupil referral unit” has the same meaning as in section 19 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56);
  - (d) “new school” has the meaning given in section 72(3).]
- (7) [F6In this section “new school” has the meaning given by section 72(3).]
- (8) Unless the Secretary of State by order otherwise provides, nothing in this Chapter applies in relation to Wales.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Words in s. 10(1) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 2\(1\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F2** S. 10(1A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 1.9.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 15 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#); S.I. 2003/1667, [art. 4](#)
- F3** S. 10(3) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 215(2), 216, [Sch. 15 para. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F4** Words in s. 10(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 2\(4\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F5** S. 10(6)(a)-(d) substituted for s. 10(6)(a)(b) (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 2\(5\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F6** S. 10(7) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 215(2), 216, [Sch. 15 para. 2\(6\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C12** s. 10(1) modified (*temp.*) (4.8.1998) by S.I. 1998/1878, [reg. 2](#)
- C13** S. 10(6)(a)(i) modified (*temp.*) (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 8\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

## 11 Establishment of Education Action Forum for zone.

- (1) An order establishing an education action zone under section 10(1) shall provide for the establishment of an Education Action Forum for the zone.
- (2) An Education Action Forum shall be a body corporate [F7and shall be constituted in accordance with the order under section 10(1) by which it is established] .
- (3) [F8The order shall require the members of an Education Action Forum to include—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) one person appointed by the governing body of each of the participating schools, unless the governing body of any such school choose not to make such an appointment; and
  - (b) either one or two persons appointed by the Secretary of State.]
- (4) Schedule 1 has effect in relation to an Education Action Forum.
- (5) The Forum established for an education action zone shall be dissolved by order of the Secretary of State with effect from the time when the zone ceases to exist in accordance with section 10(2).
- (6) An order under subsection (5) may make provision for the transfer of property, staff, rights and liabilities of the Forum and for the preparation of a final statement of accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

- F7** Words in s. 11(2) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 187, 215(2), 216, Sch. 15 para. 3(a), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F8** S. 11(3) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 187, 215(2), 216, Sch. 15 para. 3(b), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C14** S. 11 extended (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 2(4)**.

### [<sup>F9</sup>11A Constitution of Education Action Forum

- (1) The members of an Education Action Forum must include—
- (a) one person appointed by the governing body of each of the participating schools, unless the governing body of any such school choose not to make such an appointment, and
  - (b) one or two persons appointed by the Secretary of State, unless he chooses not to make such appointments.
- (2) Subject to that, an Education Action Forum—
- (a) shall initially be constituted in accordance with the order under section 10(1), and
  - (b) may subsequently alter its membership (as set out in that order or as previously altered under this paragraph).
- (3) In subsection (2) the references to altering the Forum's membership include—
- (a) altering the number of members, and
  - (b) altering who may appoint members.
- (4) An alteration may be made under subsection (2)(b) only if it is made—
- (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
  - (b) with the consent of the Secretary of State.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F9** S. 11A inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#) ss. 187, 216, {Sch. 15 para. 4} (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C15** S. 11A modified (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 8\(4\)](#) (with ss.210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

### [<sup>F10</sup> 11B Expansion of zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone may add—
  - (a) any eligible school (within the meaning of section 10(1A)), or
  - (b) any new school which has a temporary governing body, to the zone.
- (2) But a school may be added under this section only if it is added—
  - (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
  - (b) with the consent of the governing body of the school and of the Secretary of State.
- (3) For the purposes of this section references to a school being added to an education action zone are to it becoming one of the schools which constitute collectively the zone.

#### Textual Amendments

**F10** Ss. 11B, 11C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 5](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

### 11C Removal from zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone may remove a participating school from the zone.
- (2) But a school may be removed under this section only if it is removed—
  - (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
  - (b) with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) For the purposes of this section references to a school being removed from an education action zone are to it ceasing to be one of the schools which constitute collectively the zone.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F10** Ss. 11B, 11C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 5](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## [<sup>F11</sup>11D Information relating to a Forum and its zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone must provide the Secretary of State with details of—
  - (a) any alteration made to its constitution under section 11A(2)(b),
  - (b) any addition of a school to the zone under section 11B, and
  - (c) any removal of a school from the zone under section 11C.
- (2) The Forum must also, on a request being made by any person, provide him with—
  - (a) the name of each member of the Forum and of the person or body that appointed him,
  - (b) the name of any other person or body entitled to appoint a member, and
  - (c) the name of each participating school in relation to the zone.
- (3) But the duty under subsection (2) is subject, in such circumstances as the Forum may determine, to the payment by the person concerned of a reasonable fee determined by the Forum.]

### Textual Amendments

**F11** S. 11D inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 187, 216, [Sch. 15 para. 6](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

## 12 Functions of Education Action Forum.

- (1) An Education Action Forum shall have as its main object the improvement of standards in the provision of education at each of the participating schools.
- [<sup>F12</sup>(1A) With the consent of the Secretary of State, a Forum may also carry on any other activities which it considers will promote the provision of, or access to, education whether in a participating school or otherwise.]
- (2) A Forum may, under arrangements made by the governing body of a participating school in respect of any prescribed function of that body relating to the conduct of the school, either—
  - (a) discharge that function on behalf of the governing body until such time as they may specify in a request to the Forum to cease discharging the function on their behalf; or
  - (b) assume full responsibility for the discharge of that function during the whole of the period for which the Forum remains in existence.
- (3) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) as to the circumstances in which the governing body of a participating school may make arrangements under subsection (2);
  - (b) for the procedure to be followed by such a governing body in connection with the making of any such arrangements;
  - (c) for the procedure to be followed by an Education Action Forum when discharging any function by virtue of that subsection;
  - (d) for statutory provisions relating to governing bodies of maintained schools to apply, with any prescribed modifications, to an Education Action Forum when discharging any function by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Regulations may, in relation to the discharge by an Education Action Forum of any function of a governing body under sections 54 and 57(1) to (3), Schedule 16 or paragraph 27 of Schedule 17, make any such provision as may be made by an order under section 81 (application of employment law during financial delegation).
- (5) The Secretary of State may by a direction provide for any scheme under Chapter IV of Part II of this Act which relates to a participating school to have effect with such modifications as he considers appropriate in a case where an Education Action Forum is discharging any function in relation to the school by virtue of subsection (2)(b).
- (6) Before giving a direction under subsection (5) the Secretary of State shall consult the local education authority.

#### Textual Amendments

**F12** S. 12(1A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp. ) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), 187, 216, {Sch. 15 para. 7} (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 13 Disapplication of pay and conditions order in relation to teachers at participating schools.

[<sup>F13</sup>For section 3 of the <sup>M6</sup>School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991 there shall be substituted—

#### “ Special provisions as to schools in education action zones.

- (1) A pay and conditions order shall not apply to the statutory conditions of employment of the school teachers in a participating school the governing body of which—
  - (a) have, by notice to the Secretary of State, made an application for exemption; and
  - (b) pursuant to that application are for the time being exempted from subsections (6) and (7) of section 2 above by virtue of an order under subsection (4) below.
- (2) Before making an application under subsection (1) above, the governing body of the participating school concerned shall consult the school teachers employed at the school with respect to the proposed application.
- (3) A notice of application under subsection (1) above shall specify a date, at least three months after the date of the notice, with effect from which the governing body of the participating school concerned intend to make their own provision as to the statutory conditions of employment of the school teachers employed at the school.
- (4) On receipt of a notice of application under subsection (1) above the Secretary of State may, by statutory instrument, make an order—
  - (a) naming the school; and
  - (b) specifying, as the date with effect from which, by virtue of the order, subsections (6) and (7) of section 2 above are not to apply, the date



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

specified in the notice of application or such other date as may be agreed between the governing body and the Secretary of State.

- (5) Where by virtue of an order under subsection (4) above a pay and conditions order ceases to apply in relation to any school, the statutory conditions of employment of the school teachers employed at the school shall be—
- (a) such as may be determined by the governing body, or
  - (b) so far as the governing body have not made any determination with respect to any such conditions of employment, those having effect under the order immediately before it ceased to apply;
- and (so far as necessary) the local education authority shall give effect to any such determination of the governing body.
- (6) In this section “participating school” means one of the schools for the time being included in an order under section 10(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 establishing an education action zone.”]

#### Textual Amendments

**F13** S. 13 ceased to have effect (1.10.2002 for E. and otherwise prosp.) by virtue of [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 91](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#)); S. 13 repealed (prosp) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 1](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C16** S. 13 excluded (1.9.1998) (*temp.*) by S.I. 1998/2115, [reg.3](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M6** 1991 c. 49.

## CHAPTER IV

### INTERVENTION IN SCHOOLS CAUSING CONCERN

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C17** Pt. 1 Chapter 4: Power to modify conferred (prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 25](#), 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4))

#### *Intervention by LEAs*

### 14 Powers of intervention exercisable by LEAs.

- (1) If at any time section 15 applies to a maintained school by virtue of any of the following provisions of that section, namely—
- (a) subsection (1) (school subject to formal warning),
  - (b) subsection (4) (school with serious weaknesses), or
  - (c) subsection (6) (school requiring special measures),

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the provisions mentioned in subsection (2) below (which confer powers of intervention on local education authorities) shall also apply to the school at that time unless excluded by subsection (3) below (intervention by Secretary of State).

(2) Those provisions are—

- (a) section 16 (power to appoint additional governors);
- [<sup>F14</sup>(aa) section 16A (power to provide for governing body to consist of interim executive members);]

and

- (b) section 17 (power to suspend right to delegated budget).

[<sup>F15</sup>(3) Those provisions shall not apply to a school to which section 15 applies by virtue of subsection (4) or (6) of that section (school with serious weaknesses or requiring special measures) if, in connection with the same inspection falling within subsection (4)(a) or (6)(a) of that section—

- (a) the Secretary of State has exercised in relation to the school his power under section 18 (power to appoint additional governors) and any additional governors appointed in the exercise of that power remain in office; or
- (b) he has exercised in relation to the school his power under section 19 (power to direct closure of school).]

(4) In this Chapter—

- (a) “Chief Inspector” and “member of the Inspectorate”, and
- (b) references to special measures being, or not being, required to be taken in relation to a school,

have the same meaning as in the <sup>M7</sup>School Inspections Act 1996.

#### Textual Amendments

**F14** S. 14(2)(aa) inserted (2.9.2002 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 57(1)**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, **214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), **art. 4**

**F15** S. 14(3) substituted (2.9.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 56(3)**, 216, **Sch. 5 para. 1** (with **ss. 210(8)**, **214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), **art. 4**; [S.I. 2002/3185](#), **art. 4**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C18** S. 14(2) modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), **reg. 4(c)**

**C19** S. 14(2)(a) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), **reg. 3(c)**

**C20** S. 14(2)(b) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), **reg. 3(c)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M7** 1996 c. 57.

## 15 Cases where LEA may exercise powers of intervention.

(1) This section applies to a maintained school by virtue of this subsection if—

- (a) the local education authority have—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (i) given the governing body a warning notice in accordance with subsection (2), and
    - (ii) given the head teacher of the school a copy of the notice at the same time as the notice was given to the governing body;
  - (b) the governing body have failed to comply, or secure compliance, with the notice to the authority's satisfaction within the compliance period; and
  - (c) the authority have given reasonable notice in writing to the governing body that they propose to exercise their powers under either or both of sections 16 and 17 (whether or not the notice is combined with a notice under section 62(3) (c)).
- (2) A local education authority may give a warning notice to the governing body of a maintained school where—
  - (a) the authority are satisfied—
    - (i) that the standards of performance of pupils at the school are unacceptably low and are likely to remain so unless the authority exercise their powers under either or both of sections 16 and 17, or
    - (ii) that there has been a serious breakdown in the way the school is managed or governed which is prejudicing, or likely to prejudice, such standards of performance, or
    - (iii) that the safety of pupils or staff of the school is threatened (whether by a breakdown of discipline or otherwise); and
  - (b) the authority have previously informed the governing body and the head teacher of the matters on which that conclusion is based; and
  - (c) those matters have not been remedied to the authority's satisfaction within a reasonable period.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) a “warning notice” is a notice in writing by the local education authority setting out—
  - (a) the matters referred to in subsection (2)(b);
  - (b) the action which they require the governing body to take in order to remedy those matters; and
  - (c) the period within which that action is to be taken by the governing body (“the compliance period”).
- [<sup>F16</sup>(4) This section applies to a maintained school by virtue of this subsection if—
  - (a) following an inspection of the school under Part 1 of the School Inspections Act 1996, the Chief Inspector has given the Secretary of State a notice under subsection (2) of section 16A of that Act in a case falling within subsection (1) (a) or (b) of that section (schools having serious weaknesses), and
  - (b) where any subsequent inspection of the school has been made under Part 1 of that Act, the notice has not been superseded by—
    - (i) the person making the subsequent inspection making a report stating that in his opinion the school no longer has serious weaknesses, or
    - (ii) the Chief Inspector giving the Secretary of State a notice under subsection (2) of section 16A of that Act in a case falling within subsection (1)(c) of that section (schools requiring special measures).]
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) a school has serious weaknesses if, although giving its pupils in general an acceptable standard of education, it has significant weaknesses in one or more areas of its activities.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F17</sup>(6) This section applies to a maintained school by virtue of this subsection if—
- (a) following an inspection of the school under Part 1 of the School Inspections Act 1996, the Chief Inspector has given the Secretary of State a notice under subsection (2) of section 16A of that Act in a case falling within subsection (1) (c) of that section (schools requiring special measures), and
  - (b) where any subsequent report of an inspection of the school has been made under Part 1 of that Act, the person making it did not state that in his opinion special measures were not required to be taken in relation to the school.]

- [<sup>F18</sup>(7) For the purposes of this section a report of an inspection under section 65 or 83 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 shall be treated as a report of an inspection under Part I of the School Inspections Act 1996.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F16** S. 15(4) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 55\(1\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F17** S. 15(6) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 55\(2\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F18** S. 15(7) inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 149, Sch. 9 para. 78](#); [S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, Sch. Pt. II](#) (with [art. 3](#)); [S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, Sch. Pt. I](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C21** S. 15(4) modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), {[reg. 4\(a\)](#)}
- S. 15(4) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), [reg. 3\(a\)](#)
- C22** S. 15(6) modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), [reg. 4\(a\)](#)
- S. 15(6) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), [reg. 3\(a\)](#)

## 16 Power of LEA to appoint additional governors.

- (1) If at any time this section applies to a maintained school in accordance with section 14(1), then (subject to subsections (2) and (3)) the local education authority may appoint such number of additional governors as they think fit.
- (2) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(1) (school subject to formal warning), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is only exercisable within the period of two months following the end of the compliance period.
- [<sup>F19</sup>(3) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(4)(school with serious weaknesses) or section 15(6)(school requiring special measures), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is exercisable only if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—
  - (a) the Secretary of State has given the local education authority a notice under section 16A(3) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
  - (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date of the notice.]
- (4) <sup>F20</sup> .....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) In relation to any appointment made by the local education authority by virtue of subsection (1) to the governing body of a school, the instrument of government for the school shall have effect as if (despite anything in Part II of Schedule 9) it provided for the local education authority to appoint such number of additional governors as they think fit.
- (6) If at any time—
- (a) this section applies to a voluntary aided school other than one falling within [F21]section 15(4) or (6)] , and
  - (b) the local education authority have exercised their power to appoint additional governors under subsection (1),
- the appropriate appointing authority may appoint such number of additional foundation governors as is equal to the number of additional governors appointed by the authority.
- (7) Any additional foundation governors appointed under subsection (6)—
- (a) shall cease to hold office at the time when the additional governors appointed by the authority cease to do so; and
  - (b) shall not be eligible for re-appointment except where, and to the extent that, those governors are re-appointed.
- (8) If—
- (a) at any time this section applies to a voluntary aided school falling within [F22]section 15(4) or (6)] , and
  - [F23](b) paragraph (a) of section 14(3) does not apply in connection with the same inspection falling within subsection (4)(a) or (6)(a) of section 15.]
- the appropriate appointing authority may (subject to subsection (9)) appoint such number of additional foundation governors as they think fit.
- [F24](9) The power conferred by subsection (8) is only exercisable if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—
- (a) the appropriate appointing authority have received a notice in writing from the Secretary of State informing them that he has received from the Chief Inspector a notice under section 16A(2) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
  - (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date of the notice from the Secretary of State.]
- (10) In the case of any appointment made by virtue of subsection (6) or (8) to the governing body of a school, the instrument of government for the school shall have effect as if (despite paragraph 14 of Schedule 9) the instrument provided for the appropriate appointing authority to appoint such number of additional foundation governors as they are authorised to appoint under subsection (6) or (8) (as the case may be).
- (11) Subject to subsection (12), references in this section to the appropriate appointing authority in relation to any voluntary aided school are references—
- (a) to the appropriate diocesan authority, if it is a Church of England school, Church in Wales school or Roman Catholic Church school; or
  - (b) in any other case, to the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (12) Where, in the case of any voluntary aided school not falling within subsection (11)(a), there are different powers to appoint foundation governors, references in this section to the appropriate appointing authority are references—
- (a) to all those persons who have any such power acting jointly, or
  - (b) if they are unable to agree, to such of them acting jointly, or such one of them, as the Secretary of State may, after consulting all those persons, determine.

[<sup>F25</sup>(12A) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that subsections (3)(b) and (9)(b) shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.]

- (13) <sup>F26</sup> .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F19** S. 16(3) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F20** S. 16(4) repealed (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 215(2), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F21** Words in s. 16(6)(a) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(4\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F22** Words in s. 16(8)(a) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F23** S. 16(8)(b) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F24** S. 16(9) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(6\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F25** S. 16(12A) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, [Sch. 5 para. 2\(7\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F26** S. 16(13) repealed (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 56(3), 216, 215(2), [Sch. 5 para. 2\(8\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C23** S. 16 modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), [reg. 4\(c\)](#)  
 S. 16 modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), [reg. 3\(c\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I1** S. 16 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 16 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 16(1)-(5) and (13) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#); s. 16 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## [<sup>F27</sup>16A Power of LEA to provide for governing body to consist of interim executive members

- (1) If at any time this section applies to a maintained school in accordance with section 14(1), then (subject to subsections (2) and (3)) the local education authority may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, give the governing body a notice in writing stating that, as from a date specified in the notice, the governing body are to be constituted in accordance with Schedule 1A (governing bodies consisting of interim executive members).
- (2) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(4)(school with serious weaknesses) or section 15(6)(school requiring special measures), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is exercisable only if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—
  - (a) the Secretary of State has given the local education authority a notice under section 16A(3) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
  - (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date of the notice.
- (3) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that subsection (2)(b) shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.
- (4) Before exercising the power conferred by subsection (1), the local education authority shall consult—
  - (a) the governing body of the school,
  - (b) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority, and
  - (c) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.]

### Textual Amendments

**F27** S. 16A inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 57(2)**, 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), **art. 4**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C24** S. 16A modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), **reg. 4(c)**

## 17 Power of LEA to suspend right to delegated budget.

- (1) If at any time—
  - (a) this section applies to a maintained school in accordance with section 14(1), and
  - (b) the school has a delegated budget within the meaning of Part II of this Act,then (subject to subsections (2) and (3)) the local education authority may, by giving the governing body of the school notice in writing of the suspension, suspend the governing body's right to a delegated budget with effect from the receipt of the notice by the governing body.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(1) (school subject to formal warning), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is only exercisable within the period of two months following the end of the compliance period.
- [<sup>F28</sup>(3) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(4)(school with serious weaknesses) or section 15(6)(school requiring special measures), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is exercisable only if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—
- (a) the Secretary of State has given the local education authority a notice under section 16A(3) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
  - (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date on which the copy was given.]
- (4) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that [<sup>F29</sup>subsection (3)(b)] shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.
- (5) A copy of a notice given under subsection (1) shall be given to the head teacher of the school at the same time as the notice is given to the governing body.
- (6) A suspension imposed under this section shall have effect for the purposes of Chapter IV of Part II of this Act as if made under paragraph 1 of Schedule 15 to this Act, but there shall be no right of appeal under paragraph 3 of that Schedule against such a suspension.

#### Textual Amendments

- F28** S. 17(3) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 56\(3\), 216, Sch. 5 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F29** Words in s. 17(4) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W. ) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 56\(3\), 216, Sch. 5 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C25** S. 17 modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\), reg. 4\(c\)](#)
- S. 17 modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\), reg. 3\(c\)](#)

### *Intervention by Secretary of State*

## 18 Power of Secretary of State to appoint additional governors.

- [<sup>F30</sup>(1) If at any time section 15 applies to a maintained school by virtue of either of the following provisions of that section, namely—
- (a) subsection (4)(school with serious weaknesses), or
  - (b) subsection (6)(school requiring special measures),



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- the Secretary of State may appoint such number of additional governors as he thinks fit; and he may nominate one of those governors to be the chairman of the governing body in place of any person who has been elected as chairman of that body.]
- (2) Before making any such appointment in relation to a voluntary aided school, the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) in the case of a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority; or
  - (b) in any other case, the person who appoints the foundation governors.
- (3) A governor appointed under this section—
- (a) shall hold office as governor for such term, and
  - (b) if nominated as chairman of the governing body, shall be chairman of that body for such period,
- as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (4) The Secretary of State may pay to any governor appointed under this section such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (5) In relation to any appointment made by the Secretary of State by virtue of subsection (1) to the governing body of a school, the instrument of government for the school shall have effect as if (despite anything in Part II of Schedule 9) it provided for the Secretary of State to appoint such number of additional governors as he thinks fit.
- (6) Where the Secretary of State has exercised his power under this section in relation to a school, then—
- (a) in any such case—
    - (i) the local education authority may not exercise their power under paragraph 1 of Schedule 15 to suspend the governing body's right to a delegated budget, and
    - (ii) if they have already exercised that power or their power under section 17(1), the Secretary of State shall, if requested to do so by the governing body, revoke the suspension; and
  - (b) in the case of a voluntary aided school, nothing in paragraph 14 of Schedule 9 shall be read as authorising the appointment of foundation governors for the purpose of outnumbering the other governors as augmented by those appointed by the Secretary of State under this section.
- (7) The revocation of a suspension under subsection (6)(a) shall—
- (a) be notified to the local education authority in writing; and
  - (b) take effect from such date as is specified in that notification.

#### Textual Amendments

**F30** S. 18(1) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 56\(1\), 216 \(with ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)\)](#); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C26** S. 18(1) modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\), reg. 4\(b\)](#)  
S. 18(1) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\), reg. 3\(b\)](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**[<sup>F31</sup>18A Power of Secretary of State to provide for governing body to consist of interim executive members**

- (1) If at any time section 15 applies to a maintained school by virtue of either of the following provisions of that section, namely—
- (a) subsection (4)(school with serious weaknesses), or
  - (b) subsection (6)(school requiring special measures),
- the Secretary of State may give the governing body a notice in writing stating that, as from the date specified in the notice, the governing body are to be constituted in accordance with Schedule 1A (governing bodies consisting of interim executive members).
- (2) Before exercising the power conferred by subsection (1), the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) the local education authority,
  - (b) the governing body of the school,
  - (c) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority, and
  - (d) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.
- (3) The Secretary of State is not obliged to consult the persons mentioned in subsection (2) (b), (c) and (d) if the local education authority have consulted them under subsection (4) of section 16A in relation to a proposed notice under subsection (1) of that section.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F31** S. 18A inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 58, 216** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), **art. 4**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C27** S. 18A modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), **reg. 4(b)**

**19 Power of Secretary of State to direct closure of school.**

- [<sup>F32</sup>(1) If at any time section 15 applies to a maintained school by virtue of either of the following provisions of that section, namely—
- (a) subsection (4)(school with serious weaknesses), or
  - (b) subsection (6)(school requiring special measures),
- the Secretary of State may give a direction to the local education authority requiring the school to be discontinued on a date specified in the direction.]
- (2) Before giving a direction under subsection (1), the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) the local education authority and the governing body of the school;
  - (b) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, the person who appoints the foundation governors;
- [<sup>F33</sup>(ca) in the case of a school which provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age, the Learning and Skills Council for England (if the school is in England) or the National Council for Education and Training for Wales (if the school is in Wales) and;]
- (d) such other persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (3) On giving a direction under subsection (1) the Secretary of State shall give notice in writing of the direction to the governing body of the school and its head teacher.
- (4) Where the local education authority are given a direction under subsection (1), they shall discontinue the school in question on the date specified in the direction; and nothing in sections 29 to 33 shall apply to their discontinuance of the school under this section.
- (5) In this section any reference to the discontinuance of a maintained school is to the local education authority ceasing to maintain it.

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F32** S. 19(1) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 56\(2\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F33** S. 19(2)(ca) inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 149, Sch. 9 para. 79](#); [S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, Sch. Pt. II](#) (with [art. 3](#)); [S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, Sch. Pt. I](#)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C28** S. 19(1) modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\), reg. 4\(b\)](#)
- S. 19(1) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\), reg. 3\(b\)](#)

[<sup>F34</sup>Governing bodies consisting of interim executive members

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F34** S. 19A and cross-heading inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 59\(1\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#)

[<sup>F35</sup>19A

**Governing bodies consisting of interim executive members**

The provisions of Schedule 1A shall have effect in relation to any school in respect of which a notice has been given—

- (a) under section 16A(1), by the local education authority, or
- (b) under section 18A(1), by the Secretary of State.]]

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F35** S. 19A and Cross-heading inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 59\(1\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C29** S. 19A modified (E.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), [reg. 4\(b\)](#)

## PART II

### NEW FRAMEWORK FOR MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### CHAPTER I

##### INTRODUCTORY

##### *The new categories of schools*

#### **20 New categories of maintained schools.**

- (1) Schools maintained by local education authorities on or after the appointed day shall be divided into the following categories—
  - (a) community schools;
  - (b) foundation schools;
  - (c) voluntary schools, comprising—
    - (i) voluntary aided schools, and
    - (ii) voluntary controlled schools;
  - (d) community special schools; and
  - (e) foundation special schools.
- (2) A school maintained by a local education authority is a school falling within one of the categories set out in subsection (1) if—
  - (a) it became a school of that category on the appointed day in accordance with Schedule 2 (and has not changed its category under Schedule 8); or
  - (b) it was established as a school of that category under section 28 or 31 (and has not changed its category under Schedule 8); or
  - (c) it has become a school of that category in accordance with Schedule 8.
- (3) Schedule 2 makes provision for, and in connection with, the allocation to the categories set out in subsection (1) of schools which immediately before the appointed day were (within the meaning of the <sup>M8</sup>Education Act 1996)—
  - (a) county, voluntary or maintained special schools, or
  - (b) grant-maintained or grant-maintained special schools.
- (4) As from the appointed day a local education authority shall maintain (as a school falling within one of those categories)—
  - (a) any school within subsection (3)(a) which was maintained by the authority immediately before that day; and
  - (b) (subject to subsection (5)) any school within subsection (3)(b) which immediately before that day was situated within the authority's area.
- (5) Where a grant-maintained school within subsection (3)(b)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) was, immediately before becoming such a school, maintained by a local education authority (“the former maintaining authority”) other than the one within whose area it was then situated, and
- (b) remains outside the area of the former maintaining authority immediately before the appointed day,
- nevertheless, if an order made by the Secretary of State before that day so provides, as from that day the school shall be maintained (as a school falling within one of the categories set out in subsection (1)) by the former maintaining authority rather than the authority in whose area it is situated on that day.
- (6) In this section “school” means a primary, secondary or special school, including a nursery school which is a special school but excluding—
- (a) a nursery school which is not a special school; and
- (b) a pupil referral unit.
- (7) In this Act—
- “the appointed day” (except in Part I of Schedule 32) means such day as may be appointed for the purposes of this section by an order made by the Secretary of State;
- “maintained school” means (unless the context otherwise requires) a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school.
- (8) Any reference in this Act to the categories set out in subsection (1) or to any such category is to be read, in its application to voluntary schools, as (or as including) a reference to the sub-categories set out in subsection (1)(c)(i) and (ii) or to any such sub-category.

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

**P1** S. 20: power conferred by s. 20(7) exercised: 1.9.1999 appointed by [S.I. 1998/2083](#), [art. 2](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C30** S. 20 extended (1.4.1999) by [S.I. 1999/704](#), [reg. 2\(4\)](#).

#### Marginal Citations

**M8** [1996 c. 56](#).

## 21 Kinds of foundation and voluntary schools and types of foundations.

- (1) There may be three kinds of foundation school—
- (a) those having a foundation established otherwise than under this Act;
- (b) those belonging to a group of schools for which a foundation body acts under this section; and
- (c) those not falling within either of paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (2) There may be three kinds of voluntary controlled or voluntary aided school—
- (a) those having a foundation established otherwise than under this Act;
- (b) those belonging to a group of schools for which a foundation body acts under this section; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) those not falling within either of paragraphs (a) and (b) but having been either of the following immediately before the appointed day, namely—
    - (i) a voluntary school, or
    - (ii) a grant-maintained school that was a voluntary school immediately before becoming grant-maintained,
 within the meaning of the <sup>M9</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (3) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) “foundation”, in relation to a foundation or voluntary school, means—
    - (i) any body of persons (whether incorporated or not but excluding the governing body) which holds land on trust for the purposes of the school, or
    - (ii) a foundation body;
  - (b) a school “has” a foundation if—
    - (i) such a body of persons exists for holding land on trust for the purposes of the school, or
    - (ii) the school belongs to a group of schools for which a foundation body acts under this section; and
  - (c) references to land or other property held on trust, or by trustees, for the purposes of a school include references to land or other property which—
    - (i) is held on trust for purposes which (whether the trust deed expressly so provides or not) include the purposes of the school, and
    - (ii) is used for the purposes of the school.
- (4) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) “foundation body” means a body corporate established under this section to perform, in relation to three or more schools each of which is either a foundation or a voluntary school, the following functions, namely—
    - (i) to hold property of those schools for the purposes of the schools, and
    - (ii) to appoint foundation governors for those schools; and
  - (b) “the group”, in relation to a foundation body, means the group of three or more schools for which the body performs those functions.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for and in connection with—
- (a) the establishment, membership, functions and winding up of a foundation body, and
  - (b) the steps to be taken in connection with schools joining or leaving the group.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) with respect to the transfer of property, rights and liabilities to and from a foundation body when schools join or leave the group but do not change category in accordance with Schedule 8;
  - (b) with respect to the revision or replacement of the instruments of government of schools joining or leaving the group in such circumstances and the reconstitution of their governing bodies;
  - (c) authorising a foundation body to appoint foundation governors to every school in the group;
  - (d) prescribing a model instrument of government for adoption by a foundation body subject to variations approved by the Secretary of State;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) for conferring functions with respect to the resolution of disputes—
    - (i) between schools in the group, or
    - (ii) between one or more such schools and a foundation body,
 on such person or body as may be specified in the regulations;
  - (f) in connection with a school leaving the group—
    - (i) for requiring the publication of proposals under paragraph 2 of Schedule 8 (procedure for changing category of school);
    - (ii) for enabling the Secretary of State to require the publication under that paragraph of proposals for the school to become a school of a category specified by him;
    - (iii) for preventing a voluntary school from becoming one falling within subsection (2)(a) unless any conditions specified in pursuance of paragraph 4(2)(b) of that Schedule are satisfied in relation to the school;
  - (g) for the dissolution of a foundation body by order of the Secretary of State;
  - (h) for enabling the Secretary of State, in the case of any land held by a foundation body immediately before its dissolution which by virtue of this Act could not be disposed of without his consent, to determine how that land is to be dealt with on its dissolution;
  - (i) for conferring functions on school organisation committees and adjudicators including any functions which might otherwise be conferred on the Secretary of State.
- (7) Regulations made in pursuance of subsection (6)(b) may, in connection with the making or variation of instruments of government in preparation for schools joining or leaving the group, modify paragraph 1 of Schedule 12 in its operation in relation to such instruments of government.
- (8) The Secretary of State may, after consulting a foundation body, make an order modifying the instrument of government adopted by that body.
- (9) Regulations may make provision for applying to foundation special schools, with or without modifications—
- (a) any of the provisions of subsections (3) to (8); or
  - (b) any provision of Schedule 21 to this Act (transfers of land on appointed day).

#### Marginal Citations

M9 1996 c. 56.

## 22 Maintenance and other funding of schools. **E**

- (1) A local education authority are under a duty to maintain the following schools—
- (a) any maintained schools which they are required to maintain by virtue of section 20(4) or (5);
  - (b) any maintained schools established by them under section 28 or 31;
  - (c) any maintained schools established in their area under section 28 otherwise than by them or any other local education authority; and
  - (d) any maintained nursery school established by them.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Subsection (1) has effect subject to the transfer under this Part of a maintained school from the area of one local education authority to that of another, and to the provisions of this Part relating to the discontinuance of schools.
- (3) In the case of a community school, a community special school or a maintained nursery school, the local education authority’s duty to maintain the school includes—
- (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, and
  - (b) the duty of making premises available to be used for the purposes of the school.
- (4) In the case of a foundation, voluntary controlled or foundation special school, the local education authority’s duty to maintain the school includes—
- (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, and
  - (b) the duty, under paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 13 or 15 of Schedule 6, of providing new premises for the school under and in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 or (as the case may be) paragraph 16 of Schedule 6.
- (5) In the case of a voluntary aided school, the local education authority’s duty to maintain the school includes—
- (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, except any [<sup>F36</sup>expenditure that by virtue of paragraph 3 of Schedule 3 is to be met] by the governing body, and
  - (b) the duty, under paragraph 4 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 14 of Schedule 6, of providing new premises for the school under and in accordance with that paragraph.
- (6) For the purposes of this Act the expenses of maintaining a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school include the payment of rates.
- (7) Schedule 3 (which makes provision as to the functions of governing bodies, local education authorities and the Secretary of State as to the funding of foundation, voluntary and foundation special schools) shall have effect.
- (8) In this Act—
- (a) in relation to a school maintained (or proposed to be maintained) by a local education authority, “the local education authority” means that authority; and
  - (b) in relation to schools falling within subsections (3) to (6), “maintain” shall be read in accordance with those subsections.
- (9) In this Act “maintained nursery school” means a nursery school which is maintained by a local education authority and is not a special school.

#### Extent Information

**E2** This version of this provision extends to England only; a separate version has been created for Wales.

#### Textual Amendments

**F36** Words in s. 22(5)(a) substituted (E.) (1.4.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding\) \(England\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/906\)](#), **art. 3**



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 22 Maintenance and other funding of schools. **W**

- (1) A local education authority are under a duty to maintain the following schools—
  - (a) any maintained schools which they are required to maintain by virtue of section 20(4) or (5);
  - (b) any maintained schools established by them under section 28 or 31;
  - (c) any maintained schools established in their area under section 28 otherwise than by them or any other local education authority; and
  - (d) any maintained nursery school established by them.
- (2) Subsection (1) has effect subject to the transfer under this Part of a maintained school from the area of one local education authority to that of another, and to the provisions of this Part relating to the discontinuance of schools.
- (3) In the case of a community school, a community special school or a maintained nursery school, the local education authority's duty to maintain the school includes—
  - (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, and
  - (b) the duty of making premises available to be used for the purposes of the school.
- (4) In the case of a foundation, voluntary controlled or foundation special school, the local education authority's duty to maintain the school includes—
  - (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, and
  - (b) the duty, under paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 13 or 15 of Schedule 6, of providing new premises for the school under and in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 or (as the case may be) paragraph 16 of Schedule 6.
- (5) In the case of a voluntary aided school, the local education authority's duty to maintain the school includes—
  - (a) the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining it, except any expenses that by virtue of paragraph 3 of Schedule 3 are payable by the governing body, and
  - (b) the duty, under paragraph 4 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 14 of Schedule 6, of providing new premises for the school under and in accordance with that paragraph.
- (6) For the purposes of this Act the expenses of maintaining a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school include the payment of rates.
- (7) Schedule 3 (which makes provision as to the functions of governing bodies, local education authorities and the Secretary of State as to the funding of foundation, voluntary and foundation special schools) shall have effect.
- (8) In this Act—
  - (a) in relation to a school maintained (or proposed to be maintained) by a local education authority, "the local education authority" means that authority; and
  - (b) in relation to schools falling within subsections (3) to (6), "maintain" shall be read in accordance with those subsections.
- (9) In this Act "maintained nursery school" means a nursery school which is maintained by a local education authority and is not a special school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Extent Information

**E13** This version of this provision extends to Wales only; a separate version has been created for England.

## 23 Charitable status of maintained schools, etc.

- (1) The following shall be charities which are exempt charities for the purposes of the <sup>M10</sup>Charities Act 1993—
- (a) the governing body of any foundation, voluntary or foundation special school; and
  - (b) any foundation body established under section 21;
- but no governing body of a community or community special school shall be a charity.
- (2) So far as it is a charity, any institution which—
- (a) is administered by or on behalf of any body to which subsection (1)(a) or (b) applies, and
  - (b) is established for the general purposes of, or for any special purpose of or in connection with, that body or any school or schools falling within subsection (1)(a),
- shall also be an exempt charity for the purposes of the <sup>M11</sup>Charities Act 1993.
- (3) Any foundation established otherwise than under this Act which has no property other than the premises of any school or schools falling within subsection (1)(a) shall be a charity which (subject to section 3(5B) of the <sup>M12</sup>Charities Act 1993) is not required to be registered for the purposes of that Act (but is not an exempt charity for the purposes of that Act).
- (4) In this section—
- (a) “charity” and “institution” have the same meaning as in the <sup>M13</sup>Charities Act 1993;
  - (b) “premises” includes a teacher’s dwelling-house.

### Marginal Citations

**M10** 1993 c. 10.

**M11** 1993 c. 10.

**M12** 1993 c. 10.

**M13** 1993 c. 10.

## *New arrangements for organisation of schools*

## 24 School organisation committees.

- (1) Each local education authority in England shall establish a school organisation committee for their area.
- (2) A school organisation committee shall be constituted in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Those regulations must be so framed as to secure that every school organisation committee includes at least one person within each of the following categories—
- (a) a member of the local education authority;
  - (b) a person nominated by the Diocesan Board of Education for any diocese of the Church of England any part of which is comprised in the authority’s area; and
  - (c) a person nominated by the bishop of any Roman Catholic Church diocese any part of which is comprised in the authority’s area.
- (4) In this Act any reference to “the school organisation committee” in relation to—
- (a) a local education authority in England,
  - (b) a school maintained or proposed to be maintained by such a local education authority, or
  - (c) any proposals relating to such a school,
- is a reference to the school organisation committee established for the local education authority’s area.
- (5) Schedule 4 has effect in relation to school organisation committees.

#### Commencement Information

- I2** S. 24 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 24 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 24(2)-(5) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch 1, Pt. I; s. 24 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

## 25 Adjudicators.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall appoint for England such number of persons to act as adjudicators for the purposes of this Act as he considers appropriate.
- (2) Any matter which by virtue of this Act is required to be referred to “the adjudicator” shall be referred to such person appointed under this section as may be determined in accordance with regulations under Schedule 5.
- (3) Accordingly in this Act “the adjudicator”, in relation to any such matter, means the person mentioned in subsection (2).
- (4) Schedule 5 has effect in relation to adjudicators.

## 26 School organisation plans.

- (1) Every local education authority shall prepare a school organisation plan for their area, and shall prepare further such plans at such times as may be prescribed.
- (2) A school organisation plan is a statement which sets out—
- (a) how the authority propose to exercise their functions during the prescribed period with a view to securing the provision of [<sup>F37</sup>primary education, and secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils of compulsory school age,] that will meet the needs of the population of their area during that period; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F38</sup>(ab) how the authority propose to exercise their powers during the prescribed period with a view to securing the provision of secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils over compulsory school age during that period;]
  - (b) any facilities which the authority expect to be available outside their area for providing [<sup>F39</sup>education of a kind referred to in paragraph (a) or (ab)].
- (3) A school organisation plan must deal with such matters, and take such form, as may be prescribed.
- (4) The matters prescribed for the purposes of subsection (3) shall include the provision which the authority propose to make during the period in question for children with special educational needs.
- (5) A school organisation plan prepared by a local education authority in England requires the approval of the school organisation committee or the adjudicator; and regulations may make provision with regard to the procedure to be followed in connection with the preparation and approval of such plans.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) requiring a local education authority in England to publish a draft school organisation plan prepared by them, and enabling objections to be made to it;
  - (b) requiring—
    - (i) the draft plan (whether as published by the authority or as revised by them in the light of any such objections), and
    - (ii) all such objections,
 to be submitted to the school organisation committee;
  - (c) authorising the matters so submitted to be also submitted, in any prescribed circumstances, to the adjudicator;
  - (d) for the functions of the school organisation committee in relation to the matters submitted to them by the authority, or in relation to any proposals made by the adjudicator, including power for the committee—
    - (i) to approve a draft plan with or without modifications, or
    - (ii) to prepare a school organisation plan for publication by the authority as their approved plan;
  - (e) for the functions of the adjudicator in relation to any matters submitted to him by virtue of paragraph (c), or referred to him by the committee in the exercise of any function conferred by virtue of paragraph (d), including power for the adjudicator—
    - (i) to approve a draft plan either with modifications proposed by the committee or without modifications, or
    - (ii) to make proposals to the committee for modifications to be made to the draft plan;
  - (f) requiring the publication of the plan as approved;
  - (g) requiring anything falling to be done under the regulations to be done within such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (7) A school organisation plan prepared by a local education authority in Wales requires adoption by the authority; and regulations may make provision with regard to the procedure to be followed in connection with the preparation and adoption of such plans.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) Regulations under subsection (7) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) requiring a local education authority in Wales to publish a draft school organisation plan prepared by them, and to consult such bodies or persons in connection with the draft plan as may be prescribed;
  - (b) requiring the authority, in the light of such consultation, either—
    - (i) to adopt the draft plan with or without modifications, or
    - (ii) to prepare a further draft school organisation plan for publication and consultation in accordance with any provision made by virtue of paragraph (a);
  - (c) requiring the publication of the plan as adopted by the authority;
  - (d) requiring anything falling to be done under the regulations to be done within such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F37** Words in s. 26(2)(a) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.1.2001 for E. and 1.4.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 80(a)**; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

**F38** S. 26(2)(ab) inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.1.2001 for E. and 1.4.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 80(b)**; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

**F39** Words in s. 26(2)(b) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.1.2001 for E. and 1.4.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 80(c)**; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

#### Commencement Information

**I3** S. 26 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 26 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 26(2)-(8) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1, Pt. I**; s. 26 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-6, **Sch. 4**).

#### [<sup>F40</sup>26A Plans of local learning and skills councils.

- (1) In preparing a school organisation plan a local education authority in England shall have regard to the plans of any relevant local learning and skills council published under section 22 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if a school organisation plan prepared by a local education authority in England is being considered by the school organisation committee or by the adjudicator.
- (3) The committee or the adjudicator shall have regard to the plans of any relevant local learning and skills council published under section 22 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (4) A local learning and skills council is a relevant council if any of its area falls within the area of the local education authority concerned.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F40** Ss. 26A, 26B inserted (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and 1.1.2000 otherwise) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 81**; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**

### [<sup>F41</sup>26B Plans of National Council.

- (1) In preparing a school organisation plan a local education authority in Wales shall have regard to the plans of the National Council for Education and Training for Wales published under section 43 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if a school organisation plan prepared by a local education authority in Wales is being considered by the school organisation committee or by the adjudicator.
- (3) The committee or the adjudicator shall have regard to the plans of the National Council for Education and Training for Wales published under section 43 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (4) In this section references to the school organisation committee are to the committee established by the authority under regulations made under section 27.
- (5) In this section references to the adjudicator are to—
  - (a) such person appointed as adjudicator under those regulations as may be determined in accordance with them, or
  - (b) such persons appointed as a panel of adjudicators under those regulations as may be so determined.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F41** Ss. 26A, 26B inserted (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and 1.1.2001 otherwise) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 81**; S.I. 2000/1559, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**

### 27 Power to require committees or adjudicators for Wales.

- (1) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for the establishment by local education authorities in Wales of school organisation committees; and
  - (b) for the appointment by the Secretary of State of adjudicators, or panels of adjudicators, for Wales;
 and the regulations may provide for any of the provisions of [<sup>F42</sup>sections 24 and 25 of, and Schedules 4 and 5 to, this Act and Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000] to apply for the purposes of the regulations with or without modifications.
- (2) In connection with any provision made by virtue of subsection (1), regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for applying in relation to Wales any provision of section 26, Chapter II of this Part [<sup>F43</sup>, Chapter I of Part III or Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000] which would otherwise apply in relation to England only;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) for disapplying in relation to Wales any such provision which would otherwise apply in relation to Wales only;
- (c) for any statutory provision to have effect with such modifications as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F42** Words in s. 27(1) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.9.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 82(1)(2)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. III** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F43** Words in s. 27(2)(a) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.9.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 82(1)(3)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. III** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

## CHAPTER II

### ESTABLISHMENT, ALTERATION OR DISCONTINUANCE OF SCHOOLS

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C31** Pt. II Chapter II modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/704, regs. 21, 22, **Sch.**

#### *Mainstream schools maintained by LEAs*

### **28 Proposals for establishment or alteration of community, foundation or voluntary school.**

- (1) Where a local education authority propose—
  - (a) to establish a new community or foundation school, or
  - (b) to make any prescribed alteration to a community school, or
  - (c) to make any prescribed alteration to a foundation school consisting of an enlargement of the premises of the school,the authority shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (2) Where—
  - (a) any persons (referred to in this Part as “promoters”) propose to establish a new foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) the governing body of a foundation or voluntary school propose to make any prescribed alteration to the school,those persons or (as the case may be) the governing body shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (3) Proposals under this section shall—
  - (a) contain such information, and
  - (b) be published in such manner,as may be prescribed.
- (4) Proposals under this section may if the relevant body or promoters think fit—

---

**Status:** *Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

**Changes to legislation:** *School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) specify an age below 10 years and six months and an age above 12 years, and
  - (b) provide that the school to which the proposals relate is to be a school providing full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils whose ages are between the ages so specified.
- (5) Before publishing any proposals under this section, the relevant body or promoters shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection the relevant body or promoters shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (6) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school or proposed school in England, the relevant body or promoters shall send—
- (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the school organisation committee for the area of the local education authority who maintain the school or (in the case of a new school) who it is proposed should maintain the school.
- (7) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school or proposed school in Wales, the relevant body or promoters shall send—
- (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the Secretary of State.
- (8) Schedule 6 has effect (for both England and Wales) in relation to—
- (a) the procedure for dealing with proposals under this section and their implementation; and
  - (b) the provision of premises or other assistance in connection with their implementation.
- (9) Where any proposals published under this section—
- (a) are for the transfer of a school to a site in a different area, or
  - (b) relate to a school which is, or (in the case of a new school) is proposed to be, situated in an area other than that of the local education authority who maintain, or (as the case may be) who it is proposed should maintain, the school,
- the provisions of subsection (6) and Schedule 6 shall have effect in relation to the proposals with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (10) In this section “the relevant body or promoters” means the local education authority, governing body or promoters mentioned in subsection (1) or (2) (as the case may be).
- (11) In this Part—
- (a) “alteration”, in the context of a prescribed alteration to a maintained school, means an alteration of whatever nature, including the transfer of the school to a new site but excluding any change—
    - (i) in the religious character of the school, or
    - (ii) whereby the school would acquire or lose a religious character; and
  - (b) “area” (without more) means a local education authority area.
- (12) Any regulations made for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) or (2)(b) may be framed by reference to the opinion of the local education authority.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C32** S. 28 amended (1.4.1999) by [S.I. 1999/125](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#).
- C33** S. 28 extended (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 6\(2\)\(3\)](#).
- C34** S. 28 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2259](#), [regs. 5\(1\), 10](#), [Sch. 1](#).  
S. 28 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2259](#), [regs. 5\(2\), 10](#), [Sch. 2](#).  
S. 28 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) (*temp.*) by [S.I. 1999/2633](#), [regs. 4, 5\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#).  
S. 28 modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2633](#), [reg. 5\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#).
- C35** S. 28 modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2633](#), [reg. 5\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#).
- C36** S. 28; Power to modify conferred (prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 74\(2\)\(a\)](#) 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#))
- C37** S. 28(3)(7)(8)(10)(11) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), [reg. 7](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Table 3 (as amended (W.) (1.2.2006) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/173\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 12](#))
- C38** S. 28(3) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15](#), [Sch. 4](#).  
s. 28(3): s. 28(3)(except para. (b)) applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), [reg. 10](#), [Sch. 5](#)
- C39** S. 28(3)(5)(6)(8)(10)(11) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2000) by [S.I. 2000/2195](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#)
- C40** S. 28(5) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), [reg. 7](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Table 1
- C41** S. 28(5) applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15](#), [Sch. 4](#)  
s. 28(5) applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), [reg. 10](#), [Sch. 5](#)
- C42** S. 28(6) applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15](#), [Sch. 4](#).  
S. 28(6) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15\(2\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 5 Pt. I para. 1](#).  
S. 28(6) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15\(2\)\(4\)](#), [Sch. 5 Pt. I para. 2\(a\)](#).  
S. 28(6) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/704](#), [regs. 21, 22](#), [Sch.](#)
- C43** S. 28(7) applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), [reg. 10](#), [Sch. 5](#)
- C44** S. 28(10) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213](#), [reg. 15](#), [Sch. 4](#).  
s. 28(10) applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), [reg. 10](#), [Sch. 5](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I4** S. 28 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 28 not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 145\(3\)](#); [s. 28\(9\)](#) in force at 1.2.1999 by [S.I. 1998/3198](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch.](#); [s. 28\(5\)\(10\)](#) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)); S. 28 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

## 29 Proposals for discontinuance of community, foundation, voluntary or maintained nursery school.

- (1) Where a local education authority propose to discontinue—
  - (a) a community, foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) a maintained nursery school,the authority shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (2) Where the governing body of a foundation or voluntary school propose to discontinue the school, the governing body shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (3) Proposals under this section shall—
  - (a) contain such information, and
  - (b) be published in such manner,as may be prescribed.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Before publishing any proposals under this section, the relevant body shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection the relevant body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school in England, the relevant body shall send—
  - (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the school organisation committee for the area of the local education authority who maintain the school.
- (6) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school in Wales, the relevant body shall send—
  - (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the Secretary of State.
- (7) Schedule 6 has effect (for both England and Wales) in relation to the procedure for dealing with proposals under this section and their implementation.
- (8) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school which is situated in an area other than that of the local education authority who maintain it, the provisions of subsection (5) and Schedule 6 shall have effect in relation to the proposals with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (9) In this section “the relevant body” means the local education authority or governing body mentioned in subsection (1) or (2) (as the case may be).
- (10) In this Part any reference to a local education authority—
  - (a) discontinuing a school, or
  - (b) implementing proposals to discontinue a school (whether published by the authority or the governing body),
 is to the authority ceasing to maintain the school.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C45** S. 29(5) modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2213, reg. 15(2)(4), **Sch. 5 Pt. I para. 2(b)**.

**C46** S. 29(5) modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/704, regs. 21, 22, **Sch.**

**Commencement Information**

**I5** S. 29 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 29 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 29(8) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/3198, art. 2(2), **Sch.**; s. 29(4)(9) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-6, **Sch. 4**); s. 29 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, **Schs. 5-7**).

**30 Notice by governing body to discontinue foundation or voluntary school.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the governing body of a foundation or voluntary school may discontinue the school by serving on the Secretary of State and the local education authority at least two years’ notice of their intention to do so.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) If expenditure has been incurred on the school premises (otherwise than in connection with repairs)—
  - (a) by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) by the Funding Agency for Schools,
  - (c) by any local education authority, or
  - (d) by an authority which was a local education authority within the meaning of any enactment repealed by the <sup>M14</sup>Education Act 1944 or an earlier Act,no such notice may be served without the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) If discontinuing the school would affect the facilities for full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age who have not attained the age of 19, the governing body shall, before serving a notice under this section, consult [<sup>F44</sup>the Learning and Skills Council for England (if the school is in England) or the National Council for Education and Training for Wales (if the school is in Wales)].
- (4) If, while a notice under subsection (1) is in force in respect of a foundation or voluntary school, the governing body inform the local education authority that they are unable or unwilling to carry on the school until the notice expires, the authority—
  - (a) may conduct the school for all or part of the unexpired period of the notice as if it were a community school, and
  - (b) shall be entitled to use the school premises free of charge for that purpose.
- (5) While the school is being so conducted—
  - (a) the authority shall keep the school premises in good repair, and
  - (b) any interest in the premises which is held for the purposes of the school shall be deemed, for all purposes relating to the condition, occupation or use of the premises, or the making of alterations to them, to be vested in the authority.
- (6) Despite the provisions of subsection (5) the governing body may use the premises, or any part of them, when not required for the purposes of the school to the same extent as if they had continued to carry on the school during the unexpired period of the notice.
- (7) A notice served under subsection (1) may not be withdrawn without the consent of the local education authority.
- (8) If a foundation or voluntary school is discontinued under this section, the duty of the local education authority to maintain the school as a foundation or voluntary school shall cease.
- (9) Nothing in section 29 or 33 applies to any such discontinuance of a foundation or voluntary school.
- (10) Where—
  - (a) land occupied by a foundation or voluntary school is held by any trustees for the purposes of the school, and
  - (b) the termination of the school's occupation of that land would have the result that it was not reasonably practicable for the school to continue to be conducted at its existing site,then if the trustees (being entitled to do so) give any notice to the governing body which purports to terminate the school's occupation of the land, any such notice shall not be effective to terminate its occupation of the land unless the requirements of subsection (11) are complied with in relation to the notice (without prejudice to any other statutory or other requirements falling to be so complied with).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (11) The requirements of this subsection are—
- (a) that the period of notice must—
    - (i) be reasonable having regard to the length of time that would be required to discontinue the school (if the governing body chose to do so), and
    - (ii) in any event must not be less than two years; and
  - (b) that a copy of the notice must be given to the Secretary of State and the local education authority at the time when the notice is given to the governing body.
- (12) Where trustees give, at the same (or substantially the same) time, notices purporting to terminate a foundation or voluntary school's occupation of two or more pieces of land held by the trustees for the purposes of the school, then for the purpose of determining whether subsection (10)(b) applies in relation to any of those pieces of land, regard may be had to the combined effect of terminating the school's occupation of both or all of them.
- (13) If a question arises as to whether the termination of a school's occupation of any land would have the result mentioned in subsection (10)(b) (including a question as to whether subsection (12) applies in any particular circumstances), it shall be determined by the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

**F44** Words in s. 30(3) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 149, Sch. 9 para. 83](#); [S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, Sch. Pt. II](#) (with [art. 3](#))

#### Marginal Citations

**M14** [1944 c. 31](#).

### *Special schools maintained by LEAs*

## **31 Proposals for establishment, alteration or discontinuance of community or foundation special school.**

- (1) Where a local education authority intend—
- (a) to establish a new community or foundation special school, or
  - (b) to make any prescribed alteration to such a school, or
  - (c) to discontinue such a school,
- the authority shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (2) Where the governing body of a foundation special school propose—
- (a) to make any prescribed alteration to the school, or
  - (b) to discontinue the school,
- the governing body shall publish their proposals under this section.
- (3) Proposals under this section shall—
- (a) contain such information, and
  - (b) be published in such manner,
- as may be prescribed.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) Before publishing any proposals under this section, the relevant body shall consult such persons as appear to them to be appropriate; and in discharging their duty under this subsection the relevant body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school or proposed school in England, the relevant body shall send—
  - (a) a copy of the proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the school organisation committee for the area of the local education authority who maintain the school or (in the case of a new school) who it is proposed should maintain the school.
- (6) Where any proposals published under this section relate to a school or proposed school in Wales, the relevant body shall send—
  - (a) a copy of the proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the Secretary of State.
- (7) The relevant body shall also send a copy of any proposals to which subsection (5) or (6) applies to such other bodies or persons as may be prescribed.
- (8) Schedule 6 has effect (for both England and Wales) in relation to the procedure for dealing with proposals under this section and their implementation.
- (9) In this section “the relevant body” means the local education authority or governing body mentioned in subsection (1) or (2) (as the case may be).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C47** S. 31 extended (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 6\(4\)](#).
- C48** S. 31 modified (prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 74\(1\)\(a\)](#), 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#))
- C49** [S. 31](#): Power to modify conferred (prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 74\(2\)\(a\)](#), 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#))
- C50** S. 31(3) except paragraph (b) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), [reg. 11](#), [Sch.4](#).  
S. 31(3) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212](#), [reg. 16](#), [Sch.4](#).
- C51** S. 31(4) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), [reg. 11](#), [Sch.4](#).  
S. 31(4) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212](#), [reg. 16](#), [Sch.4](#).
- C52** S. 31(5) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212](#), [reg. 16](#), [Sch.4](#).  
S. 31(5) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/704](#), [regs. 21, 22](#), [Sch.](#)
- C53** S. 31(6) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), [reg. 11](#), [Sch.4](#).
- C54** S. 31(7) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), [reg. 11](#), [Sch.4](#).  
S. 31(7) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212](#), [reg. 16](#), [Sch.4](#).
- C55** S. 31(9) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), [reg. 11](#), [Sch.4](#).  
S. 31(9) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212](#), [reg. 16](#), [Sch.4](#).

#### Commencement Information

- I6** S. 31 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 31 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 31(4)(9) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)); s. 31 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### **32 Direction requiring discontinuance of community or foundation special school.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may, if he considers it expedient to do so in the interests of the health, safety or welfare of pupils at a community or foundation special school, give a direction to the local education authority by whom the school is maintained requiring the school to be discontinued on a date specified in the direction.
- (2) A direction under subsection (1) may require the local education authority to notify any persons or class of persons specified in the direction.
- (3) Before giving a direction under subsection (1), the Secretary of State shall consult—
  - (a) the local education authority;
  - (b) any other local education authority who would in his opinion be affected by the discontinuance of the school;
  - (c) in the case of a foundation special school which has a foundation, the person who appoints the foundation governors; and
  - (d) such other persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (4) On giving a direction under subsection (1) the Secretary of State shall give notice in writing of the direction to the governing body of the school and its head teacher.
- (5) Where a local education authority are given a direction under subsection (1), they shall discontinue the school in question on the date specified in the direction; and nothing in section 31 or 33 applies to any such discontinuance of the school under this section.

*Further provisions relating to establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools*

### **33 Further provisions relating to establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools.**

- (1) Except in pursuance of proposals falling to be implemented under paragraph 5 or 10 of Schedule 6 [F45 to this Act or under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000]—
  - (a) no maintained school shall be established or discontinued;
  - (b) no prescribed alteration shall be made to any such school; and
  - (c) no maintained nursery school shall be discontinued.
- (2) No alteration falling within section 28(11)(a)(i) or (ii) shall be made to any maintained school.
- (3) Subsection (1) has effect subject to sections 19(4), 30(9) and 32(5).
- (4) Regulations may, in relation to proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31, require any of the following, namely—
  - (a) the body or promoters who published the proposals,
  - (b) the school organisation committee, and
  - (c) the adjudicator,
 to provide such information relating to the proposals to such persons, and at such times, as may be prescribed.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F45** Words in s. 33(1) inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 84**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

#### Commencement Information

**I7** S. 33 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 33 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 33(4) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/3198, art. 2(2), **Sch.**; s. 33 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

### *Rationalisation of school places*

#### **34 Rationalisation of school places.**

Schedule 7 (which provides for the Secretary of State to give directions to local education authorities and governing bodies to bring forward proposals for the rationalisation of school places, and for such proposals to be made by him) shall have effect.

### *Change of category of school*

#### **35 School changing from one category to another.**

- (1) Schedule 8 makes provision for and in connection with—
- (a) enabling a maintained school within one of the categories set out in section 20(1) to become a school within another of those categories, and
  - (b) in certain circumstances, requiring proposals to be published for a voluntary aided school to become a school within another of those categories;
- and a maintained school may not so change its category otherwise than in accordance with that Schedule.
- (2) Except in relation to a change of category from voluntary aided to voluntary controlled school for which proposals are required to be published by virtue of paragraph 3 of Schedule 8, that Schedule does not apply at any time before the end of such period as may be prescribed.

## CHAPTER III

### GOVERNMENT OF MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### *Governing bodies*

#### **36 Governing bodies.**

[<sup>F46</sup>(1) Each maintained school shall have a governing body, which shall be a body corporate constituted in accordance with Schedule 9.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Schedule 10 has effect in relation to the general powers of the governing body and other matters relating to it as a body corporate.
- (3) Schedule 11 has effect in relation to the membership and proceedings of the governing body and other matters including the appointment of a clerk to, or to any committee of, the governing body.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F46** S. 36 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. in so far as it relates to s. 36(2) otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C56** S. 36 extended (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, [reg. 30\(1\)\(b\)](#)

S. 36 extended (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, [reg. 49\(7\)\(b\)](#)

**C57** S. 36(1) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, [reg. 36\(3\)](#).

#### Commencement Information

**I8** S. 36 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 36(3) in force at Royal Assent see s. 145; s. 36 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

### *Instruments of government*

#### **37 Instruments of government.**

- (1) For every maintained school there shall be an instrument (known as the instrument of government) which determines the constitution of the governing body and other matters relating to the school.
- (2) Schedule 12 has effect with respect to the contents and making of instruments of government and the review and variation of such instruments.
- (3) The governing body of a maintained school shall not conduct the school under a name other than the one for the time being set out in the school's instrument of government.

#### Commencement Information

**I9** S. 37 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 37(1)(2) in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 145(5); s. 37 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

### *Functions of governing body*

#### **38 General responsibility of governing body for conduct of school.**

- (1) Subject to any other statutory provision, the conduct of a maintained school shall be under the direction of the school's governing body.
- (2) The governing body shall conduct the school with a view to promoting high standards of educational achievement at the school.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) Regulations may—
- (a) set out terms of reference for governing bodies of maintained schools;
  - (b) define the respective roles and responsibilities of governing bodies and head teachers of such schools, whether generally or with respect to particular matters, including the curriculum for such schools;
  - (c) confer functions on governing bodies and head teachers of such schools.
- (4) The governing body of a maintained school shall, in discharging their functions, comply with—
- (a) the instrument of government; and
  - (b) (subject to any other statutory provision) any trust deed relating to the school.

#### Commencement Information

**I10** S. 38 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 38 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 38(3) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#), Pt. I; s. 38 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

### 39 Additional functions of governing body.

- (1) The governing body of a maintained school shall in accordance with regulations—
- (a) establish procedures for dealing with all complaints relating to the school other than those falling to be dealt with in accordance with any procedures required to be established in relation to the school by virtue of any other statutory provision; and
  - (b) publicise the procedures so established.
- (2) The governing body of a maintained school may require pupils in attendance at the school to attend at any place outside the school premises for the purpose of receiving any instruction or training included in the secular curriculum for the school.
- (3) The governing body and head teacher of—
- (a) a community or voluntary controlled school, or
  - (b) a community special school,
- shall comply with any direction given to them by the local education authority concerning the health or safety of persons on the school's premises or taking part in any school activities elsewhere.

#### Commencement Information

**I11** S. 39 partly in force; s. 39 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 39(1) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#), Pt. I; s. 39(2)(3) in force at 1.9.1999 by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Control of school premises*

#### **40 Control of use of school premises by governing body.**

Schedule 13 has effect in relation to the control by the governing body of a maintained school of the occupation and use of the school premises.

### *Fixing of school holidays and times of sessions*

#### **41 Responsibility for fixing dates of terms and holidays and times of sessions.**

- (1) In the case of a community, voluntary controlled or community special school—
  - (a) the local education authority shall determine the dates when the school terms and holidays are to begin and end; and
  - (b) the governing body shall determine the times of the school sessions.
- (2) In the case of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school the governing body shall determine—
  - (a) the dates and times when the school terms and holidays are to begin and end, and
  - (b) the times of the school sessions.
- (3) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) as to the procedure to be followed where the governing body of a school within subsection (1) propose to make any change in the times of the school sessions;
  - (b) as to the implementation of any such proposal;
  - (c) for enabling the local education authority to determine, for any purposes of the regulations, whether any person is to be treated as a parent of a registered pupil at the school;
  - (d) that for all or any prescribed purposes of the regulations references to parents are to be read as excluding those who are not individuals.
- (4) In this section “the times of the school sessions” means the times at which each of the school sessions (or, if there is only one, the school session) is to begin and end on any day.

### *Reports and parents’ meetings*

#### **42 Governors’ reports and other information.**

- [<sup>F47</sup>(1) Once in every school year the governing body of a maintained school shall prepare a report (a “governors’ report”) dealing with such matters, and otherwise complying with such requirements, as may be specified in regulations.
- (2) Such regulations may—
  - (a) impose requirements on the governing body of a maintained school with respect to—
    - (i) the giving of copies of a governors’ report to such persons as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) making such copies available for inspection at the school;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) make provision for—
  - (i) enabling the governing body to determine the language or languages in which a governors' report is to be produced and the form or forms in which it is to be produced;
  - (ii) requiring them to comply with any direction given by the local education authority with respect to any additional language to be used or with respect to any additional form in which the report is to be produced.
- (3) The governing body of a maintained school shall provide the local education authority with such reports in connection with the discharge of their functions as the authority may require (either on a regular basis or from time to time) for the purposes of the exercise of any of their functions.
- (4) The head teacher of a maintained school shall provide the governing body or (as the case may be) the local education authority with such reports in connection with the discharge of his functions as the governing body or the authority may require (either on a regular basis or from time to time) for the purposes of the exercise of any of their functions.
- (5) Where a requirement under subsection (4) is imposed on the head teacher by the authority—
  - (a) the authority shall notify the governing body of that requirement; and
  - (b) the head teacher shall give the governing body a copy of any report made by him in complying with it.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F47** S. 42 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I12** S. 42 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 42 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 42(1)(2) in force for specified purpose at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)); s. 41 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)) .

### 43 Annual parents' meetings.

- (1) Once in every school year the governing body of a maintained school shall hold a meeting (an "annual parents' meeting") which is open to—
  - (a) all parents of registered pupils at the school;
  - (b) the head teacher; and
  - (c) such other persons as the governing body may invite.
- (2) The purpose of the meeting shall be to provide an opportunity for discussion of—
  - (a) the governors' report;
  - (b) the discharge by the governing body, the head teacher and the local education authority of their functions in relation to the school;
  - (c) the aims and values of the school;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) how the spiritual, moral, cultural, mental and physical development of pupils is to be promoted at the school;
  - (e) how pupils are to be prepared for the opportunities, responsibilities and experiences of adult life and citizenship;
  - (f) the standards of educational achievement of pupils; and
  - (g) how the governing body are to promote the good behaviour, discipline and well-being of pupils.
- (3) A governing body may, however, refrain from holding an annual parents' meeting in a particular school year if—
- (a) the school is a community or foundation special school which is established in a hospital and the governing body are of the opinion that it would be impracticable to hold such a meeting in that year; or
  - (b) the school is a maintained school other than one within paragraph (a), the governing body are of the opinion that it would be impracticable to hold such a meeting in that year, and at least 50 per cent. of the registered pupils at the school are boarders at the time when they form that opinion.
- (4) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) for the proceedings at an annual parents' meeting to be under the control of the governing body;
  - (b) as to the procedure to be followed at any such meeting, including provision restricting the right to vote on any question put to the meeting to parents of registered pupils at the school;
  - (c) imposing requirements on the governing body, the head teacher and the local education authority in relation to resolutions which have been passed at any such meeting, including requirements framed by reference to any opinion formed by the governing body;
  - (d) for enabling the governing body or (as the case may be) the local education authority to determine, for any purposes of the regulations, whether any person is to be treated as the parent of a registered pupil at the school.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I13** S. 43 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 43 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 145(3); s. 43(4) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-6, **Sch. 4**); s. 43 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, **Schs. 5-7**).

### *Government of new schools*

#### **44 Arrangements for government of new schools.**

- (1) Where proposals for the establishment of a maintained school fall to be implemented under paragraph 5 or 10 of Schedule 6, the local education authority shall make arrangements providing for the constitution of a temporary governing body for the school.
- (2) Once constituted in accordance with arrangements made under subsection (1) the temporary governing body shall continue in existence until such time as the governing body are constituted for the school under an instrument of government.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The local education authority shall secure that the governing body are so constituted—
- (a) as soon as is reasonably practicable after the time when the requirement for there to be an instrument of government for the school takes effect in accordance with subsection (4), and
  - (b) in any event not later than the last day of the term in which the school first admits pupils.
- (4) The requirement for there to be an instrument of government for a school (imposed by section 37) shall take effect in relation to a school falling within subsection (1) above as from the school opening date; and for the purposes of this Part proposals for the establishment of a maintained school shall be taken to be implemented on that date.
- (5) Regulations may make provision with respect to—
- (a) the making and termination of arrangements for the constitution of temporary governing bodies, including such arrangements made in anticipation of proposals falling to be implemented as mentioned in subsection (1);
  - (b) the constitution, meetings and proceedings of temporary governing bodies, the payment of allowances to temporary governors, and the appointment of clerks to such bodies;
  - (c) the transition from a temporary governing body to a governing body constituted under an instrument of government; and
  - (d) such other matters relating to temporary governing bodies as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in connection with any matters falling within that subsection—
- (a) modify any provision made by or under any of Schedules 9 to 12;
  - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications;
  - (c) make provision corresponding or similar to any such provision.
- (7) Subject to subsection (8), the temporary governing body of a school shall be treated for the purposes of the Education Acts as if they were the governing body during the period—
- (a) beginning with the school opening date, and
  - (b) ending with the time when the governing body are constituted for the school under an instrument of government;
- and for the purposes of sections 495 to 498 of the <sup>M15</sup>Education Act 1996 (general default powers of the Secretary of State) the temporary governing body of a school shall also be so treated at any time falling before the school opening date.
- (8) Despite subsection (7), nothing in any of the following provisions, namely—
- (a) section 36,
  - (b) section 37(1) or (2), or
  - (c) (subject to any regulations made by virtue of subsection (5)) any of Schedules 9 to 12,
- applies to any temporary governing body.
- (9) In this Part “school opening date”, in relation to a new maintained school, means the date when the school first admits pupils.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C58** S. 44 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 13**.
- C59** S. 44 modified (temp.) (E.) (2.9.2002) by The Education Act 2002 (Transitional Provisions etc.) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2113), **reg. 7**
- C60** S. 44(1) extended (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 5(1)**.  
S. 44(1) restricted (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 6(1)**.  
S. 44(1) extended (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 5(1)**.  
S. 44(1) amended (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 7**.
- C61** S. 44(5) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg.3(1)(2)**
- C62** S. 44(6) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg.3(1)**

#### Commencement Information

- I14** S. 44 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 44 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 44(5)(6) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1, Pt. I**; s. 44 in force at 1.9.1999, in so far as not already in force, by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

- M15** 1996 c. 56.

## CHAPTER IV

### FINANCING OF MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C63** Pt. 2 Ch. 4 (ss. 45-53) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 3(1)(3)**

#### *Budgetary framework*

#### **45 Maintained schools to have budget shares. E**

- (1) For the purposes of the financing of maintained schools by local education authorities, every such school shall have, for each financial year, a budget share which is allocated to it by the authority which maintains it.
- (2) Sections [<sup>F48</sup>45A] and 47 have effect for determining the amount of a school's budget share for a financial year.
- (3) In this Chapter—
  - (a) references to schools maintained by a local education authority do not include schools which are not maintained schools as defined by section 20(7);
  - (b) references, in a context referring to a local education authority, to a maintained school or to a school maintained by such an authority shall be read as including a new school—
    - (i) which on implementation of proposals under section 28 or 31 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 will be a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school maintained by the authority, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) which has a temporary governing body; and
  - (c) references to the governing body of a maintained school or of a school maintained by a local education authority shall accordingly be read as including the temporary governing body of a new school falling within paragraph (b).
- (4) In this Chapter “new school” (without more) has the meaning given by section 72(3).

#### Extent Information

**E3** This version of this provision extends to England only; a separate version has been created for Wales only

#### Textual Amendments

**F48** Word in s. 45 substituted (E.) (1.10.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Modification of Provisions\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2316\)](#), [reg. 2](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C64** S. 45(3)(4) modified (20.11.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2670](#), [reg. 3\(4\)](#)

## 45 Maintained schools to have budget shares. **W**

- (1) For the purposes of the financing of maintained schools by local education authorities, every such school shall have, for each financial year, a budget share which is allocated to it by the authority which maintains it.
- (2) Sections 46 and 47 have effect for determining the amount of a school’s budget share for a financial year.
- (3) In this Chapter—
- (a) references to schools maintained by a local education authority do not include schools which are not maintained schools as defined by section 20(7);
  - (b) references, in a context referring to a local education authority, to a maintained school or to a school maintained by such an authority shall be read as including a new school—
    - (i) which on implementation of proposals under section 28 or 31 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 will be a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school maintained by the authority, and
    - (ii) which has a temporary governing body; and
  - (c) references to the governing body of a maintained school or of a school maintained by a local education authority shall accordingly be read as including the temporary governing body of a new school falling within paragraph (b).
- (4) In this Chapter “new school” (without more) has the meaning given by section 72(3).

#### Extent Information

**E14** This version of this provision extends to Wales only; a separate version has been created for England only.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C64 S. 45(3)(4) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg. 3(4)

### [<sup>F49</sup> 45A Determination of specified budgets of LEA

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, a local education authority’s “LEA budget” for a financial year is the amount appropriated by the authority for meeting all expenditure by the authority in that year of a class or description prescribed for the purposes of this subsection.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part, a local education authority’s “schools budget” for a financial year is the amount appropriated by the authority for meeting all expenditure by the authority in that year of a class or description prescribed for the purposes of this subsection (which may include expenditure incurred otherwise than in respect of schools).
- (3) For the purposes of this Part, a local education authority’s “individual schools budget” for a financial year is the amount remaining after deducting from the authority’s schools budget for that year such planned expenditure by the authority in respect of that year as they may determine should be so deducted in accordance with regulations.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may—
  - (a) prescribe classes or descriptions of expenditure which are authorised or required to be deducted from an authority’s schools budget;
  - (b) provide, in relation to any prescribed class or description of expenditure specified in the regulations, that such expenditure may only be deducted subject to either or both of the following, namely—
    - (i) such limit or limits (however framed) as may be specified by or determined in accordance with the regulations, and
    - (ii) such other conditions as may be so specified or determined.
- (5) Before the end of January in any financial year, a local education authority shall—
  - (a) determine the proposed amount of their schools budget for the following financial year, and
  - (b) give notice of their determination to the Secretary of State and to the governing body of every school maintained by the authority.]

#### Textual Amendments

F49 S. 45A inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 4.12.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 41(1), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with art. 4, Sch. para. 1); S.I. 2003/2961, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### [<sup>F50</sup> 45B Power of Secretary of State to set minimum schools budget for LEA

- (1) If it appears to the Secretary of State that, in all the circumstances, the amount proposed in a notice under section 45A(5) as a local education authority’s schools budget for a financial year is inadequate, the Secretary of State may, within the period of fourteen days beginning with the day on which the notice was given, give the authority a notice under subsection (4) or (5).



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) If at the end of January in any financial year a local education authority have failed to give the Secretary of State a notice under section 45A(5) in relation to their schools budget for the following financial year, the Secretary of State may, at any time after the end of that January, give the authority a notice under subsection (4) or (5).
- (3) In this section and section 45C “the year under consideration” means the financial year to which the notice under section 45A(5) relates or, in a case falling within subsection (2), the financial year in relation to which such a notice ought to have been given.
- (4) A notice under this subsection is a notice determining the minimum amount of the authority’s schools budget for the year under consideration.
- (5) A notice under this subsection is a notice which—
  - (a) specifies the amount which the Secretary of State would have determined as the minimum amount of the authority’s schools budget for the year under consideration if he had acted under subsection (4), and
  - (b) states the Secretary of State’s intention to determine the minimum amount of the authority’s schools budget for the following financial year.
- (6) A notice under subsection (4) or (5) must include a statement of the Secretary of State’s reasons for giving the notice.
- (7) The Secretary of State may act under different subsections in relation to different authorities.

#### Textual Amendments

**F50** Ss. 45B, 45C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c.32\)](#), [ss. 42, 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### **45C Effect of notice under section 45B(4)**

- (1) The local education authority may, within the period of fourteen days beginning with the date of a notice under section 45B(4), give the Secretary of State notice of their objection to his determination, giving reasons for their objection.
- (2) Where the local education authority have given notice of their objection under subsection (1), the notice under section 45B(4) shall cease to have effect, but the Secretary of State may by order prescribe the minimum amount of the authority’s schools budget for the year under consideration.
- (3) The amount prescribed under subsection (2) must not be greater than the amount specified in the notice under section 45B(4).
- (4) An order under subsection (2) may relate to two or more authorities.
- (5) No order under subsection (2) may be made in relation to one or more authorities in England unless a draft of the order has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (6) Where—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a notice under section 45B(4) has been given to a local education authority and no notice of objection has been given during the period specified in subsection (1), or
  - (b) an order has been made under subsection (2),
- the local education authority shall determine a schools budget for the year under consideration which is not less than the amount specified in relation to the authority in the notice or order.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F50** Ss. 45B, 45C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c.32\)](#), [ss. 42, 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 46 Determination of LEA's local schools budget and individual schools budget.

- [<sup>F51</sup>(1) For the purposes of this Part a local education authority's "local schools budget" for a financial year is the amount appropriated by the authority for meeting all expenditure by the authority in that year of a class or description prescribed for the purposes of this subsection (which may include expenditure incurred otherwise than in respect of schools).
- (2) For the purposes of this Part a local education authority's "individual schools budget" for a financial year is the amount remaining after deducting from the authority's local schools budget for that year such planned expenditure by the authority in respect of the year as they may determine should be so deducted in accordance with regulations.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may—
- (a) prescribe classes or descriptions of expenditure which are authorised or required to be deducted from an authority's local schools budget; and
  - (b) provide, in relation to any prescribed class or description of expenditure specified in the regulations, that such expenditure may only be so deducted subject to either or both of the following, namely—
    - (i) such limit or limits (however framed) as may be specified by the regulations; and
    - (ii) such other conditions as may be so specified.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F51** S. 46 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 41\(3\), 215\(2\), 216](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 47 Determination of school's budget share.

- (1) For the purposes of this Part a maintained school's budget share for a financial year is such amount as the local education authority may determine, in accordance with regulations, to allocate to the school out of the authority's individual schools budget for that year.
- (2) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) as to the time when schools' budget shares are to be initially determined by local education authorities;
  - (b) specifying—
    - (i) factors or criteria which such authorities are to take into account, or
    - (ii) requirements as to other matters with which such authorities are to comply,in determining such shares, whether generally or in such cases as are specified in the regulations;
  - (c) requiring adjustments to be made to such shares by such authorities in respect of—
    - (i) pupils permanently excluded from schools maintained by them, or
    - (ii) pupils admitted to schools maintained by them who have been permanently excluded from other maintained schools;
  - (d) as to the treatment of new schools, including provision authorising the determination of nil amounts as the budget shares of such schools;
  - (e) authorising or requiring such authorities to take account of matters arising during the course of a financial year—
    - (i) by redetermining budget shares for that year, or
    - (ii) by making adjustments to such shares for the following year,in accordance with the regulations, and requiring them in that connection to disregard such matters as may be specified in the regulations;
  - (f) requiring consultation to be carried out by such authorities in relation to the factors or criteria which are to be taken into account in determining such shares and as to the time and manner of such consultation;
  - (g) enabling the Secretary of State, where it appears to him to be expedient to do so, to authorise such authorities to determine (or redetermine) budget shares, to such extent as he may specify, in accordance with arrangements approved by him (in place of those provided for by the regulations).
- (3) Regulations made in pursuance of subsection (2)(c) may provide for the adjustments to be made on such basis as may be prescribed, which may involve the deduction from one school's budget share of an amount which is greater or less than that allocated to another school's budget share in respect of the excluded pupil.

### *f<sup>52</sup>Schools forums*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F52** Cross-heading and s. 47A inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 43, 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)

#### **47A Schools forums**

- (1) Every local education authority shall in accordance with regulations establish for their area before such date as may be prescribed a body, to be known as a schools forum, representing the governing bodies and head teachers of schools maintained by the authority and, if the authority so determine, also representing such bodies as the authority may from time to time in accordance with regulations determine.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to the Common Council of the City of London or the Council of the Isles of Scilly.
- (3) The purpose of a schools forum is to advise the relevant authority on such matters relating to the authority's schools budget as may be prescribed by regulations under section 45A(3) or by regulations under this subsection.
- (4) Regulations under section 45A(3) or under subsection (3) may include provision requiring a relevant authority to have regard to advice given by their schools forum, or requiring a relevant authority to consult their schools forum in relation to prescribed matters or before taking prescribed decisions.
- (5) Regulations may make provision as to the constitution, meetings and proceedings of a schools forum.
- (6) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (5) may include provision enabling the Secretary of State in prescribed circumstances to remove from membership of a schools forum any non-schools member.
- (7) Regulations may make provision with respect to expenses of a schools forum.
- (8) Except as provided by regulations, the expenses of a schools forum shall be defrayed by the relevant authority.
- (9) In this section—
  - “non-schools member”, in relation to a schools forum, means a member other than a schools member;
  - “relevant authority”, in relation to a schools forum, means the local education authority by whom the forum is established;
  - “schools member”, in relation to a schools forum, means a member elected to represent governing bodies or head teachers of schools maintained by the relevant authority.]

*Local education authority schemes*

**48 LEAs' financial schemes.**

- (1) Each local education authority shall prepare a scheme dealing with such matters connected with the financing of the schools maintained by the authority [<sup>F53</sup>or the exercise by the governing bodies of those schools of the power conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.)] as are required to be dealt with in the scheme by or by virtue of—
  - (a) regulations made by the Secretary of State; or
  - (b) any provision of this Part.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, require a scheme to deal with—
  - (a) the carrying forward from one financial year to another of surpluses and deficits arising in relation to schools' budget shares;
  - (b) amounts which may be charged against schools' budget shares;
  - (c) amounts received by schools which may be retained by their governing bodies and the purposes for which such amounts may be used;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (d) the imposition, by or under the scheme, of conditions which must be complied with by schools in relation to the management of their delegated budgets, including conditions prescribing financial controls and procedures;
  - [<sup>F54</sup>(dd) the imposition, by or under the scheme, of conditions which must be complied with by schools in relation to the exercise of the power mentioned in subsection (1), including conditions prescribing financial controls and procedures;]
  - (e) terms on which services and facilities are provided by the authority for schools maintained by them.
- (3) Where there is any inconsistency between a scheme prepared by a local education authority under subsection (1) and any other rules or regulations made by the authority which relate to the funding or financial management of schools which they maintain, the terms of the scheme shall prevail.
- (4) Schedule 14 (which provides for the approval or imposition of schemes by the Secretary of State and for the revision of schemes) shall have effect.
- (5) In this Part any reference to “the scheme”, in relation to a maintained school, is a reference to the scheme prepared (or by virtue of paragraph 1(6) of Schedule 14 treated as prepared) by the local education authority under this section, as from time to time revised under paragraph 2 of that Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

- F53** Words in s. 48(1) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 3 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F54** S. 48(2)(dd) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 3 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C65** S. 48 excluded (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362, reg. 6\(5\)](#).

### *Financial delegation*

#### **49 Maintained schools to have delegated budgets.**

- (1) Every maintained school shall have a delegated budget.
- (2) A new school shall have a delegated budget as from the school opening date, unless a different date applies by virtue of subsection (3).
- (3) Such a school shall have a delegated budget—
  - (a) as from a date earlier than the school opening date if the local education authority so determine; or
  - (b) as from a later date if the authority so determine with the written approval of the Secretary of State; or
  - (c) as from such date as the Secretary of State may determine, if the authority have determined that the school should have a delegated budget as from a later date but that date is not approved by him.
- (4) Subject to—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) section 50 (right of governing body to spend budget share where school has a delegated budget),
  - (b) paragraph 4 of Schedule 15 (power of governing body to spend amounts out of budget share where delegation of budget suspended),
  - (c) section 489(2) of the <sup>M16</sup>Education Act 1996 (education standards grants), and
  - (d) any provisions of the scheme,
- a local education authority may not delegate to the governing body of any maintained school the power to spend any part of the authority's [<sup>F55</sup>LEA budget or schools budget] .
- (5) Any amount made available by a local education authority to the governing body of a maintained school (whether under section 50 or otherwise)—
- (a) shall remain the property of the authority until spent by the governing body or the head teacher; and
  - (b) when spent by the governing body or the head teacher, shall be taken to be spent by them or him as the authority's agent.
- (6) Subsection (5)(b) does not apply to any such amount where it is spent—
- (a) by way of repayment of the principal of, or interest on, a loan, or
  - (b) (in the case of a voluntary aided school) to meet [<sup>F56</sup>expenses payable by the governing body under paragraph 3(1) or (2) of Schedule 3][<sup>F56</sup>expenditure payable by the governing body under paragraph 3(1) of Schedule 3] or paragraph 14(2) of Schedule 6.
- (7) In this Part—
- (a) references to a school having a delegated budget are references to the governing body of the school being entitled to manage the school's budget share; and
  - (b) where a school has a delegated budget the governing body are accordingly said to have a right to a delegated budget.

#### Textual Amendments

**F55** Words in s. 49(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, **Sch. 21 para. 100(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)

**F56** Words in s. 49(6)(b) substituted (E.) (1.4.2002) by The Regulatory Reform (Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding) (England) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/906), **art. 4**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C66** S. 49(6)(b) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 3(5)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M16** 1996 c. 56.

## 50 Effect of financial delegation.

- (1) Where a maintained school has a delegated budget in respect of the whole or part of a financial year the local education authority shall secure that in respect of that year there is available to be spent by the governing body—
- (a) where the school has a delegated budget in respect of the whole of that year, a sum equal to the school's budget share for the year, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) where the school has a delegated budget in respect of only part of that year, a sum equal to that portion of the school’s budget share for the year which has not been spent.
- (2) The times at which, and the manner in which, any amounts are made available by the authority to the governing body in respect of any such sum shall be such as may be provided by or under the scheme.
- (3) Subject to any provision made by or under the scheme, the governing body may spend any such amounts as they think fit—
- (a) for any purposes of the school; or
- (b) (subject also to any prescribed conditions) for such purposes as may be prescribed.
- (4) In subsection (3) “purposes of the school” does not include purposes wholly referable to the provision of—
- [<sup>F57</sup>(za) facilities and services under section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.),]
- (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age, or
- (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19;
- but any such purposes may be prescribed by regulations under paragraph (b) of that subsection.
- (5) Nothing in subsection (3) shall be read as authorising the payment of allowances to governors otherwise than in accordance with regulations under paragraph 6 of Schedule 11 (or, in the case of temporary governors of a new school, regulations under section 44(5)).
- (6) The governing body may delegate to the head teacher, to such extent as may be permitted by or under the scheme, their powers under subsection (3) in relation to any amount such as is mentioned in that subsection.
- (7) The governors of a school shall not incur any personal liability in respect of anything done in good faith in the exercise or purported exercise of their powers under subsection (3) or (6).

#### Textual Amendments

**F57** S. 50(4)(za) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 3 para. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

#### Commencement Information

**I15** S. 50 wholly in force; s. 50 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 50(3) and (4) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I, [Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1](#) and s. 50 in force at 1.4.1999 (so far as it is not already in force) by Sch. 1 Pt. IV of the same S.I.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Suspension of financial delegation*

#### **51 Suspension of financial delegation for mismanagement etc.**

Schedule 15 (which provides for the suspension by a local education authority of a governing body's right to a delegated budget in the case of failure to comply with requirements as to delegation or of financial mismanagement, etc.) shall have effect.

*[<sup>F58</sup>Expenditure incurred for community purposes*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F58** Cross-heading and s. 51A inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 40, 216, [Sch. 3 para. 4](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 4](#)

#### **51A Expenditure incurred for community purposes**

- (1) Expenditure incurred by the governing body of a maintained school in the exercise of the power conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.) shall, as against third parties, be treated as part of the expenses of maintaining the school under section 22, but if met by the local education authority may be recovered by them from the governing body.
- (2) Except as provided by regulations under section 50(3)(b), no expenditure incurred by the governing body of a maintained school in the exercise of the power referred to in subsection (1) shall be met from the school's budget share for any financial year.
- (3) Subsection (2) applies at a time when the school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15, as well as a time when it does have a delegated budget.]

### *Information*

#### **52 Financial statements.**

- (1) Before the beginning of each financial year a local education authority shall prepare a statement containing such information relating to their planned expenditure in that year as may be prescribed.
- (2) After the end of each financial year a local education authority shall prepare a statement containing such information with respect to the following matters as may be prescribed—
  - (a) the planned expenditure in that year specified in the statement prepared by the authority under subsection (1),
  - (b) expenditure actually incurred, or treated by the authority as having been incurred, by them in the year, and
  - (c) any other resources allocated by the authority in the year to schools maintained by them during any part of the year.
- (3) A statement under this section shall—
  - (a) be prepared in such form, and



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) be published in such manner and at such times, as may be prescribed.
- (4) The authority shall furnish the governing body and head teacher of each school maintained by them with a copy of each statement prepared by the authority under this section or, if regulations so provide, with a copy of such part or parts of it as may be prescribed.
- (5) A governing body provided with such a copy under subsection (4) shall secure that a copy of it is available for inspection (at all reasonable times and free of charge) at the school.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not apply to a temporary governing body of a new school at any time before the school opening date.

### **53 Certification of statements by Audit Commission.**

- (1) A local education authority shall, if directed to do so by the Secretary of State, require the Audit Commission for Local Authorities and the National Health Service in England and Wales to make arrangements in accordance with section 28(1)(d) of the <sup>M17</sup>Audit Commission Act 1998 for certifying—
  - (a) such statement or statements prepared by the authority under section 52 above, or
  - (b) such part or parts of any such statement or statements, as may be specified in the directions; and for the purposes of section 28(1)(d) of that Act any statement under section 52 above shall be treated as a return by the authority.
- (2) The arrangements made by the Audit Commission in pursuance of subsection (1) shall include arrangements for sending to the Secretary of State—
  - (a) a copy of the statement or statements so certified, or
  - (b) a copy of the part or parts so certified, as the case may be.
- (3) Directions given under subsection (1) may relate to any local education authority or to local education authorities generally or to any class or description of such authorities.

#### **Marginal Citations**

M17 1998 c. 18.

## **CHAPTER V**

### **STAFFING AND CONDUCT OF SCHOOLS**

#### *Staffing of schools*

### **54 Staffing of community, voluntary controlled and community special schools.**

- [<sup>F59</sup>(1) Schedule 16 has effect in relation to the staffing of community, voluntary controlled and community special schools.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) If at any time a community, voluntary controlled or community special school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15—
  - (a) Schedule 16 shall not apply; and
  - (b) subsections (3) to (5) below shall apply instead.
- (3) The number of teachers and non-teaching staff to be employed at the school shall be determined by the local education authority.
- (4) The authority may appoint, suspend and dismiss teachers and other staff at the school as the authority think fit.
- (5) The authority shall, in connection with the exercise of their functions under subsection (4), consult the governing body to such extent as the authority think fit.
- (6) In relation to reserved teachers at a voluntary controlled school, Schedule 16 or (as the case may be) subsection (4) above has effect subject to section 58.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F59** Ss. 54-57 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. for repeal of s. 57) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C67** S. 54(3)-(5) applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 51\(2\)](#).  
S. 54(3)-(5) applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48, 51\(2\)](#).
- C68** S. 54(4) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 51\(4\)](#).  
S. 54(4) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48, 51\(4\)](#).
- C69** S. 54(4)(5) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 52\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I16** S. 54 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 54 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 54 in force for certain purposes at 1.2.1999 by [S.I. 1999/120](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#); s. 54 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

## 55 Staffing of foundation, voluntary aided and foundation special schools.

- [<sup>F60</sup>(1) Schedule 17 has effect in relation to the staffing of foundation, voluntary aided and foundation special schools.
- (2) If at any time a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15, Schedule 17 shall apply to the school subject to subsections (3) to (7) below.
  - (3) The number of teachers and non-teaching staff to be employed at the school shall be determined by the local education authority.
  - (4) Except with the consent of the authority, the governing body shall not—
    - (a) appoint any teacher to be employed at the school or engage, or make arrangements for the engagement of, any person to provide his services as a teacher at the school, or
    - (b) dismiss any teacher at the school.
  - (5) The authority may give the governing body directions—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) as to the educational qualifications of the teachers to be employed for giving secular education; or
  - (b) requiring them to dismiss any teacher at the school;
- but the authority shall not give any directions under paragraph (a) except after consulting the governing body.
- (6) The authority may give directions to the governing body as to the number and conditions of service of persons employed at the school for the purposes of the care and maintenance of the school premises.
- (7) Where the trust deed relating to the school provides for a person other than the governing body to be entitled to control the occupation and use of the school premises to any extent, then, if and to the extent that (disregarding any transfer of control agreement under Schedule 13) the use of those premises is or would be under the control of any such person, the reference in subsection (6) to the governing body shall be read as a reference to that person.
- (8) Schedule 17 or (as the case may be) subsections (4) and (5) above have effect subject to section 58.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F60** Ss. 54-57 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. for repeal of s. 57) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C70** S. 55(3)-(7) applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 52\(2\)](#).  
S. 55(3)-(7) applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48](#), [52\(2\)](#).

**C71** S. 55(4)(5) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 52\(3\)](#).  
S. 55(4)(5) modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 52\(4\)](#).  
S. 55(4)(5) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48](#), [52\(3\)](#).  
S. 55(4)(5) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48](#), [52\(4\)](#).

#### Commencement Information

**I17** S. 55 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 55 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 55 in force for certain purposes at 1.2.1999 by [S.I. 1999/120](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#); s. 55 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

## 56 Staffing for non-school activities.

[<sup>F61</sup>(1) This section applies to a maintained school if—

- (a) activities other than school activities (“non-school activities”) are carried on on the school premises, and
  - (b) all non-school activities which are so carried on are carried on under the management or control of the school’s governing body.
- (2) The relevant staffing provisions shall, to such extent as the local education authority may determine, apply in relation to persons employed to work—
- (a) partly for the purposes of school activities and partly for the purposes of non-school activities carried on on the school premises, or
  - (b) solely for the purposes of non-school activities so carried on,
- as if all activities so carried on were school activities.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The local education authority shall give the governing body notice in writing of any determination by the authority under subsection (2).
- (4) In subsection (2) “the relevant staffing provisions” means—
  - (a) in relation to a community, voluntary controlled or community special school, the provisions of Schedule 16 and section 57; and
  - (b) in relation to a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, the provisions of Schedule 17 and section 57.
- (5) Nothing in this section applies to a school within subsection (1) at any time when the school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F61** Ss. 54-57 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. for repeal of s. 57) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C72** S. 56 applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 49\(2\)](#).  
 S. 56 applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 50\(2\)](#).  
 S. 56 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48, 49\(2\)](#).  
 S. 56 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [regs. 48, 50\(2\)](#).

## 57 Payments in respect of dismissal, etc.

- [<sup>F62</sup>(1) It shall be for the governing body of a maintained school to determine—
- (a) whether any payment should be made by the local education authority in respect of the dismissal, or for the purpose of securing the resignation, of any member of the staff of the school, and
  - (b) the amount of any such payment.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not, however, apply in relation to a payment which the local education authority are required to make—
- (a) by virtue of any contract other than one made in contemplation of the impending dismissal or resignation of the member of staff concerned, or
  - (b) under any statutory provision.
- (3) The local education authority—
- (a) shall take such steps as may be required for giving effect to any determination of the governing body under subsection (1), and
  - (b) shall not make, or agree to make, a payment in relation to which that subsection applies except in accordance with such a determination.
- (4) Costs incurred by the local education authority in respect of any premature retirement of a member of the staff of a maintained school shall be met from the school’s budget share for one or more financial years except in so far as the authority agree with the governing body in writing (whether before or after the retirement occurs) that they shall not be so met.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Costs incurred by the local education authority in respect of the dismissal, or for the purpose of securing the resignation, of any member of the staff of a maintained school shall not be met from the school's budget share for any financial year except in so far as the authority have good reason for deducting those costs, or any part of those costs, from that share.
- (6) The fact that the authority have a policy precluding dismissal of their employees by reason of redundancy is not to be regarded as a good reason for the purposes of subsection (5); and in this subsection the reference to dismissal by reason of redundancy shall be read in accordance with section 139 of the <sup>M18</sup>Employment Rights Act 1996.
- (7) Nothing in this section applies to a maintained school at any time when the school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F62** Ss. 54-57 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. for repeal of s. 57, 1.9.2003 for E for repeal of ss. 54-56) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2003/1667, **art. 4**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C73** S. 57 modified (temp.) (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, **reg.6**.

**C74** S. 57(3)(4)(5) excluded (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, **reg.7**.

**C75** S. 57(3) excluded (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, **reg.8**.

#### Marginal Citations

**M18** 1996 c. 18.

### *Appointment and dismissal of teachers of religious education*

## **58 Appointment and dismissal of certain teachers at schools with a religious character.**

- (1) In this section—
- subsections (2) to (6) apply to a foundation or voluntary controlled school which has a religious character; and
  - subsection (7) applies (subject to subsection (8)) to a voluntary aided school which has a religious character;
- and references in this Chapter to a school which has (or does not have) a religious character shall be construed in accordance with section 69(3).
- (2) Where the number of the teaching staff of a school to which this subsection applies is more than two, the teaching staff shall include persons who—
- are selected for their fitness and competence to give such religious education as is required in accordance with arrangements under paragraph 3(3) of Schedule 19 (arrangements for religious education in accordance with the school's trust deed or with the tenets of the school's specified religion or religious denomination), and
  - are specifically appointed to do so.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The number of reserved teachers in such a school shall not exceed one-fifth of the number of the teaching staff, including the head teacher (and for this purpose, where the number of the teaching staff is not a multiple of five, it shall be treated as if it were the next higher multiple of five).
- (4) The head teacher of such a school shall not, while holding the post of head teacher of the school, be a reserved teacher.
- (5) Where the appropriate body propose to appoint a person to be a reserved teacher in such a school, that body—
- (a) shall consult the foundation governors, and
  - (b) shall not so appoint that person unless the foundation governors are satisfied as to his fitness and competence to give such religious education as is mentioned in subsection (2)(a).
- (6) If the foundation governors of such a school consider that a reserved teacher has failed to give such religious education efficiently and suitably, they may require the appropriate body to dismiss him from employment as a reserved teacher in the school.
- (7) If a teacher appointed to give religious education in a school to which this subsection applies fails to give such education efficiently and suitably, he may be dismissed on that ground by the governing body without the consent of the local education authority.
- (8) Subsection (7) does not apply—
- (a) where the school has a delegated budget, or
  - (b) to religious education in accordance with an agreed syllabus.
- (9) In this section—
- “the appropriate body” means—
- (a) in relation to a foundation school, the governing body, and
  - (b) in relation to a voluntary controlled school, the local education authority;
- “reserved teacher”, in relation to a foundation or voluntary controlled school, means a person employed at the school in pursuance of subsection (2).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C76** S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 49(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 50(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 51(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 49(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 51(3)**.  
 S. 58(2)-(6)(9) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(3)**.
- C77** S. 58(7) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(4)**.  
 S. 58(7) applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(4)**.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Religious opinions etc. of staff*

#### **59 Staff at community, secular foundation or voluntary, or special school.**

- (1) This section applies to—
  - (a) a community school or a community or foundation special school, or
  - (b) a foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character.
- (2) No person shall be disqualified by reason of his religious opinions, or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship—
  - (a) from being a teacher at the school, or
  - (b) from being employed for the purposes of the school otherwise than as a teacher.
- (3) No teacher at the school shall be required to give religious education.
- (4) No teacher at the school shall receive any less remuneration or be deprived of, or disqualified for, any promotion or other advantage—
  - (a) by reason of the fact that he does or does not give religious education, or
  - (b) by reason of his religious opinions or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C78** S. 59 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 49(2)**.  
S. 59 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 50(4)**.  
S. 59 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 51(2)**.  
S. 59 applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(5)**.  
S. 59 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 49(2)**.  
S. 59 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(4)**.  
S. 59 applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 51(2)**.  
S. 59 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(4)**.
- C79** S. 59(2)-(4) modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 50(5)**.  
S. 59(2)-(4) applied (with modifications) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(6)**.  
S. 59(2)-(4) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(5)**.  
S. 59(2)-(4) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(6)**.

#### **60 Staff at foundation or voluntary school with religious character.**

- (1) This section applies to a foundation or voluntary school which has a religious character.
- (2) If the school is a foundation or voluntary controlled school, then (subject to subsections (3) and (4) below) section 59(2) to (4) shall apply to the school as they apply to a foundation or voluntary controlled school which does not have a religious character.
- (3) Section 59(2) to (4) shall not so apply in relation to a reserved teacher at the school; and instead subsection (5) below shall apply in relation to such a teacher as it applies in relation to a teacher at a voluntary aided school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In connection with the appointment of a person to be head teacher of the school (whether foundation or voluntary controlled) regard may be had to that person’s ability and fitness to preserve and develop the religious character of the school.
- (5) If the school is a voluntary aided school—
- (a) preference may be given, in connection with the appointment, remuneration or promotion of teachers at the school, to persons—
    - (i) whose religious opinions are in accordance with the tenets of the religion or religious denomination specified in relation to the school under section 69(4), or
    - (ii) who attend religious worship in accordance with those tenets, or
    - (iii) who give, or are willing to give, religious education at the school in accordance with those tenets; and
  - (b) regard may be had, in connection with the termination of the employment of any teacher at the school, to any conduct on his part which is incompatible with the precepts, or with the upholding of the tenets, of the religion or religious denomination so specified.
- (6) If the school is a voluntary aided school, no person shall be disqualified by reason of his religious opinions, or of his attending or omitting to attend religious worship, from being employed for the purposes of the school otherwise than as a teacher.
- (7) Where immediately before the appointed day a teacher at a school which on that day becomes a school to which this section applies enjoyed, by virtue of section 304 or 305 of the <sup>M19</sup>Education Act 1996 (religious opinions of staff etc.), any rights not conferred on him by this section as a teacher at a school to which it applies, he shall continue to enjoy those rights (in addition to those conferred by this section) until he ceases to be employed as a teacher at the school.
- (8) In this section “reserved teacher”, in relation to a foundation or voluntary controlled school, means a person employed at the school in pursuance of section 58(2).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C80** S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 49(3)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 50(5)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 51(3)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(6)**.  
 S. 60 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 49(3)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(5)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 51(3)**.  
 S. 60 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(6)**.

#### Marginal Citations

- M19** 1996 c. 56.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Discipline: general*

**61 Responsibility of governing body and head teacher for discipline.**

- (1) The governing body of a maintained school shall ensure that policies designed to promote good behaviour and discipline on the part of its pupils are pursued at the school.
- (2) In particular, the governing body—
  - (a) shall make, and from time to time review, a written statement of general principles to which the head teacher is to have regard in determining any measures under subsection (4); and
  - (b) where they consider it desirable that any particular measures should be so determined by the head teacher or that he should have regard to any particular matters—
    - (i) shall notify him of those measures or matters, and
    - (ii) may give him such guidance as they consider appropriate;and in exercising their functions under this subsection the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Before making or revising the statement required by subsection (2)(a) the governing body shall consult (in such manner as appears to them to be appropriate)—
  - (a) the head teacher; and
  - (b) parents of registered pupils at the school.
- (4) The head teacher shall determine measures (which may include the making of rules and provision for enforcing them) to be taken with a view to—
  - (a) promoting, among pupils, self-discipline and proper regard for authority;
  - (b) encouraging good behaviour and respect for others on the part of pupils and, in particular, preventing all forms of bullying among pupils;
  - (c) securing that the standard of behaviour of pupils is acceptable; and
  - (d) otherwise regulating the conduct of pupils.
- (5) The head teacher shall in determining such measures—
  - (a) act in accordance with the current statement made by the governing body under subsection (2)(a); and
  - (b) have regard to any notification or guidance given to him under subsection (2)(b).
- (6) The standard of behaviour which is to be regarded as acceptable at the school shall be determined by the head teacher, so far as it is not determined by the governing body.
- (7) The measures determined by the head teacher under subsection (4) shall be publicised by him in the form of a written document as follows—
  - (a) he shall make the measures generally known within the school and to parents of registered pupils at the school; and
  - (b) he shall in particular, at least once in every school year, take steps to bring them to the attention of all such pupils and parents and all persons employed, or otherwise engaged to provide their services, at the school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C81** S. 61 applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, reg. 59.

**C82** S. 61 extended (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 59.

**62 LEA’s reserve power to prevent a breakdown of discipline.**

- (1) The local education authority may, in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (2) or where subsection (3) applies, take such steps in relation to a maintained school as they consider are required to prevent the breakdown, or continuing breakdown, of discipline at the school.
- (2) The circumstances are that—
  - (a) in the opinion of the authority—
    - (i) the behaviour of registered pupils at the school, or
    - (ii) any action taken by such pupils or their parents,
 is such that the education of any registered pupils at the school is (or is likely in the immediate future to become) severely prejudiced; and
  - (b) the governing body have been informed in writing of the authority’s opinion.
- (3) This subsection applies where—
  - (a) a warning notice has been given in accordance with section 15(2) referring to the safety of pupils or staff at the school being threatened by a breakdown of discipline at the school,
  - (b) the governing body have failed to comply, or secure compliance, with the notice to the authority’s satisfaction within the compliance period, and
  - (c) the authority have given reasonable notice in writing to the governing body that they propose to exercise their powers under subsection (1) of this section (whether or not in conjunction with exercising their powers under either or both of sections 16 and 17);
 and a notice under paragraph (c) of this subsection may be combined with a notice under section 15(1)(c).
- (4) Steps taken by a local education authority under subsection (1) may include the giving of any direction to the governing body or head teacher.

*School attendance targets*

**63 School attendance targets.**

- (1) Regulations may make provision for and in connection with—
  - (a) requiring, or
  - (b) enabling the Secretary of State to require,
 governing bodies of maintained schools to secure that annual targets are set for reducing the level of unauthorised absences on the part of relevant day pupils at their schools.
- (2) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) for the Secretary of State to impose such a requirement on the governing body of a maintained school where—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (i) the specified condition is for the time being satisfied in relation to the school, and
  - (ii) he considers it appropriate to impose the requirement;
- (b) for such a requirement to be imposed by the Secretary of State in such manner, and for such period, as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations;
- (c) for the Secretary of State, where he considers it appropriate to do so, to exempt the governing body of a maintained school, in relation to any school year, from a requirement imposed by virtue of subsection (1)(a) or (b).
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a)(i) the specified condition is for the time being satisfied in relation to a maintained school if in the previous school year the level of unauthorised absences on the part of relevant day pupils at the school (as determined in accordance with the regulations) exceeded such level as may for that year be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (4) In this section—
- “relevant day pupil” means a pupil registered at a maintained school who is of compulsory school age and is not a boarder;
  - “unauthorised absence”, in relation to such a pupil, means any occasion on which the pupil is recorded as absent without authority pursuant to regulations under section 434 of the <sup>M20</sup>Education Act 1996 (registration of pupils).

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C83** S. 63 extended (*temp.*) (16.2.1999) by [S.I. 1999/129](#), **reg.2**.

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M20** 1996 c. 56.

*Exclusion of pupils*

**64 Power of head teacher to exclude pupils.**

- (1) The head teacher of a maintained school may exclude a pupil from the school for a fixed period or permanently.
- (2) The head teacher may not exercise the power to exclude a pupil from the school for one or more fixed periods such that the pupil is so excluded for more than 45 school days in any one school year.
- (3) A pupil may not be excluded from a maintained school (whether by suspension, expulsion or otherwise) except by the head teacher in accordance with this section.
- (4) In this Act “exclude”, in relation to the exclusion of a child from a school, means exclude on disciplinary grounds (and “exclusion” shall be construed accordingly).

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C84** Ss. 64-68 restricted (13.8.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), **art. 4**, **Sch. 6**, **para. 1**

**C85** S. 64(2)(3): Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 52(8)(9)**, **216** (with **ss. 210(8)**, **214(4)**)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- C86** S. 64(2)(3): Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 52\(8\)\(9\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#))
- C87** S. 64(4) extended (16.6.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1439, reg. 13\(2\)](#).

## 65 Exclusion of pupils: duty to inform parents, etc.

- (1) Where the head teacher of a maintained school excludes any pupil, the head teacher shall (without delay) take reasonable steps to inform the relevant person of the following matters—
  - (a) the period of the exclusion (or, if the pupil is being permanently excluded, that he is being so excluded);
  - (b) the reasons for the exclusion;
  - (c) that he may make representations about the exclusion to the governing body, and
  - (d) the means by which such representations may be made.
- (2) Where the head teacher decides that any exclusion of a pupil for a fixed period should be made permanent, he shall (without delay) take reasonable steps to inform the relevant person of—
  - (a) his decision, and
  - (b) the matters specified in paragraphs (b) to (d) of subsection (1).
- (3) Subsection (4) applies where the head teacher—
  - (a) excludes any pupil in circumstances where the pupil would, as a result of the exclusion—
    - (i) be excluded from the school for a total of more than five school days in any one term, or
    - (ii) lose an opportunity to take any public examination,
  - (b) excludes a pupil permanently, or
  - (c) decides that any exclusion of a pupil should be made permanent.
- (4) Where this subsection applies, the head teacher shall (without delay) inform the local education authority and the governing body of the following matters—
  - (a) the period of the exclusion (or, if the pupil is being permanently excluded, that he is being so excluded), or
  - (b) his decision that any exclusion of a pupil for a fixed period should be made permanent,
 and (in either case) of the reasons for it.
- (5) In this section and in sections 66 and 67 “the relevant person” means—
  - (a) in relation to a pupil under the age of 18, a parent of his;
  - (b) in relation to a pupil who has attained that age, the pupil himself.
- (6) Where regulations under paragraph 4 of Schedule 11 require the governing body of a maintained school to establish a discipline committee, references in this section and sections 66 to 68 to the governing body of such a school shall be construed as references to their discipline committee.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C88** Ss. 64-68 restricted (13.8.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 4, Sch. 6 para. 1](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**C89** Ss. 65-67: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 52\(8\)\(9\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#))

## 66 Functions of governing body in relation to excluded pupils.

- (1) Subsections (2) to (6) apply where the governing body of a maintained school are informed under section 65(4) of any exclusion or decision to which that provision applies.
- (2) The governing body shall in any such case—
  - (a) consider the circumstances in which the pupil was excluded;
  - (b) consider any representations about the exclusion made to the governing body—
    - (i) by the relevant person in pursuance of section 65(1)(c) or (2)(b), or
    - (ii) by the local education authority;
  - (c) allow each of the following, namely—
    - (i) the relevant person, and
    - (ii) an officer of the local education authority nominated by the authority, to attend a meeting of the governing body and to make oral representations about the exclusion; and
  - (d) consider any oral representations so made.
- (3) In a case where it would be practical for the governing body to give a direction to the head teacher requiring the reinstatement of a pupil, they shall in addition consider whether he should be reinstated immediately, reinstated by a particular date or not reinstated.
- (4) If the governing body decide that the pupil should be reinstated, they shall forthwith—
  - (a) give the appropriate direction to the head teacher, and
  - (b) inform the relevant person and the local education authority of their decision.
- (5) The head teacher shall comply with any direction of the governing body for the reinstatement of a pupil who has been excluded from the school.
- (6) If the governing body decide that the pupil should not be reinstated, they shall forthwith—
  - (a) inform the relevant person, the head teacher and the local education authority of their decision, and
  - (b) in addition, in the case of a pupil who is permanently excluded, give the relevant person notice in writing referring to that decision and stating the following matters—
    - (i) the reasons for the decision,
    - (ii) his right to appeal against the decision,
    - (iii) the person to whom he should give any notice of appeal,
    - (iv) that any notice of appeal must contain the grounds of appeal, and
    - (v) the last date on which an appeal may be made.
- (7) Where—
  - (a) the head teacher of a maintained school excludes a pupil otherwise than as mentioned in section 65(3), and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the governing body receive any representations made in pursuance of section 65(1)(c) or (2)(b) by the relevant person about the exclusion, they shall consider those representations.
- (8) Regulations may provide that, where a governing body of a maintained school are required under this section to take any step, the duty must, subject to such exceptions as may be prescribed, be performed within the prescribed period; but such a provision shall not relieve the governing body of the duty to take any step which has not been taken within that period.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C90** Ss. 64-68 restricted (13.8.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 4, [Sch. 6 para. 1](#)

**C91** Ss. 65-67: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 52\(8\)\(9\)](#), 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#))

**Commencement Information**

**I18** S. 66 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 66 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 66(8) in force at 1.12.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1 Pt. II](#); s. 66 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

**67 Appeals against exclusion of pupils.**

- (1) A local education authority shall make arrangements for enabling the relevant person to appeal against any decision of the governing body under section 66 not to reinstate a pupil who has been permanently excluded from a school maintained by the authority.
- (2) Schedule 18 has effect in relation to the making and hearing of appeals pursuant to arrangements made under subsection (1); and in subsections (3) and (4) “appeal panel” means an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 of that Schedule.
- (3) The decision of an appeal panel on an appeal pursuant to arrangements made under subsection (1) shall be binding on the relevant person, the governing body, the head teacher and the local education authority.
- (4) Where on such an appeal the appeal panel determines that the pupil in question should be reinstated, the panel shall either—
- (a) direct that he is to be reinstated immediately, or
  - (b) direct that he is to be reinstated by a date specified in the direction.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C92** Ss. 64-68 restricted (13.8.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 4, [Sch. 6 para. 1](#)

**C93** Ss. 65-67: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 52\(8\)\(9\)](#), 216 (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#))

**Commencement Information**

**I19** S. 67 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 67 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 67(2) in force for specified purpose at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-6, [Sch. 4](#)); s. 67 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 68 Exclusion of pupils: guidance.

- (1) This section applies to any functions of—
  - (a) the head teacher or the governing body of a maintained school,
  - (b) a local education authority, or
  - (c) an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 18, conferred by or under any of sections 64 to 67 and Schedule 18.
- (2) In discharging any such function, such a person or body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C94 Ss. 64-68 restricted (13.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 4, Sch. 6 para. 1

## CHAPTER VI

### RELIGIOUS EDUCATION AND WORSHIP

#### *Religious education*

## 69 Duty to secure due provision of religious education.

- (1) Subject to section 71, in relation to any community, foundation or voluntary school—
  - (a) the local education authority and the governing body shall exercise their functions with a view to securing, and
  - (b) the head teacher shall secure,  
that religious education is given in accordance with the provision for such education included in the school's basic curriculum by virtue of [<sup>F63</sup>section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002].
- (2) Schedule 19 has effect for determining the provision for religious education which is required by [<sup>F64</sup>section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a)] of that Act to be included in the basic curriculum of schools within each of the following categories, namely—
  - (a) community schools and foundation and voluntary schools which do not have a religious character,
  - (b) foundation and voluntary controlled schools which have a religious character, and
  - (c) voluntary aided schools which have a religious character.
- (3) For the purposes of this Part a foundation or voluntary school has a religious character if it is designated as a school having such a character by an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) shall state, in relation to each school designated by the order, the religion or religious denomination in accordance with whose tenets religious education is, or may be, required to be provided at the school in accordance with Schedule 19 (or, as the case may be, each such religion or religious denomination).
- (5) The procedure to be followed in connection with—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the designation of a school in an order under subsection (3), and
  - (b) the inclusion in such an order, in relation to a school, of the statement required by subsection (4),
- shall be specified in regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F63** Words in s. 69(1) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 104\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#), (with Sch.); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1; [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)
- F64** Words in s. 69(2) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 104\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#), (with Sch.); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1; [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I20** S. 69 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 69 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 69(2)-(5) in force at 1.10.1998 by [1998/2212](#), [art. 2](#), Sch. 1, Pt. I; s. 69 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

### *Religious worship*

#### **70 Requirements relating to collective worship.**

- (1) Subject to section 71, each pupil in attendance at a community, foundation or voluntary school shall on each school day take part in an act of collective worship.
- (2) Subject to section 71, in relation to any community, foundation or voluntary school—
  - (a) the local education authority and the governing body shall exercise their functions with a view to securing, and
  - (b) the head teacher shall secure,
 that subsection (1) is complied with.
- (3) Schedule 20 makes further provision with respect to the collective worship required by this section, including provision relating to—
  - (a) the arrangements which are to be made in connection with such worship, and
  - (b) the nature of such worship.

### *Exceptions and special arrangements etc.*

#### **71 Exceptions and special arrangements; provision for special schools.**

- (1) If the parent of a pupil at a community, foundation or voluntary school requests that he may be wholly or partly excused—
  - (a) from receiving religious education given in the school in accordance with the school's basic curriculum,
  - (b) from attendance at religious worship in the school, or
  - (c) both from receiving such education and from such attendance,



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

the pupil shall be so excused until the request is withdrawn.

- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) the reference to religious education given in accordance with the school's basic curriculum is to such education given in accordance with the provision included in the school's basic curriculum by virtue of [F65 section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002], and
  - (b) the reference to religious worship in the school includes religious worship which by virtue of paragraph 2(6) of Schedule 20 takes place otherwise than on the school premises.
- (3) Where in accordance with subsection (1) a pupil has been wholly or partly excused from receiving religious education or from attendance at religious worship and the local education authority are satisfied—
- (a) that the parent of the pupil desires him to receive religious education of a kind which is not provided in the school during the periods of time during which he is so excused,
  - (b) that the pupil cannot with reasonable convenience be sent to another community, foundation or voluntary school where religious education of the kind desired by the parent is provided, and
  - (c) that arrangements have been made for him to receive religious education of that kind during school hours elsewhere,
- the pupil may be withdrawn from the school during such periods of time as are reasonably necessary for the purpose of enabling him to receive religious education in accordance with the arrangements.
- (4) A pupil may not be withdrawn from school under subsection (3) unless the local education authority are satisfied that the arrangements there mentioned are such as will not interfere with the attendance of the pupil at school on any day except at the beginning or end of a school session (or, if there is only one, the school session) on that day.
- (5) Where the parent of a pupil who is a boarder at a community, foundation or voluntary school requests that the pupil be permitted—
- (a) to receive religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination outside school hours, or
  - (b) to attend worship in accordance with such tenets on Sundays or other days exclusively set apart for religious observance by the religious body to which his parent belongs,
- the governing body shall make arrangements for giving the pupil reasonable opportunities for doing so.
- (6) Arrangements under subsection (5) may provide for making facilities for such education or worship available on the school premises, but any expenditure entailed by the arrangements shall not be met from the school's budget share or otherwise by the local education authority.
- (7) Regulations shall make provision for securing that, so far as practicable, every pupil attending a community or foundation special school—
- (a) receives religious education and attends religious worship, or
  - (b) is withdrawn from receiving such education or from attendance at such worship in accordance with the wishes of his parent.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F65** Words in s. 71(2)(a) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 105](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2003/124, art. 2](#)

### Commencement Information

- I21** S. 71 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 71 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 71(7) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1, Pt. I](#); s. 71 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

## CHAPTER VII

### MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTAL

#### *Further provisions relating to new schools*

### 72 Further provisions relating to new schools.

- (1) Regulations may make provision for—
- (a) the staffing and conduct of a new school in advance of the school opening date;
  - (b) the determination of matters in connection with a new school in advance of that date;
  - (c) the taking of decisions by a temporary governing body, or (where power to do so is delegated to him) by the head teacher, as to expenditure in connection with a new school at a time when it does not have a delegated budget;
  - (d) such other matters relating to new schools as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in connection with any matters falling within that subsection, apply any provision of the Education Acts with or without modification.
- (3) In this section “new school” means a school or proposed school—
- (a) for which there is a temporary governing body constituted under section 44, or
  - (b) for which there is no such body but for which such a body—
    - (i) are required to be so constituted by virtue of subsection (1) of that section, or
    - (ii) may be so constituted in accordance with such anticipatory arrangements as are mentioned in subsection (5)(a) of that section.

#### *Transfers of staff and land*

### 73 Transfer of staff on appointed day.

- (1) Subsections (5) to (7) below (“the staff transfer provisions”) apply where on the appointed day—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) a special agreement school becomes a voluntary aided school, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained school becomes a community or voluntary controlled school, or
  - (c) a grant-maintained special school becomes a community special school, in accordance with Schedule 2.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), the staff transfer provisions apply in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) to any person who immediately before the appointed day—
  - (a) is employed by the local education authority to work solely at an existing school within subsection (1)(a), or
  - (b) is employed by the local education authority to work at such an existing school and is designated for the purposes of this subsection by an order made by the Secretary of State, or
  - (c) is employed by the governing body of an existing school within subsection (1)(b) or (c).
- (3) The staff transfer provisions do not apply—
  - (a) to any person employed as mentioned in subsection (2) whose contract of employment terminates on the day immediately preceding the appointed day; or
  - (b) to any person employed as mentioned in subsection (2)(a) or (b) who before that day—
    - (i) has been appointed or assigned by the local education authority to work solely at another school as from that day, or
    - (ii) has been withdrawn from work at the school with effect from that day.
- (4) A person who before the appointed day has been appointed or assigned by—
  - (a) the local education authority, or
  - (b) the governing body of an existing school within subsection (1)(b) or (c),to work at a school, or (as the case may be) at the existing school, as from that day shall be treated for the purposes of this section as if he had been employed by the authority or governing body immediately before that day to do such work at the school as he would have been required to do on or after that day under his contract of employment with the authority or that body.
- (5) The contract of employment between a person to whom the staff transfer provisions apply and his former employer shall have effect from the appointed day as if originally made between him and his new employer.
- (6) Without prejudice to subsection (5)—
  - (a) all the former employer's rights, powers, duties and liabilities under or in connection with the contract of employment shall by virtue of this section be transferred to the new employer on the appointed day, and
  - (b) anything done before that date by or in relation to the former employer in respect of that contract or the employee shall be deemed from that day to have been done by or in relation to the new employer.
- (7) Subsections (5) and (6) are without prejudice to any right of an employee to terminate his contract of employment if a substantial change is made to his detriment in his working conditions, but no such right shall arise by reason only of the change in employer effected by this section.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(8) In this section—

“existing school” means a school which becomes a school of a different category on the appointed day as mentioned in subsection (1), and “new school” means the school of a different category which an existing school then becomes;

“the former employer” and “the new employer”—

- (a) where the staff transfer provisions apply by virtue of subsection (2)(a) or (b), means the local education authority and the governing body of the new school respectively, and
- (b) where the staff transfer provisions apply by virtue of subsection (2)(c), means the governing body of the existing school and the local education authority respectively;

and references to a special agreement, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school are references to such a school within the meaning of the <sup>M21</sup>Education Act 1996.

- (9) A person employed by a local education authority in connection with the provision of meals shall not be regarded for the purposes of subsection (2)(a) as employed to work solely at a school unless the meals are provided solely for consumption by persons at the school.
- (10) An order under this section may designate a person either individually or as a member of a class or description of employees.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C95 S. 73 excluded (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, reg.56.

**Marginal Citations**

M21 1996 c. 56.

**74 Transfer of land on appointed day.**

Schedule 21 (which makes provision for transfers of land and certain rights and liabilities on the appointed day in respect of schools which become community, foundation, voluntary or community special schools on that day) shall have effect.

**75 Transfer of land by governing body to trustees.**

- (1) Where a building is to be provided for a foundation or voluntary school and the building—
  - (a) is to form part of the school premises, and
  - (b) is to be constructed partly on land held by the governing body and partly on land held on trust for the purposes of the school by persons other than the governing body,
 the governing body shall transfer to those persons the land held by the governing body on which the building is to be constructed.
- (2) Paragraph 1 of Schedule 22 does not apply to any transfer required by subsection (1).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Disposals of land and on discontinuance*

#### **76 Disposals of land in case of certain schools and disposals on discontinuance.**

Schedule 22 (which makes provision as to the disposal of land held for the purposes of foundation, voluntary or foundation special schools and as to the property of maintained schools on their discontinuance) shall have effect.

#### **77 Control of disposals or changes in use of school playing fields.**

- (1) Except with the consent of the Secretary of State, a body to whom this subsection applies shall not dispose of any playing fields—
  - (a) which are, immediately before the date of the disposal, used by a maintained school for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) which are not then so used but have been so used at any time within the period of 10 years ending with that date.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies—
  - (a) to a local authority; and
  - (b) in any case where the consent of the Secretary of State is not required to any such disposal by virtue of either of paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 22—
    - (i) to the governing body of a maintained school, and
    - (ii) to a foundation body.
- (3) Except with the consent of the Secretary of State, a local authority shall not take any action (other than the making of a disposal falling within subsection (1)) which is intended or likely to result in a change of use of any playing fields—
  - (a) which are, immediately before the date when the action is taken, used by a maintained school for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) which are not then so used but have been so used at any time within the period of 10 years ending with that date,whereby the playing fields will be used for purposes which do not consist of or include their use as playing fields by such a school for the purposes of the school.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not, however, apply where the land in question will, on a change of use falling within that subsection, become used in connection with the provision by a local authority of educational facilities for a maintained school or any recreational facilities.
- (5) For the purposes of this section the Secretary of State's consent may be given in relation to a particular disposal or change of use or generally in relation to disposals or changes of use of a particular description, and in either case may be given subject to conditions.
- (6) This section has effect despite anything in section 123 or 127 of the <sup>M22</sup>Local Government Act 1972 (general power to dispose of land) or in any other enactment; and any consent which a local authority are required to obtain by virtue of this section shall be in addition to any consent required by virtue of either of those sections.
- (7) In this section—

“local authority” includes a parish council;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“playing fields” means land in the open air which is provided for the purposes of physical education or recreation, other than any prescribed description of such land.

- (8) For the purposes of this section any reference to a maintained school includes, in relation to any time falling before the appointed day, a reference to the school as—
- (a) a county, voluntary or maintained special school, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school,
- within the meaning of the <sup>M23</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (9) Nothing in this section applies in relation to Wales.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C96** S. 77(1) restricted (28.7.2000) by 2000 c. 21, s. 131, **Sch. 8 para. 9(3)** (with s. 150)
- C97** S. 77(1) excluded (26.7.2002) by Education Act 1996 (c. 56), **Sch. 35A para. 10(4)** (as inserted by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65, 216, **Sch. 7 Pt. 1 para. 1** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 2**)
- C98** S. 77 modified (*temp.*) (1.2.1999) by S.I. 1999/1, **reg.2**

#### Commencement Information

- I22** S. 77 wholly in force; s. 77 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 77 except subsection (2)(b) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, **art. 2**, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**; s. 77(2)(b) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/3198, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch.**

#### Marginal Citations

- M22** 1972 c. 70.
- M23** 1996 c. 56.

### Rating

#### 78 Rating of maintained schools.

For the purposes of Part III of the <sup>M24</sup>Local Government Finance Act 1988 (non-domestic rating) the occupier of any hereditament so far as consisting of the premises of a maintained school shall be taken to be—

- (a) the local education authority, where it is a community, voluntary controlled or community special school; or
- (b) the governing body, where it is a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school.

#### Marginal Citations

- M24** 1988 c. 41.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Stamp duty*

#### **79 Stamp duty.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), stamp duty shall not be chargeable in respect of any transfer to a local authority under any of the following provisions, namely—
  - (a) paragraph 4 or 7 of Schedule 21 or any corresponding provision of regulations under paragraph 10 of Schedule 2,
  - (b) paragraph 4(2), 5(4), 6(2)(b), 7(2) or 8(2)(b) of Schedule 22, or
  - (c) any regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 8.
- (2) No instrument (other than a statutory instrument) made or executed under or in pursuance of any of the provisions mentioned in subsection (1) shall be treated as duly stamped unless—
  - (a) it is stamped with the duty to which it would be liable but for that subsection, or
  - (b) it has, in accordance with section 12 of the <sup>M25</sup>Stamp Act 1891, been stamped with a particular stamp denoting that it is not chargeable with any duty or that it has been duly stamped.
- (3) In subsection (1) any reference to a transfer under any provision or regulations mentioned in that subsection shall be read as a reference to a transfer under that provision or those regulations taken with section 198 of, and Schedule 10 to, the <sup>M26</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 if those provisions of that Act apply to the transfer by virtue of any provision of this Act or that Act.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M25** 1891 c. 39.

**M26** 1988 c. 40.

### *Further education*

#### **80 Provision of further education.**

- (1) The governing body of any maintained school shall be responsible for determining whether or not to provide—
  - (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age; or
  - (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19;but the governing body of a community or foundation special school shall not determine to provide, or to cease to provide, such education without the consent of the local education authority.
- (2) It shall be the duty of the governing body of any such school which provides such education to secure that, except in such circumstances as may be prescribed, such education is not provided at any time in a room where pupils are at that time being taught.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) This section shall not apply to part-time education provided under a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of the <sup>M27</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (as inserted by section 125(4) of this Act) applies.

**Marginal Citations**

M27 1992 c. 13.

*Modification of employment law*

**81 Application of employment law during financial delegation.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications in any enactment relating to employment, and in particular in any enactment—
- (a) conferring powers or imposing duties on employers,
  - (b) conferring rights on employees, or
  - (c) otherwise regulating the relations between employers and employees,
- as he considers necessary or expedient in consequence of the operation of sections 54 and 57(1) to (3), Schedule 16 and paragraph 27 of Schedule 17.
- (2) Before making any order under this section the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) such associations of local authorities,
  - (b) such bodies representing the interests of governors of foundation or voluntary schools, and
  - (c) such organisations representing staff in maintained schools,
- as appear to him to be concerned.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C99 S. 81(2) modified (*temp.*) (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, reg. 9.

*Supplementary provisions*

**82 Modification of trust deeds.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to—
- (a) a school which is or is to become a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, or
  - (b) property held on trust for the purposes of such a school,
- as appear to him to be necessary or expedient in connection with the operation of any provision of this Act [<sup>F66</sup>, the Learning and Skills Act 2000 or the Education Act 2002] or anything done under or for the purposes of any such provision.
- (2) Before making an order under this section the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) the governing body of the school in question;
  - (b) any trustees holding property on trust for the purposes of the school;



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority; and
  - (d) such other persons as he considers appropriate.
- (3) Any modification made by an order under this section may be made so as to have permanent effect or to have effect for such period as is specified in the order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F66** Words in. 82(1) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 108](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.); S.I. 2002/3185, [art. 4](#), Sch. Pt. 1

### 83 Modification of provisions making governors of foundation or voluntary school ex officio trustees.

- (1) Where any provision of a trust deed or other instrument made before 1st July 1981 would, apart from this subsection, have the effect that the persons who are for the time being governors of a foundation or voluntary school were by virtue of their office trustees of any property held for the purposes of, or in connection with, the school, that provision shall instead have effect as if the only governors of the school were—
- (a) the foundation governors,
  - (b) those appointed by the local education authority, and
  - (c) any co-opted governor nominated by a minor authority.
- (2) Subsection (1) is without prejudice to any power to amend any such provision as is mentioned in that subsection.

## PART III

### SCHOOL ADMISSIONS

#### CHAPTER I

##### ADMISSION ARRANGEMENTS

#### *Code of practice*

### 84 Code of practice.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue, and may from time to time revise, a code of practice containing such practical guidance as he thinks appropriate in respect of the discharge by—
- (a) local education authorities,
  - (b) the governing bodies of maintained schools,
  - (c) appeal panels, and
  - (d) adjudicators,
- of their respective functions under this Chapter.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The code may include guidelines setting out aims, objectives and other matters in relation to the discharge of their functions under this Chapter by local education authorities and such governing bodies.
- (3) It shall be the duty of—
- (a) each of the bodies and persons mentioned in subsection (1) when exercising functions under this Chapter, and
  - (b) any other person when exercising any function for the purposes of the discharge by a local education authority, or the governing body of a maintained school, of functions under this Chapter,
- to have regard to any relevant provisions of the code.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall publish the code as for the time being in force.
- (5) The Secretary of State may under subsection (1)—
- (a) make separate provision (by means of separate codes of practice) in relation to different functions under this Chapter of the bodies and persons mentioned in that subsection;
  - (b) make different provision for England and for Wales (whether or not by means of separate codes of practice);
- and references in this section to “the code” or to functions under this Chapter shall have effect, in relation to any such separate code of practice, as references to that code or to functions under this Chapter to which it relates (as the case may be).
- (6) In this Chapter—
- “admission arrangements” and “the admission authority” have the meaning given by section 88;
- “appeal panel” means a panel constituted under Schedule 24 or 25 for the purpose of hearing an appeal under this Chapter;
- “child” (except in sections 96 and 97) includes a person who has not attained the age of 19;
- “maintained school” means a community, foundation or voluntary school;
- [<sup>F67</sup>“the relevant standard number”, in relation to a maintained school, a relevant age group and a school year, means the standard number applying under Schedule 23 to the school in relation to that age group and year.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F67** S. 84(6): Definition of “the relevant standard number” repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C100** S. 84 modified (temp.)(22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, reg.2.  
 S. 84 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.  
 S. 84 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.
- C101** S. 84(6) modified (6.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3130, reg.2

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 85 Making and approval of code of practice.

- (1) Where the Secretary of State proposes to issue or revise a code of practice under section 84, he shall prepare a draft of the code (or revised code).
- (2) The Secretary of State shall consult such persons about the draft as he thinks fit and shall consider any representations made by them.
- (3) If he determines to proceed with the draft (either in its original form or with such modifications as he thinks fit) he shall lay a copy of the draft before each House of Parliament.
- (4) If, within the 40-day period, either House resolves not to approve the draft, the Secretary of State shall take no further steps in relation to the proposed code.
- (5) If no such resolution is made within the 40-day period, the Secretary of State shall issue the code (or revised code) in the form of the draft, and it shall come into force on such date as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.
- (6) Subsection (4) does not prevent a new draft of a proposed code from being laid before Parliament.
- (7) In this section “40-day period”, in relation to the draft of a proposed code, means—
  - (a) if the draft is laid before one House on a day later than the day on which it is laid before the other House, the period of 40 days beginning with the later of the two days, and
  - (b) in any other case, the period of 40 days beginning with the day on which the draft is laid before each House,
 no account being taken of any period during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than four days.
- (8) In this section references to a proposed code include a proposed revised code.

VALID FROM 20/01/2003

### *[F68 Admission forums*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F68** S. 85A cross-heading inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.12.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 46, 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2003/2961, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)

#### **85A Admission forums**

- (1) A local education authority shall in accordance with regulations establish for their area a body, to be known as an admission forum, for the purpose of—
  - (a) advising the authority on such matters connected with the exercise of the authority’s functions under this Chapter as may be prescribed, and
  - (b) advising the admission authorities for maintained schools in the area for which the forum is established on—
    - (i) such matters connected with the determination of admission arrangements, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(ii) such other matters connected with the admission of pupils, as may be prescribed.

- (2) The authority may establish sub-committees of the forum.
- (3) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) as to the constitution, meetings and proceedings of an admission forum and of any such sub-committee,
  - (b) as to the manner in which advice is to be given by a forum, and
  - (c) as to the establishment by local education authorities of joint admission forums.
- (4) The bodies mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) shall have regard, in carrying out their functions, to any relevant advice given to them by an admission forum under that subsection.
- (5) The local education authority shall make arrangements for the forum (and any sub-committee established under subsection (2)) to be provided with accommodation and with such services as the authority consider appropriate.

#### **Functions of admission forums in relation to Academies**

[<sup>F69</sup>85B

- (1) Regulations may authorise or require an admission forum established by a local education authority under section 85A to give advice to the governing body of any Academy in the authority's area on any matter corresponding to a matter prescribed under subsection (1)(b) of that section.
- (2) The governing body of an Academy shall have regard, in conducting the Academy, to any relevant advice given to them by an admission forum by virtue of subsection (1).]]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F69** S. 85B inserted (20.1.2003 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 66, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2952](#), art. 2 (with Sch.)

### *Parental preferences*

#### **86 Parental preferences.**

- (1) A local education authority shall make arrangements for enabling the parent of a child in the area of the authority—
  - (a) to express a preference as to the school at which he wishes education to be provided for his child in the exercise of the authority's functions, and
  - (b) to give reasons for his preference.
- (2) Subject to [<sup>F70</sup>subsections (3) and (3A)] and section 87 (children excluded from two or more schools), a local education authority and the governing body of a maintained school shall comply with any preference expressed in accordance with arrangements made under subsection (1).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

[<sup>F71</sup>(2A) Arrangements made under subsection (1) may allow the parent of a child to express preferences for more than one school; but nothing in this section requires the admission authority for a maintained school for which a child’s parent has expressed a preference to offer the child admission to the school if, in accordance with a scheme adopted or made by virtue of section 89B, the child is offered admission to a different school for which the parent has also expressed a preference.]

- (3) The duty imposed by subsection (2) does not apply—
- (a) if compliance with the preference would prejudice the provision of efficient education or the efficient use of resources; [<sup>F72</sup>or]
  - (b) [<sup>F73</sup>if the preferred school is a foundation or voluntary aided school and compliance with the preference would be incompatible with any special arrangements under section 91 (admission arrangements to preserve the religious character of a foundation or voluntary aided school); or]
  - (c) if the arrangements for admission to the preferred school—
    - (i) are wholly based on selection by reference to ability or aptitude, and
    - (ii) are so based with a view to admitting only pupils with high ability or with aptitude,
 and compliance with the preference would be incompatible with selection under those arrangements.

[<sup>F74</sup>(3A) In relation to a preference expressed by a parent as to the school at which he wishes secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age to be provided for his child, the duty imposed by subsection (2) also does not apply if the relevant selection arrangements are wholly based on selection by reference to ability or aptitude and compliance with the preference would be incompatible with selection under those arrangements.

(3B) In subsection (3A) “the relevant selection arrangements”, in relation to a school, means—

- (a) the arrangements for admission to the school for secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age, or
- (b) those arrangements and the arrangements for entry to the sixth form of children who have been admitted to the school;

and references in this subsection to entry to the sixth form of children who have been admitted to a school shall be construed in accordance with section 94(7).]

(4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) prejudice of the kind referred to in that provision may arise by reason of measures required to be taken in order to ensure compliance with the duty imposed by section 1(6) (duty of local education authority and governing body to comply with limit on infant class sizes).

[<sup>F75</sup>(5) No prejudice shall be taken to arise for the purposes of subsection (3)(a) from the admission to a maintained school in a school year of a number of pupils in a relevant age group which does not exceed the number determined under section 89 as the number of pupils in that age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year; but this subsection does not apply if the conditions set out in subsection (5A) are met in relation to the school and the school year.

(5A) Those conditions are—

- (a) that the school is one at which boarding accommodation is provided for pupils; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) that the determination under section 89 by the admission authority of the admission arrangements which are to apply for that year includes the determinations mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 89A(2).
- (5B) Where the conditions set out in subsection (5A) are met in relation to a maintained school and a school year, no prejudice shall be taken to arise for the purposes of subsection (3)(a) from either of the following—
- (a) the admission to the school in that year as boarders of a number of pupils in a relevant age group which does not exceed the number determined under section 89 as the number of pupils in that age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year as boarders;
- (b) the admission to the school in that year otherwise than as boarders of a number of pupils in a relevant age group which does not exceed the number determined under section 89 as the number of pupils in that age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year otherwise than as boarders.]
- (6) [<sup>F76</sup>Where—
- (a) the admission arrangements for two or more maintained schools provide for co-ordinated admissions on the part of those schools, and
- (b) they are approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this subsection, they shall have effect in relation to each of those schools despite anything in subsection (2).]
- (7) Where the arrangements for the admission of pupils to a maintained school provide for applications for admission to be made to (or to a person acting on behalf of) the governing body of the school, a parent who makes such an application shall be regarded for the purposes of this section as having expressed a preference for that school in accordance with arrangements made under subsection (1).
- (8) The duty imposed by subsection (2) in relation to a preference expressed in accordance with arrangements made under subsection (1) shall apply also in relation to—
- (a) any application for the admission to a maintained school of a child who is not in the area of the authority maintaining the school, and
- (b) any application made by a parent as mentioned in section 438(4) or 440(2) of the <sup>M28</sup>Education Act 1996 (application for a particular school to be named in a school attendance order);
- and references in [<sup>F77</sup>subsections (3) and (3A)] to a preference and a preferred school shall be construed accordingly.
- (9) Where admission arrangements for a school [<sup>F78</sup>, or arrangements such as are mentioned in subsection (3B), provide for all pupils selected under the arrangements] to be selected by reference to ability or aptitude, those arrangements shall be taken for the purposes of this section to be wholly based on selection by reference to ability or aptitude, whether or not they also provide for the use of additional criteria in circumstances where the number of children in a relevant age group who are assessed to be of the requisite ability or aptitude is greater than the number of pupils which it is intended to admit to the school in that age group.

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** Words in s. 86(2) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 51, 216, [Sch. 4 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#)) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F71** S. 86(2A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F72** Word in s. 86(3)(a) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(4)(a)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F73** S. 86(3)(b) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 215(2), 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(4)(b)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F74** S. 86(3A)(3B) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(5)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F75** S. 86(5)-(5B) substituted for s. 86(5) (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 47(1)**, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F76** S. 86(6) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 215(2), 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(6)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F77** Words in s. 86(8) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(7)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)
- F78** Words in s. 86(9) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, **Sch. 4 para. 3(8)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.) (as amended (6.3.2003) by S.I. 2003/606, arts. 1, 2)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C102** S. 86 modified (temp. from 22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, **reg. 3**  
 Ss. 86-87 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, **Sch. 4 paras. 1, 2(1)**  
 S. 86 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, **Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8**.  
 S. 86 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, **Sch. paras. 1, 2-8**.
- C103** S. 86(1) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/1812, reg. 8, **Sch. 2 para. 5(b)**
- C104** S. 86(3)(b) restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, **Sch. 4 paras. 1, 2(7)(8)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M28** 1996 c. 56.

## 87 No requirement to admit children permanently excluded from two or more schools.

- (1) The duty imposed by section 86(2) does not apply in the case of a child to whom subsection (2) below applies.
- (2) Where a child has been permanently excluded from two or more schools, this subsection applies to him during the period of two years beginning with the date on which the latest of those exclusions took effect.
- (3) Subsection (2) applies to a child whatever the length of the period or periods elapsing between those exclusions and regardless of whether it has applied to him on a previous occasion.
- (4) However, a child shall not be regarded as permanently excluded from a school for the purposes of this section if—
  - (a) although so excluded he was reinstated as a pupil at the school following the giving of a direction to that effect to the head teacher of the school; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) he was so excluded at a time when he had not attained compulsory school age.
- (5) In this section “school” means—
- (a) in relation to any time before or after the appointed day, a school maintained by a local education authority; or
- (b) in relation to any time before the appointed day, a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the <sup>M29</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (6) For the purposes of this section the permanent exclusion of a child from a school shall be regarded as having taken effect on the school day as from which the head teacher decided that he should be permanently excluded.
- (7) Nothing in this section applies to a child unless at least one of the two or more exclusions mentioned in subsection (2) took effect on or after 1st September 1997.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C105** Ss. 86-87 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, **2(1)**

S. 87 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), **2-8**

S. 87 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, **2-8**.

**Marginal Citations**

**M29** 1996 c. 56.

*Admission arrangements*

**88 Admission authorities and admission arrangements.**

- (1) In this Chapter “the admission authority”—
- (a) in relation to a community or voluntary controlled school, means—
- (i) the local education authority, or
- (ii) where with the governing body’s agreement the authority have delegated to them responsibility for determining the admission arrangements for the school, the governing body; and
- (b) in relation to a foundation or voluntary aided school, means the governing body.
- (2) In this Chapter “admission arrangements”, in relation to a maintained school, means the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school, including the school’s admission policy.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C106** S. 88 modified (6.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3130, **reg. 3**

**89 Procedure for determining admission arrangements.**

- (1) The admission authority for a maintained school shall, before the beginning of each school year, determine in accordance with this section the admission arrangements which are to apply for that year.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F79</sup>(2) Before determining the admission arrangements which are to apply for a particular school year, the admission authority shall consult the following about the proposed arrangements, namely—
- (a) whichever of the governing body and the local education authority are not the admission authority,
  - (b) the admission authorities for all other maintained schools in the relevant area or for such class of such schools as may be prescribed,
  - (c) the governing bodies for all community and voluntary controlled schools in the relevant area (so far as not falling within paragraph (a) or (b)), and
  - (d) the admission authorities for maintained schools of any prescribed description.
- (2A) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to the proposed admission arrangements for a particular school year if—
- (a) the admission authority are the school’s governing body, and
  - (b) prescribed conditions are satisfied in relation to that year.]
- (3) In subsection (2) “the relevant area” means—
- (a) the area of the local education authority; or
  - (b) if regulations so provide, such other area (whether more or less extensive than the area of the local education authority) as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations.
- (4) Once the admission authority have carried out any such consultation, the authority shall—
- (a) determine that their proposed arrangements (either in their original form or with such modifications as the authority think fit) shall be the admission arrangements for the school year in question; and
  - (b) (except in such cases as may be prescribed) notify the [<sup>F80</sup>appropriate bodies] of those admission arrangements.
- (5) Where an admission authority—
- (a) have in accordance with subsection (4) determined the admission arrangements which are to apply for a particular school year, but
  - (b) at any time before the end of that year consider that the arrangements should be varied in view of a major change in circumstances occurring since they were so determined,
- the authority shall (except in a case where their proposed variations fall within any description of variations prescribed for the purposes of this subsection) refer the proposed variations to the adjudicator, and shall (in every case) notify the [<sup>F81</sup>appropriate bodies] of the proposed variations.
- (6) The adjudicator shall consider whether the arrangements should have effect with those variations until the end of that year; and if he determines that the arrangements should so have effect or that they should so have effect subject to such modification of those variations as he may determine—
- (a) the arrangements shall have effect accordingly as from the date of his determination; and
  - (b) the admission authority shall (except in such cases as may be prescribed) notify the [<sup>F82</sup>appropriate bodies] of the variations subject to which the arrangements are to have effect.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) In relation to a maintained school in Wales any reference to the adjudicator in subsection (5) or (6) shall be read as a reference to the Secretary of State.
- (8) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) specifying matters to which any consultation required by subsection (2) is, or is not, to relate;
  - (b) as to the manner in which, and the time by which, any such consultation is to be carried out;
  - (c) as to the manner in which, and the time by which, any notification required by this section is to be given;
  - (d) specifying matters which are, or are not, to constitute major changes in circumstances for the purposes of subsection (5)(b);
  - (e) authorising an admission authority, where they have in accordance with subsection (4) determined the admission arrangements which are to apply for a particular school year, to vary those arrangements to such extent or in such circumstances as may be prescribed;
  - (f) for the application of any of the requirements of subsections (5) and (6) to variations proposed to be made by virtue of paragraph (e), or to any prescribed description of such variations, as if they were variations proposed to be made under subsection (5);
  - <sup>[F83]</sup>(fa) requiring an admission authority who have made a determination of a prescribed description under this section to publish such information relating to the determination (including information as to the authority’s reasons for making the determination) as may be prescribed;
  - (g) as to such other matters connected with the procedure for determining or varying admission arrangements under this section as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- <sup>[F84]</sup>(8A) The power under paragraph (fa) of subsection (8) to require an admission authority to publish information includes power to require them to publish it—
- (a) by giving a notice containing the information to prescribed persons, or
  - (b) in any other prescribed manner.]
- <sup>[F85]</sup>(9) Where the local education authority are the admission authority for a community or voluntary controlled school, they shall consult the governing body before making any reference under subsection (5).]
- <sup>[F86]</sup>(10) In this section “the appropriate bodies”, in relation to an admission authority, means the bodies whom they were required to consult under subsection (2), or would but for subsection (2A) have been required so to consult.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F79** S. 89(2)(2A) substituted for s. 89(2) (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 5\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F80** Words in s. 89(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 5\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F81** Words in s. 89(5) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 5\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F82** Words in s. 89(6) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 5\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F83** S. 89(8)(fa) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 51, 216, [Sch. 4 para. 5\(4\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F84** S. 89(8A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 51, 216, [Sch. 4 para. 5\(5\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F85** S. 89(9) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 51, 216, [Sch. 4 para. 5\(6\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F86** S. 89(10) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 51, 216, [Sch. 4 para. 5\(7\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C107** S. 89 excluded (6.1.1999 with application as mentioned) (*temp.*) by [S.I. 1998/3198](#), [arts.3, 4](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I23** S. 89 wholly in force; s. 89 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 89(2)-(8) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1](#); s. 89 in force at 6.1.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1998/3198](#), [arts. 2, 3](#) and 4

### [<sup>F87</sup> 89A Determination of admission numbers

- (1) A determination under section 89 by the admission authority for a maintained school of the admission arrangements which are to apply for a school year shall include a determination of the number of pupils in each relevant age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year.
- (2) Such a determination under section 89 may also, if the school is one at which boarding accommodation is provided for pupils, include—
  - (a) a determination of the number of pupils in each relevant age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year as boarders, and
  - (b) a determination of the number of pupils in each relevant age group that it is intended to admit to the school in that year otherwise than as boarders.
- (3) Regulations may make provision about the making of any determination required by subsection (1), and may in particular require the admission authority for a maintained school to have regard, in making any such determination, to—
  - (a) any prescribed method of calculation, and
  - (b) any other prescribed matter.
- (4) References in this section to the determination of any number include references to the determination of zero as that number.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F87** [S. 89A](#) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 47\(2\)](#), 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

### [<sup>F88</sup> 89B Co-ordination of admission arrangements

- (1) Regulations may require a local education authority—
  - (a) to formulate, for any academic year in relation to which prescribed conditions are satisfied, a qualifying scheme for co-ordinating the arrangements for the admission of pupils to maintained schools in their area, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) to take prescribed action with a view to securing the adoption of the scheme by themselves and each governing body who are the admission authority for a maintained school in their area.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), the Secretary of State may make, in relation to the area of a local education authority and an academic year, a scheme for co-ordinating the arrangements, or assisting in the co-ordination of the arrangements, for the admission of pupils to maintained schools in that area.
- (3) A scheme may not be made under subsection (2) in relation to a local education authority and an academic year if, before the prescribed date in the year preceding the year in which that academic year commences—
- (a) a scheme formulated by the local education authority in accordance with subsection (1) is adopted in the prescribed manner by the persons mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection, and
  - (b) the authority provide the Secretary of State with a copy of the scheme and inform him that the scheme has been so adopted.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations require local education authorities to provide other local education authorities with such information as may be required by them in connection with the exercise of any of their functions under this Chapter.
- (5) Regulations may provide—
- (a) that each local education authority shall secure that, subject to such exceptions as may be prescribed, no decision made by any admission authority for a maintained school in their area to offer or refuse a child admission to the school shall be communicated to the parent of the child except on a single day, designated by the local education authority, in each year, or
  - (b) that, subject to such exceptions as may be prescribed, a decision made by the admission authority for a maintained school to offer or refuse a child admission to the school shall not be communicated to the parent of the child except on a prescribed day.
- (6) In this section—
- “academic year” means a period commencing with 1st August and ending with the next 31st July;
  - “qualifying scheme” means a scheme that meets prescribed requirements.

#### Textual Amendments

**F88** Ss. 89B, 89C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 48, 216** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3** (with [Sch.](#))

### 89C Further provision about schemes adopted or made by virtue of section 89B

- (1) Regulations may make provision about the contents of schemes under section 89B(2), including provision about the duties that may be imposed by such schemes on—
- (a) local education authorities, and
  - (b) the admission authorities for maintained schools.
- (2) Regulations may provide that where a local education authority or the governing body of a maintained school have, in such manner as may be prescribed, adopted a scheme

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

formulated by a local education authority for the purpose mentioned in section 89B(1) (a), sections 496 and 497 of the Education Act 1996 shall apply as if any obligations imposed on the local education authority or governing body under the scheme were duties imposed on them by that Act.

- (3) Regulations may provide that where any decision as to whether a child is to be granted or refused admission to a maintained school falls to be made in prescribed circumstances, the decision shall, if a scheme adopted or made by virtue of this section so provides, be made by the local education authority regardless of whether they are the admission authority for the school.
- (4) Before proposing a scheme for adoption under section 89B(1) a local education authority shall comply with such requirements as to consultation as may be prescribed.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) may in particular require consultations to be undertaken with a view to securing that the arrangements for the admission of pupils to maintained schools in the areas of different local education authorities are, so far as is reasonably practicable, compatible with each other.
- (6) Before making a scheme under section 89B(2) in relation to the area of any local education authority, the Secretary of State shall consult—
  - (a) the local education authority, and
  - (b) any governing body who are the admission authority for a school which appears to the Secretary of State to be a school to which the scheme will apply.
- (7) A scheme made under section 89B(2) may be varied or revoked by the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F88** Ss. 89B, 89C inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 48, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

## 90 Reference of objections to adjudicator or Secretary of State.

- (1) Where—
  - (a) admission arrangements have been determined by an admission authority under section 89(4), but
  - (b) a body [<sup>F89</sup>who were, or would but for subsection (2A) of section 89 have been, required to be consulted by the admission authority under subsection (2) of that section] wish to make an objection about those arrangements, and
  - (c) the objection does not fall within any description of objections prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph,
 that body may refer the objection to the adjudicator.
- (2) Where—
  - (a) admission arrangements have been determined by an admission authority under section 89(4), but
  - (b) any parent of a prescribed description wishes to make an objection about those arrangements, and
  - (c) the objection falls within any description of objections prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

that person may refer the objection to the adjudicator.

- (3) On a reference under subsection (1) or (2) the adjudicator shall either—
  - (a) decide whether, and (if so) to what extent, the objection should be upheld, or
  - (b) in such cases as may be prescribed, refer the objection to the Secretary of State for that question to be decided by him.
- (4) Where the objection is referred to the Secretary of State under subsection (3)(b), the adjudicator shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, give his advice on the question referred to in that provision.
- (5) In relation to a maintained school in Wales—
  - (a) the reference to the adjudicator in subsection (1) or (2) shall be read as a reference to the Secretary of State;
  - (b) subsections (3) and (4) shall not apply; and
  - (c) where any objection is referred to the Secretary of State by virtue of paragraph (a) above, he shall decide whether, and (if so) to what extent, the objection should be upheld.
- (6) Where the adjudicator or the Secretary of State decides that an objection referred to him under this section should be upheld to any extent, his decision on the objection may specify the modifications that are to be made to the admission arrangements in question.
- (7) In the case of any objection referred to him under this section, the adjudicator or the Secretary of State (as the case may be) shall publish his decision on the objection and the reasons for it.
- (8) The decision of the adjudicator or the Secretary of State on the objection shall, in relation to the admission arrangements in question, be binding on the admission authority and on all persons by whom an objection about those arrangements may be made under subsection (1) or (2); and if that decision is to uphold the objection to any extent, those arrangements shall forthwith be revised by the admission authority in such a way as to give effect to the decision.
- (9) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) as to any conditions which must be satisfied before—
    - (i) an objection can be referred to the adjudicator or the Secretary of State under subsection (1) or (2), or
    - (ii) the adjudicator or the Secretary of State is required to determine an objection referred to him under subsection (2);
  - (b) prescribing the steps which may be taken by an admission authority where an objection has been referred to the adjudicator or the Secretary of State under subsection (1) or (2) but has not yet been determined;
  - (c) as to the manner in which any matters required to be published under subsection (7) are to be published;
  - (d) requiring such matters to be notified to such persons, and in such manner, as may be prescribed;
  - (e) prohibiting or restricting the reference under subsection (1) or (2), within such period following a decision by the adjudicator or the Secretary of State under this section as may be prescribed, of any objection raising the same (or substantially the same) issues in relation to the admission arrangements of the school in question;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (f) prescribing circumstances in which an admission authority may revise the admission arrangements for their school in the light of any decision by the adjudicator or the Secretary of State relating to the admission arrangements for another school, and the procedure to be followed in such a case.
- (10) Regulations shall make provision for the cases to be referred to the Secretary of State under subsection (3)(b) to include cases where the objection is concerned with admissions criteria relating to a person's religion or religious denomination.

#### Textual Amendments

**F89** Words in s. 90(1)(b) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 6 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Commencement Information

**I24** S. 90 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 90 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 90(1)-(3), (5), (9) and (10) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. 1; s. 90 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

## 91 Special arrangements to preserve religious character of foundation or voluntary aided school.

F90

#### Textual Amendments

**F90** S. 91 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 49, 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1 (with art. 7)

## [F91]92 Publication of information about admissions.

Regulations may—

- (a) require the publication by a local education authority of such information relating to admissions as may be prescribed,
- (b) require the publication by the governing body of a foundation or voluntary aided school of such information relating to admissions as may be prescribed,
- (c) require or allow the publication by the governing body of any school maintained by a local education authority, or by the local education authority on behalf of the governing body, of such information relating to the school as may be prescribed, and
- (d) make provision as to the time by which, and the manner in which, information required to be published by virtue of this section is to be published.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F91** S. 92 substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 7 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C108** S. 92 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, 4  
 S. 92 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8  
 S. 92 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

#### Commencement Information

- I25** S. 92 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 92 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 92 in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 92 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### Admission numbers

#### 93 Fixing admission numbers.

- [<sup>F92</sup>(1) The admission authority for a maintained school shall not fix as the admission number for any relevant age group and any school year a number which is less than the relevant standard number.
- (2) Subject to section 1(6) (duty of local education authority and governing body to comply with limit on infant class sizes), the admission authority may fix as the admission number for any relevant age group and any school year a number which exceeds the relevant standard number.
- (3) Schedule 23 (determination, variation and review of standard numbers) shall have effect.
- (4) A proposal may be made to the admission authority in accordance with subsection (5) by whichever of the governing body and the local education authority are not the admission authority for fixing as the admission number for any relevant age group and any school year a number which exceeds both—
- (a) the relevant standard number, and
  - (b) any admission number fixed, or proposed to be fixed, for that age group and year by the admission authority.
- (5) Any such proposal—
- (a) shall be made in writing,
  - (b) may relate to one or more relevant age groups, and
  - (c) may relate to a particular school year or to each school year falling within any period specified in the proposal.
- (6) If the admission authority do not give the body making the proposal notice in writing rejecting the proposal within the period of two months beginning with the day after that on which the proposal was received by the admission authority, the admission authority shall give effect to the proposal.
- (7) Where the admission authority give such notice within that period, the body making the proposal may, within 28 days of receiving the notice, make an application under paragraph 4(3) or 8(3) (as the case may be) of Schedule 23 for a decision increasing the relevant standard number.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) Regulations may provide for the operation of subsection (1) and section 86(5) to be suspended to such extent as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of enabling—
- (a) admission authorities to review under paragraph 11 of Schedule 23 any standard number applicable to admissions to an infant class at any maintained school, and
  - (b) any application to reduce any such number under paragraph 4(4) or 8(4) (as the case may be) of that Schedule to be decided in accordance with that Schedule, following the coming into force of regulations under section 1 by virtue of which any limit on class sizes is to apply, or be varied, in relation to any such class.
- (9) Regulations under subsection (8) may provide for any suspension to apply—
- (a) in relation to such age groups,
  - (b) for such period, and
  - (c) subject to such conditions,
- as may be specified in the regulations; and in that subsection “infant class” has the meaning given by section 4.
- (10) In this section references, in relation to a school, to the “admission number” for any relevant age group and any school year are references to the number of pupils in that age group it is intended to admit to the school in that school year.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F92** S. 93 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C109** S. 93 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, 5(1)(5)

**C110** S. 93(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 93(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

**C111** S. 93(1) excluded (E.) (*temp.*) by S.I. 2000/180, arts. 3, 5

#### Commencement Information

**I26** S. 93 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 93 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 93(3)(8) and (9) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 93(1)(2)(10) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); s. 93 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### Admission appeals

#### 94 Appeal arrangements: general.

- (1) A local education authority shall make arrangements for enabling the parent of a child to appeal against—
- (a) any decision made by or on behalf of the authority as to the school at which education is to be provided for the child in the exercise of the authority’s functions, other than a decision leading to or embodied in a direction under section 96 (directions for admission), and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in the case of a community or voluntary controlled school maintained by the authority, any decision made by or on behalf of the governing body refusing the child admission to the school.
- (2) The governing body of a foundation or voluntary aided school shall make arrangements for enabling the parent of a child to appeal against any decision made by or on behalf of the governing body refusing the child admission to the school.
- (3) Joint arrangements may be made under subsection (2) by the governing bodies of two or more foundation or voluntary aided schools maintained by the same local education authority.
- (4) A local education authority and the governing body or bodies of one or more foundation or voluntary aided schools maintained by the authority may make joint arrangements consisting of—
  - (a) such of the arrangements made by the authority in pursuance of subsection (1) as the authority may determine; and
  - (b) arrangements made by the governing body or bodies in pursuance of subsection (2).
- (5) Schedule 24 has effect in relation to the making and hearing of appeals pursuant to arrangements made under this section.
- (6) The decision of an appeal panel on an appeal under Schedule 24 shall be binding on—
  - (a) the local education authority or the governing body by whom or on whose behalf the decision under appeal was made, and
  - (b) in the case of a decision made by or on behalf of a local education authority, the governing body of a community or voluntary controlled school at which the appeal panel determines that a place should be offered to the child in question.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C112** S. 94 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, 8

**C113** S. 94 modified (temp. from 22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, reg. 5

**C114** S. 94 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8

S. 94 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8

**95 Appeals relating to children to whom section 87 applies.**

- (1) Nothing in section 94(1) or (2) requires any arrangements to be made for enabling the parent of a child to appeal against a decision—
  - (a) made by or on behalf of the admission authority for a maintained school, and
  - (b) refusing the child admission to the school,
 in a case where, at the time when the decision is made, section 87(2) applies to the child.
- (2) Where a local education authority are the admission authority for a community or voluntary controlled school, the authority shall make arrangements for enabling the governing body of the school to appeal against any decision made by or on behalf of the authority to admit to the school a child to whom, at the time when the decision is made, section 87(2) applies.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Schedule 25 has effect in relation to the making and hearing of appeals pursuant to arrangements made under subsection (2).
- (4) The decision of an appeal panel on an appeal made pursuant to arrangements under subsection (2) shall be binding on the local education authority and the governing body.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C115** S. 95 modified (*temp.*) (22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, reg.6.

**C116** S. 95 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 95 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

**C117** S. 95(2) restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, 8

### *Power to direct admission of child to school*

#### **96 Direction to admit child to specified school.**

- (1) The local education authority may give a direction under this section [<sup>F93</sup>to the governing body of a school for which they are not the admission authority] if, in the case of any child in their area, either (or both) of the following conditions is satisfied in relation to each school which is a reasonable distance from his home and provides suitable education, that is—
  - (a) he has been refused admission to the school, or
  - (b) he is permanently excluded from the school.
- (2) A direction under this section shall specify a school—
  - (a) which is a reasonable distance from the child's home, and
  - (b) from which the child is not permanently excluded.
- (3) A direction under this section shall, unless it is given on the determination of the Secretary of State under section 97(4), specify a school in the area referred to in subsection (1).
- (4) A direction under this section to admit a child shall not specify a school if his admission would result in prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section.
- (5) Where a school is specified in a direction under this section, the governing body shall admit the child to the school.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (7) In this section “suitable education”, in relation to a child, means efficient full-time education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have.
- (8) In this section and section 97 “school” means a maintained school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F93** Word in s. 96(1) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 10 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C118** S. 96 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 96 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

## 97 Procedure for giving direction under section 96.

- (1) Before deciding to give a direction under section 96, the local education authority shall consult—
  - (a) the parent of the child, and
  - (b) the governing body of the school they propose to specify in the direction.
- (2) Where the local education authority decide to give such a direction specifying any school—
  - (a) they shall, before doing so, serve a notice in writing of their decision on the governing body and head teacher of the school, and
  - (b) they shall not give the direction until the period for referring the matter to the Secretary of State under subsection (3) has expired and, if it is so referred, the Secretary of State has made his determination.
- (3) The governing body may, within the period of 15 days beginning with the day on which the notice was served, refer the matter to the Secretary of State and, if they do so, shall inform the local education authority.
- [<sup>F94</sup>(4) On a reference under subsection (3) the Secretary of State may determine which school is to be required to admit the child, and if he does so—
  - (a) where the local education authority referred to in subsection (1) are the admission authority for that school, they shall—
    - (i) admit the child to the school, and
    - (ii) give notice in writing to the governing body and head teacher of the school of the Secretary of State's determination, and
  - (b) in any other case, that school shall be specified in the direction.]
- (5) The Secretary of State shall not make a determination under subsection (4) in relation to a school if the child's admission to the school would result in prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section.
- [<sup>F95</sup>(6) A direction under section 96 shall be given by notice in writing; and a copy of the notice shall be given by the local education authority to the head teacher of the school.]

### Textual Amendments

**F94** S. 97(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 11(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

**F95** S. 97(6) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 51, 216, Sch. 4 para. 11(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C119** S. 97 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 97 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

#### *Nursery and special schools, etc: children with statements*

### **98 Admission for nursery education or to nursery or special school: children with statements of special educational needs.**

- (1) Children admitted to a school for nursery education and subsequently transferred to a reception class at the school shall be regarded for the purposes of this Chapter as admitted to the school (otherwise than for nursery education) on being so transferred.
- (2) The admission of children to a school for nursery education shall be disregarded for the purpose of—
  - (a) applying in relation to a primary school any provision of section 93 or Schedule 23 which refers to the number of pupils admitted or intended to be admitted to a school in any school year, or
  - (b) determining for the purposes of any provision of section 93 or Schedule 23 what is a relevant age group in relation to a primary school.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), nothing in this Chapter applies in relation to—
  - (a) nursery schools, or
  - (b) children who will be under compulsory school age at the time of their proposed admission.
- (4) Where the arrangements for the admission of pupils to a maintained school provide for the admission to the school of children who will be under compulsory school age at the time of their proposed admission, this Chapter shall apply in relation to the admission of such pupils to the school otherwise than for nursery education.
- (5) Regulations may make provision in connection with the arrangements for the admission of pupils to community or foundation special schools, and for the allocation between the local education authority and the governing body of such a school of functions in connection with such arrangements.
- (6) Apart from section 92(3) to (6) and subsection (5) above, nothing in this Chapter applies in relation to special schools.
- (7) Subject to subsections (8) and (9), nothing in this Chapter applies in relation to children for whom statements of special educational needs are maintained under section 324 of the <sup>M30</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (8) Any provision made by, or (as the case may be) by virtue of, section 84 or 92(3) to (6) or this section applies, or (as the case may be) may be made so as to apply, in relation to such children.
- (9) Such children shall, in addition, be taken into account for the purposes of—
  - (a) the reference in section 86(5) or (9) to a number of pupils, and
  - (b) the fixing of admission numbers under section 93 and the determination, variation and review of standard numbers under Schedule 23.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (10) In subsection (8) the reference to any provision made by this section includes a reference to subsection (4) only so far as it has effect for the purposes mentioned in subsection (9).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C120** S. 98 modified (*temp.*) (22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, reg.7.

**C121** S. 98 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 98 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

#### Commencement Information

**I27** S. 98 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 98 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 98(5) and (8)-(10) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 98 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

#### Marginal Citations

**M30** 1996 c. 56.

## CHAPTER II

### SELECTION OF PUPILS

#### *Partial selection*

#### **99 General restriction on selection by ability or aptitude.**

- (1) No admission arrangements for a maintained school may make provision for selection by ability unless—
- (a) they make provision for a permitted form of such selection; or
  - (b) the school is a grammar school (as defined by section 104(7)).
- (2) The following are permitted forms of selection by ability—
- (a) any selection by ability authorised by section 100 (pre-existing arrangements);
  - (b) any selection by ability authorised by section 101 (pupil banding); and
  - (c) any selection by ability conducted in connection with the admission of pupils to the school for secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age.
- (3) No admission arrangements for a maintained school may make provision for selection by aptitude unless they make provision for a permitted form of such selection.
- (4) The following are permitted forms of selection by aptitude—
- (a) any selection by aptitude authorised by section 100 (pre-existing arrangements); and
  - (b) any selection by aptitude authorised by section 102 (aptitude for particular subjects).
- (5) For the purposes of this Chapter—
- (a) a school's admission arrangements make provision for selection by ability or by aptitude if they make provision for all or any of the pupils who are to be

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

admitted to the school in any relevant age group to be so admitted by reference to ability or to aptitude (as the case may be);

- (b) “ability” means either general ability or ability in any particular subject or subjects;
- (c) “admission arrangements” has the meaning given by section 88(2); and
- (d) “maintained school” means a community, foundation or voluntary school.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C122** S. 99 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.

S. 99 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

**C123** S. 99(5) modified (1.10.1998) (temp.) by S.I. 1998/2230, reg. 2

#### Commencement Information

**I28** S. 99 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 99 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 99(1)(2)(5) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I, Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 3; s. 99 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### 100 Permitted selection: pre-existing arrangements.

- (1) Where at the beginning of the 1997-98 school year the admission arrangements for a maintained school made provision for selection by ability or by aptitude (and they have at all times since that date continued to do so), the admission arrangements for the school may continue to make such provision so long as there is, as compared with the arrangements in force at the beginning of that year—
  - (a) no increase in the proportion of selective admissions in any relevant age group, and
  - (b) no significant change in the basis of selection.
- (2) In relation to any time before the appointed day, the reference in subsection (1) to a maintained school is a reference to the school as a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school within the meaning of the <sup>M31</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (3) In this section “the proportion of selective admissions”, in relation to a relevant age group, means the proportion of the total number of pupils admitted to the school in that age group (determined in the prescribed manner) which is represented by the number of pupils so admitted by reference to ability or to aptitude (as the case may be).
- (4) Nothing in this section applies to a school with selective admission arrangements (as defined by section 104(2)).

#### Commencement Information

**I29** S. 100 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 100 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 100 in force at 1.10.1998 to the extent that it relates to s. 99(2)(a) by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 100 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

#### Marginal Citations

**M31** 1996 c. 56.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 101 Permitted selection: pupil banding.

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) to (4), the admission arrangements for a maintained school may make provision for selection by ability to the extent that the arrangements are designed to secure—
  - (a) that in any year the pupils admitted to the school in any relevant age group are representative of all levels of ability among applicants for admission to the school in that age group, and
  - (b) that no level of ability is substantially over-represented or substantially under-represented.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the arrangements have the effect that, where an applicant for admission has been allocated to a particular range of ability by means of some process of selection by reference to ability, some further such process is required or authorised to be carried out in relation to him for the purpose of determining whether or not he is to be admitted to the school.
- (3) The introduction for a maintained school of admission arrangements to which subsection (1) applies shall be one of the alterations to such a school which are prescribed for the purposes of section 28.
- (4) Such arrangements are not authorised for any school by this section unless proposals for the school to have such arrangements have been published under section 28 and have fallen to be implemented under Schedule 6.
- (5) Where the admission arrangements for a school make both such provision for selection by ability as is mentioned in subsection (1) above and such provision for selection by aptitude as is mentioned in section 102(1), nothing in this section shall be taken to prevent those arrangements—
  - (a) from authorising or requiring a process of selection to be carried out at any stage for the purpose of establishing that an applicant for admission has a relevant aptitude; or
  - (b) from having the effect of giving priority to such an applicant with a relevant aptitude irrespective of his level of ability.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C124** S. 101 modified (1.10.1998) (*temp.*) by [S.I. 1998/2230, reg.3](#)

**C125** S. 101 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1\(c\), 2-8.](#)

S. 101 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.](#)

### Commencement Information

**I30** S. 101 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 101 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 101(1)-(4) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I, Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 3\(b\)](#); s. 101 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\)](#) (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

## 102 Permitted selection: aptitude for particular subjects.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), the admission arrangements for a maintained school may make provision for the selection of pupils for admission to the school by reference to their aptitude for one or more prescribed subjects where—
  - (a) the admission authority for the school are satisfied that the school has a specialism in the subject or subjects in question; and



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the proportion of selective admissions in any relevant age group does not exceed 10 per cent.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the admission arrangements make provision for any test to be carried out in relation to an applicant for admission which is either a test of ability or one designed to elicit any aptitude of his other than for the subject or subjects in question.
- (3) Where, however, the admission arrangements for a school make both such provision for selection by aptitude as is mentioned in subsection (1) and such provision for selection by ability as is mentioned in section 101(1), the reference in subsection (2) above to a test of ability does not include any such test for which provision may be made under that section.
- (4) In this section “the proportion of selective admissions”, in relation to a relevant age group, means the proportion of the total number of pupils admitted to the school in that age group (determined in the prescribed manner) which is represented by the number of pupils so admitted by reference to aptitude for the subject or subjects in question.
- (5) In this section “test” includes assessment and examination.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C126** S. 102 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.  
S. 102 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

#### Commencement Information

- I31** S. 102 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 102 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); S. 102(1)(4) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 102 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### 103 Permitted selection: introduction, variation or abandonment of provision for such selection.

- (1) In connection with the determination of a maintained school’s admission arrangements for a particular school year, sections 89 and 90 shall, except to the specified extent, apply in relation to the making or abandonment by those arrangements of provision for any permitted form of selection by ability or aptitude as they apply in relation to the making or abandonment by those arrangements of provision for other matters.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the specified extent” means the extent to which those admission arrangements would effect an alteration in the provision made by the school’s admission arrangements as respects any such form of selection (whether by introducing, varying or abandoning any such form of selection) which constitutes a prescribed alteration for the purposes of section 28.
- (3) Any admission arrangements to which section 101(1) applies (whether authorised by section 100 or section 101) may be varied if (and only if) the arrangements as varied are designed to secure the objectives mentioned in section 101(1)(a) and (b).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C127** S. 103 modified (*temp.*) (22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, reg.8.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**C128** S. 103(3) applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(c), 2-8.  
S. 103(3) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

#### Commencement Information

**I32** S. 103 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; s. 103 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); S. 103(3) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 103 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### Grammar schools

#### 104 Designation of grammar schools.

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied that a maintained school had selective admission arrangements at the beginning of the 1997-98 school year, he may by order designate the school as a grammar school for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (2) A school has selective admission arrangements for the purposes of this Chapter if its admission arrangements make provision for all (or substantially all) of its pupils to be selected by reference to general ability, with a view to admitting only pupils with high ability.
- (3) For the purpose of deciding whether a school's admission arrangements fall within subsection (2), any such additional criteria as are mentioned in section 86(9) shall be disregarded.
- (4) Where a maintained school is a grammar school—
  - (a) sections 105 to 109 have effect for prescribing procedures for altering the school's admission arrangements so that it no longer has selective admission arrangements; and
  - (b) its admission arrangements shall not be so altered except in accordance with those sections.
- (5) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for enabling the Secretary of State to make an order designating as a grammar school for the purposes of this Chapter a maintained school established in substitution for one or more discontinued schools each of which either has been or could have been so designated under this section (whether by virtue of subsection (1) or by virtue of the regulations); and
  - (b) for any provisions of this Chapter, or any regulations made under it, to have effect in relation to any such school with such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (6) In this section “maintained school” includes, in relation to any time before the appointed day—
  - (a) a county or voluntary school, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained school,
 within the meaning of the <sup>M32</sup>Education Act 1996; and in the application of subsection (1) to a maintained school on or after the appointed day the reference to the school shall be read, in connection with determining the nature of its admission arrangements at the beginning of the 1997-98 school year, as a reference to it as a school within paragraph (a) or (b) above.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(7) In this Chapter “grammar school” means a school for the time being designated under this section.

#### Commencement Information

**I33** S. 104 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 104 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 104(1)-(3) and (5)-(7) in force at 1.9.1998 by S.I. 1998/2048, art. 3; s. 104(4)(a) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; s. 104 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

**M32** 1996 c. 56.

### 105 Procedure for deciding whether grammar schools should retain selective admission arrangements.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for ballots of parents to be held, at their request, for determining whether the grammar schools to which such ballots relate should retain selective admission arrangements.
- (2) Ballot regulations may provide for a ballot under this section to relate—
  - (a) to all grammar schools within the area of a prescribed local education authority or within such other area as may be prescribed,
  - (b) to a prescribed group of grammar schools, or
  - (c) to any grammar school not falling within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (3) Ballot regulations may make provision—
  - (a) requiring a request for a ballot under this section to be made by means of a petition signed by parents eligible to request the ballot;
  - (b) prescribing the form of any such petition and other requirements (whether as to the procedure to be followed or otherwise) which are to be complied with in relation to any such petition;
  - (c) prescribing the body (“the designated body”) to which any such petition is to be sent and which, under arrangements made by the Secretary of State, is to—
    - (i) make the arrangements for the holding of ballots under this section, and
    - (ii) discharge such other functions with respect to such petitions and the holding of such ballots as may be prescribed (which may include the determination of any question arising as to the validity of any request for a ballot or as to a person’s eligibility to request or vote in a ballot);
  - (d) requiring prescribed bodies or persons, or bodies or persons falling within any prescribed category—
    - (i) to provide the designated body or any other person with any prescribed information requested by that body or person, or
    - (ii) to publish prescribed information in such manner as may be prescribed;
  - (e) authorising any such bodies or persons to charge a fee (not exceeding the cost of supply) for documents supplied by them in pursuance of regulations made by virtue of paragraph (d)(i);

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (f) prescribing the terms of the question on which a ballot under this section is to be held and the manner in which such a ballot is to be conducted;
  - (g) enabling the Secretary of State, in any prescribed circumstances, to declare a previous ballot under this section void and require the holding of a fresh ballot;
  - (h) requiring anything falling to be done under the regulations to be done within such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (4) Ballot regulations may provide—
- (a) for parents of any prescribed description to register with the designated body, in such manner and at such time as may be prescribed, in order to be eligible to request or vote in a ballot;
  - (b) that for all or any prescribed purposes of the regulations references to parents are to be read as excluding those who are not individuals.
- (5) Ballot regulations may provide for a request for a ballot under this section to be made, in any prescribed circumstances, by means of two or more petitions.
- (6) The information required to be provided in pursuance of subsection (3)(d) may include the names and addresses of parents of any prescribed description.
- (7) Ballot regulations may provide for sections 496 and 497 of the <sup>M33</sup>Education Act 1996 (default powers of Secretary of State) to apply to proprietors of independent schools in relation to a duty imposed by or under the regulations.
- (8) Where—
- (a) a ballot has been held under this section, and
  - (b) the result of the ballot was to the effect that the schools or school in question should retain selective admission arrangements,
- no further ballot relating to the schools or school shall be held under this section within such period as is specified in ballot regulations.
- (9) The Secretary of State may make (or arrange for the making of) payments in respect of any expenses incurred by—
- (a) the governing body of a school maintained by a local education authority,
  - (b) the proprietor of an independent school, or
  - (c) a local education authority,
- in complying with any obligations which may be imposed by regulations made under subsection (3)(d)(i) or (ii).
- Payments under this subsection may be made on such terms as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (10) For the purposes of this section and sections 106 and 107, in their application in relation to any time falling before the appointed day, a grant-maintained school or a grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the <sup>M34</sup>Education Act 1996 shall be taken—
- (a) to be a school maintained by a local education authority, and
  - (b) to be maintained by the authority in whose area it is situated.
- (11) In this section and section 106 “ballot regulations” means regulations made under this section.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C129 S. 105 applied (3.12.1998) by S.I. 1998/2876, art. 11(1).

#### Marginal Citations

M33 1996 c. 56.

M34 1996 c. 56.

### 106 Ballot regulations: eligibility of parents to request or vote in ballot.

- (1) In relation to a ballot under section 105(2)(a), ballot regulations shall provide that, subject to such exceptions as may be prescribed, the parents eligible to request or vote in the ballot are—
- (a) registered parents of registered pupils at the following schools, namely—
    - (i) where the ballot relates to all grammar schools within the area of a prescribed local education authority, all schools maintained by that authority; or
    - (ii) where the ballot relates to all grammar schools within a prescribed area, all schools maintained by a local education authority which are situated in such area as may be prescribed, together with (if the regulations so provide) all schools maintained by such local education authority as may be prescribed;
  - (b) registered parents of registered pupils at independent schools where—
    - (i) such parents are resident, and
    - (ii) the schools are situated,
 

within the area of the prescribed local education authority or (as the case may be) the prescribed area; and
  - (c) parents of children of a prescribed description where such parents—
    - (i) are resident within the area of the prescribed local education authority or (as the case may be) the prescribed area, and
    - (ii) have registered with the designated body in accordance with section 105(4)(a).
- (2) In relation to a ballot under section 105(2)(b) or (c), ballot regulations shall provide that, subject to such exceptions as may be prescribed, the parents eligible to request or vote in the ballot are registered parents of registered pupils at any school from which a prescribed number of pupils have transferred to the grammar school or schools in question—
- (a) at such age or ages, and
  - (b) during such period,
- as may be determined in accordance with the regulations; and such regulations may provide that where, within that period, any such grammar school has been established in substitution for another school, the schools are to be treated as a single school for the purposes of determining eligibility.
- (3) Ballot regulations shall provide—
- (a) in relation to a ballot under section 105(2)(a), that a request for such a ballot must be made by a number of eligible parents equal to at least 20 per cent. of all parents falling within subsection (1)(a) or (b) above; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) in relation to a ballot under section 105(2)(b) or (c), that a request for such a ballot must be made by at least 20 per cent. of all parents falling within subsection (2) above.
- (4) Ballot regulations may provide for a parent’s eligibility for the purposes of—
  - (a) making a request for a ballot,
  - (b) voting in a ballot, or
  - (c) determining the number of parents required to make a request by virtue of subsection (3),
 to be determined by reference to such different times as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (5) Ballot regulations may make provision for determining whether parents are resident in an area for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) or (c).

### **107 Restriction on publication of material etc. relating to ballots.**

- (1) An authority or body to whom this section applies shall not incur any expenditure for the purpose of—
  - (a) publishing any material which, in whole or in part, appears designed to influence—
    - (i) eligible parents in deciding whether or not to request a ballot under section 105, or
    - (ii) the outcome of such a ballot; or
  - (b) assisting any person to publish any such material; or
  - (c) influencing, or assisting any person to influence, by any other means—
    - (i) eligible parents in deciding whether or not to request such a ballot, or
    - (ii) the outcome of such a ballot.
- (2) This section applies to—
  - (a) any local education authority, and
  - (b) the governing body of any school maintained by a local education authority.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) shall be taken to prevent an authority or body to whom this section applies from incurring expenditure on publishing or otherwise providing to any person (whether or not in pursuance of any duty to do so)—
  - (a) any factual information so far as it is presented fairly; or
  - (b) a fair and reasonable assessment by the authority or body of the likely consequences of the result of a ballot under section 105 being in favour of the schools or school in question ceasing to have selective admission arrangements; or
  - (c) an accurate statement by the authority or body of their intentions or proposals in the event of such a result.
- (4) In determining for the purposes of subsection (3) whether—
  - (a) any information is presented fairly, or
  - (b) an assessment is fair and reasonable,
 regard shall be had to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) In this section any reference to expenditure—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in relation to the governing body of a school which has a delegated budget within the meaning of Part II of this Act (or, in relation to any time before the appointed day, Part II of the <sup>M35</sup>Education Act 1996), is a reference to expenditure out of the school's budget share; or
- (b) in relation to the governing body of a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of that Act (where this section applies to such a school by virtue of section 105(10)), is a reference to expenditure out of maintenance grants paid under Chapter VI of Part III of that Act.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C130** S. 107(5) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg. 4

**Marginal Citations**

**M35** 1996 c. 56.

**108 Implementation of decision that school should cease to have selective admission arrangements.**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where the result of a ballot held under section 105 shows a simple majority of votes cast (by persons eligible to vote in the ballot) in favour of the grammar school or schools to which the ballot related ceasing to have selective admission arrangements.
- (2) The admission authority for a grammar school to which the ballot related shall secure that their admission arrangements are revised (in accordance with sections 89 and 90) so that, as from the beginning of such school year as may be prescribed, the school no longer has selective admission arrangements.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied that, in pursuance of subsection (2), a grammar school no longer has selective admission arrangements, he shall revoke the order made by him with respect to the school under section 104.

**109 Proposals by governing body of grammar school to end selective admission arrangements.**

- (1) This section has effect for enabling the admission arrangements of a grammar school to be revised (otherwise than in circumstances where section 108(2) applies) so that the school no longer has selective admission arrangements and its admission arrangements instead either—
  - (a) make no provision for selection by ability, or
  - (b) make provision for one or more of the following, namely—
    - (i) any selection by ability authorised by section 101,
    - (ii) any selection by aptitude authorised by section 102, and
    - (iii) any selection by ability such as is mentioned in section 99(2)(c).
- (2) Any such revision of the admission arrangements of a grammar school shall be one of the alterations to a maintained school which are prescribed for the purposes of section 28; but any proposals for any such revision of the admission arrangements of a grammar school which is a community school shall be published under that section by the governing body and not by the local education authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Regulations may provide—
- (a) that, in their application to any proposals for any such revision of the admission arrangements of a grammar school, any provision of section 28 or Schedule 6 shall have effect with such modifications as may be prescribed;
  - (b) that, in any prescribed circumstances following the making of a request for a ballot to be held under section 105, any such proposals under section 28 shall be of no effect.
- (4) Regulations made under section 105 may make provision, in relation to cases where any such proposals under section 28 have fallen to be implemented under paragraph 5 or 10 of Schedule 6, for requiring the school to which the proposals relate to be disregarded for the purposes of any regulations made under section 105(2).
- (5) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied that, by reason of the implementation of any such proposals, a grammar school no longer has selective admission arrangements, he shall revoke the order made by him with respect to the school under section 104.

#### Commencement Information

**I34** S. 109 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 109 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 109(3)(4) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/3198, art. 2(2), Sch.; s. 109 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

## PART IV

### OTHER PROVISIONS ABOUT SCHOOL EDUCATION

#### *Home-school agreements*

#### **110 Home-school agreements.**

- (1) The governing body of a school which is—
- (a) a maintained school, or
  - (b) a city technology college [<sup>F96</sup>, a city college for the technology of the arts or [<sup>F97</sup>an Academy]],
- shall adopt a home-school agreement for the school, together with a parental declaration to be used in connection with the agreement.
- (2) For the purposes of this section and section 111 a “home-school agreement” is a statement specifying—
- (a) the school’s aims and values;
  - (b) the school’s responsibilities, namely the responsibilities which the school intends to discharge in connection with the education of pupils at the school who are of compulsory school age;
  - (c) the parental responsibilities, namely the responsibilities which the parents of such pupils are expected to discharge in connection with the education of their children while they are registered pupils at the school; and
  - (d) the school’s expectations of its pupils, namely the expectations of the school as regards the conduct of such pupils while they are registered pupils there;



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

and “parental declaration” means a document to be used by qualifying parents for recording that they take note of the school’s aims and values and its responsibilities and that they acknowledge and accept the parental responsibilities and the school’s expectations of its pupils.

- (3) The governing body shall take reasonable steps to secure that the parental declaration is signed by every qualifying parent.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not, however, require the governing body to seek the signature of a qualifying parent if, having regard to any special circumstances relating to the parent or the pupil in question, they consider that it would be inappropriate to do so.
- (5) Where the governing body consider that a registered pupil at the school has a sufficient understanding of the home-school agreement as it relates to him, they may invite the pupil to sign the parental declaration as an indication that he acknowledges and accepts the school’s expectations of its pupils.
- (6) The governing body shall discharge their duty under subsection (3), and (where they decide to exercise it) shall exercise their power under subsection (5), as follows—
  - (a) in the case of a pupil attending the school on the relevant date, as soon after that date as is reasonably practicable; and
  - (b) in the case of a pupil admitted to the school after the relevant date, as soon after the date of his admission as is reasonably practicable.
- (7) The governing body shall from time to time review the home-school agreement.
- (8) Where the home-school agreement is revised by the governing body following such a review, subsections (3) to (6) shall, in the case of pupils admitted to the school after the revision takes effect, accordingly apply in relation to the revised agreement.
- (9) Before adopting the home-school agreement or parental declaration, or revising that agreement, the governing body shall consult—
  - (a) all qualifying parents, and
  - (b) such other persons as may be prescribed.
- (10) In this section—

“qualifying parent” means a registered parent of a pupil at the school who is of compulsory school age;

“the relevant date” means such date as the Secretary of State may by order appoint or such later date as he may determine in the case of the school in question.

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

**P2** S. 110 power fully exercised (12.11.1998): 1.9.1999 appointed day by [S.I. 1998/2877](#)

#### Textual Amendments

**F96** Words in s. 110(1)(b) substituted (28.7.2000) by [2000 c. 21, s. 149, Sch. 9 para. 85](#)

**F97** Words in s. 110(1)(b) substituted (26.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 65, 216, Sch. 7 para. 9](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 2](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C131** S. 110(1)(a) modified (*temp.*) by [S.I. 1998/2834, art. 2](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I35** S. 110 wholly in force; s. 110 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 110 in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. III

## 111 Supplementary provisions about home-school agreements.

- (1) In discharging any function under section 110 the governing body of a school shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (2) If the Secretary of State by order so provides, the governing body of a school to which subsection (1) of that section applies shall ensure that any form of words—
  - (a) specified in the order, or
  - (b) having such effect as is so specified,
 is not used in a home-school agreement or (as the case may be) in a parental declaration.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may apply—
  - (a) to any school specified in the order, or
  - (b) to any description of school so specified.
- (4) Neither the governing body of a school to which section 110(1) applies nor the local education authority where it is the admission authority for such a school shall—
  - (a) invite any person to sign the parental declaration at a time when the child in question has not been admitted to the school;
  - (b) make it a condition of a child being admitted to the school that the parental declaration is signed in respect of the child; or
  - (c) make any decision as to whether or not to admit a child to the school by reference to whether any such declaration is or is not likely to be signed in respect of the child;
 and in this subsection “admission authority” has the meaning given by section 88(1).
- (5) No person shall be excluded from such a school or suffer any other adverse consequences on account of any failure to comply with any invitation to sign the parental declaration.
- (6) A home-school agreement shall not be capable of creating any obligation in respect of whose breach any liability arises in contract or in tort.

### *Extension of educational opportunities for Key Stage 4 pupils*

## 112 Extended work experience for Key Stage 4 pupils.

- (1) Section 560 of the <sup>M36</sup>Education Act 1996 (work experience during compulsory schooling) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) and (2) there shall be substituted—
  - “(1) The enactments relating to the prohibition or regulation of the employment of children shall not apply to the employment of a child in his last two years of compulsory schooling if the employment is in pursuance of arrangements made—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) by a local education authority, or
  - (b) by the governing body of a school on behalf of such an authority,
- with a view to providing him with work experience as a part of his education.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a child shall be taken to be in his last two years of compulsory schooling as from the beginning of the last two school years at his school during the whole or part of which he is of compulsory school age.”
- (3) In subsection (6) (disapplication of sections 495 and 496 of the Act), the words “or the governing body of a grant-maintained school” shall be omitted.

#### Commencement Information

**I36** S. 112 partly in force; s. 112 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 112(1)(2) in force at 1.10.1998 by **S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I**

#### Marginal Citations

**M36** 1996 c. 56.

### 113 Provision of secondary education for Key Stage 4 pupils by FE institutions.

- (1) In section 18(1) of the <sup>M37</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (principal powers of a further education corporation), after paragraph (a) there shall be inserted—
- “(aa) in pursuance of arrangements made—
- (i) by a local education authority, or
  - (ii) by the governing body of a school on behalf of such an authority,
- provide secondary education to pupils in the fourth key stage, and”.
- (2) After section 52 of that Act there shall be inserted—

#### “52A Duty to safeguard pupils receiving secondary education.

- (1) This section applies where secondary education is provided to pupils in the fourth key stage—
- (a) by a further education corporation in pursuance of arrangements falling within section 18(1)(aa) of this Act, or
  - (b) by a designated institution in pursuance of arrangements made—
    - (i) by a local education authority, or
    - (ii) by the governing body of a school on behalf of such an authority.
- (2) The governing body of the corporation or institution shall secure that, except in such circumstances as may be prescribed by regulations, no education is provided to a person who has attained the age of nineteen years in a room in which any such pupils are for the time being receiving secondary education.”

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M37 1992 c. 13.

## School meals

### 114 Nutritional standards for school lunches.

- (1) Regulations may prescribe nutritional standards, or other nutritional requirements, which (subject to such exceptions as may be provided for by or under the regulations) are to be complied with in connection with the provision of school lunches for registered pupils at schools maintained by local education authorities.
- (2) Where a local education authority or the governing body provide school lunches for registered pupils at such a school, they shall secure that any applicable provisions of regulations under this section are complied with.
- (3) Subsection (2) applies—
  - (a) whether the lunches are provided on school premises or at any other place where education is being provided; and
  - (b) whether they are being provided in pursuance of any statutory requirement or otherwise.
- (4) Regulations under this section may—
  - (a) make different provision for pupils of different ages;
  - (b) authorise the Secretary of State to determine the time as from which any provisions of the regulations are to apply to a particular local education authority or school.
- (5) In this section “school lunch”, in relation to a pupil, means food made available for consumption by the pupil as his midday meal on a school day, whether involving a set meal or the selection of items by him or otherwise.

### 115 Extension of LEA functions concerning school lunches, etc.

- (1) Section 512 of the <sup>M38</sup>Education Act 1996 (provision by LEAs of meals etc. at maintained schools) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (1) there shall be inserted—
 

“(1A) A local education authority shall, if requested to do so by or on behalf of any registered pupils at a school maintained by the authority, provide school lunches for those pupils; but the authority shall not be required to provide a school lunch—

  - (a) where in the circumstances it would be unreasonable for them to do so, or
  - (b) where the pupil in question has not attained compulsory school age and is being provided with part-time education.

(1B) Any school lunches provided by a local education authority under subsection (1A) may—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.  
**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) be provided either on the school premises or at any place other than the school premises where education is being provided for the pupils in question; and
  - (b) take such form as the authority think fit.”
- (3) In subsection (2) (obligation to charge for meals etc.), after “subsection (1)” there shall be inserted “ or (1A) ”.
- (4) In subsection (3), for paragraphs (a) and (b) there shall be substituted—
- “(a) shall so exercise their power under subsection (1) as to ensure that a school lunch is provided for him, which shall be provided free of charge, and
  - (b) if in the exercise of that power they provide him with milk, shall provide it free of charge.”
- (5) After subsection (5) there shall be added—
- “(6) In this section “school lunch”, in relation to a pupil, means food made available for consumption by the pupil as his midday meal on a school day, whether involving a set meal or the selection of items by him or otherwise.”

---

**Commencement Information**

**I37** S. 115 wholly in force at 20.7.2001; s. 115 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 115(1)(4)(5) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); s. 115(2)(3) in force for E. at 1.4.2001 by S.I. 2001/1195, art. 2; s. 115(2)(3) in force for W. at 20.7.2001 by S.I. 2001/2663, art. 2

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M38** 1996 c. 56.

**116 Transfer of LEA functions concerning school lunches, etc. to governing bodies.**

After section 512 of the Education Act 1996 there shall be inserted—

**“512A Transfer of functions under section 512 to governing bodies.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for imposing on the governing body of any school to which the order applies a duty or duties corresponding to one or more of the duties of the local education authority which are mentioned in subsection (2).
- (2) Those duties are—
  - (a) the duty to provide school lunches in accordance with section 512(1A) and (1B);
  - (b) the duty to provide school lunches free of charge in accordance with section 512(3)(a); and
  - (c) the duty to provide milk free of charge in accordance with section 512(3)(b).
- (3) An order under this section may (subject to subsection (6)) apply to—
  - (a) all maintained schools; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) any specified class of such schools; or
  - (c) all such schools, or any specified class of such schools, maintained by specified local education authorities.
- (4) Where any duty falls to be performed by the governing body of a school by virtue of an order under this section—
- (a) the corresponding duty mentioned in subsection (2) shall no longer fall to be performed by the local education authority in relation to the school; and
  - (b) if the duty corresponds to the one mentioned in subsection (2)(b) or (c), section 533(3) shall not apply to any school lunches or milk provided by the governing body in pursuance of the order.
- (5) An order under this section may provide for section 513(2) not to apply—
- (a) to local education authorities generally, or
  - (b) to any specified local education authority,
- either in relation to all pupils for whom provision is made by the authority under section 513 or in relation to all such pupils who are of such ages as may be specified.
- (6) An order under this section shall not operate to—
- (a) impose any duty on the governing body of a school, or
  - (b) relieve a local education authority of any duty in relation to a school,
- at any time when the school does not have a delegated budget; and such an order may provide for section 512(2)(b) above to have effect, in relation to any provision made at any such time by the local education authority for pupils at the school, with such modifications as may be specified.
- (7) In this section—
- “delegated budget” and “maintained school” have the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
  - “school lunch” has the same meaning as in section 512 above;
  - “specified” means specified in an order under this section.”

## PART V

### NURSERY EDUCATION

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C132 Pt. 5:** Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (19.12.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 193(5), 216**, (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. 1

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Nursery education*

#### **117 Definition of “nursery education”.**

In this Part “nursery education” means full-time or part-time education suitable for children who have not attained compulsory school age (whether provided at schools or elsewhere).

#### *General duty of local education authority*

#### **118 Duty of LEA as respects availability of nursery education.**

- (1) A local education authority shall secure that the provision (whether or not by them) of nursery education for children who—
  - (a) have not attained compulsory school age, but
  - (b) have attained such age as may be prescribed,
 is sufficient for their area.
- (2) In determining for the purposes of subsection (1) whether the provision of such education is sufficient for their area a local education authority—
  - (a) may have regard to any facilities which they expect to be available outside their area for providing such education; and
  - (b) shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

#### **[<sup>F98</sup>118A Duties of LEA in respect of childcare**

- (1) A local education authority shall review annually the sufficiency of childcare provision for their area.
- (2) In carrying out a review for the purposes of subsection (1), a local education authority—
  - (a) may have regard to any facilities which they expect to be available outside their area for providing childcare; and
  - (b) shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) A local education authority shall also establish and maintain a service providing information to the public relating to the provision of childcare and related services in their area.
- (4) In relation to the function, form and content of a service established and maintained under subsection (3), a local education authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F98** S. 118A inserted (1.10.2002 for E. and 31.3.2003 for W. ) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 149(1), 216** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3** (with [Sch.](#)); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), **art. 5**, [Sch. Pt. II](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Early years development [F<sup>99</sup> and childcare] partnerships

#### Textual Amendments

**F99** Words in cross-heading before s. 119 inserted (1.10.2002 for E. and 31.3.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 150(5)**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3**, (with Sch.); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), **art. 5**, Sch. Pt. II

#### 119 Early years development [F<sup>100</sup> and childcare] partnerships.

- (1) Every local education authority shall establish for their area a body to be known as an early years development [F<sup>101</sup> and childcare] partnership (“the partnership”).
- (2) In establishing the partnership and determining its constitution the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The authority may establish a sub-committee of the partnership for any part of their area.
- (4) The authority shall make arrangements—
  - (a) for the meetings and proceedings of the partnership and any such sub-committee, and
  - (b) for the partnership (and any such sub-committee) to be provided with accommodation and with such services as the authority consider appropriate.
- (5) The functions of the partnership shall be to work with the authority—
  - (a) in reviewing the sufficiency of the provision of nursery education for the authority’s area for the purposes of section 118, [F<sup>102</sup> and]
  - [F<sup>103</sup>(ab) in reviewing the sufficiency of childcare provision for the authority’s area for the purposes of section 118A, and]
  - (b) in preparing early years development [F<sup>104</sup> and childcare] plans under section 120.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by order confer on early years development [F<sup>105</sup> and childcare] partnerships such additional functions as are specified in the order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F100** Part. V: after the words “early years development” (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words “and childcare” (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. {150(5)}**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3**, (with Sch.)
- F101** Part. V: after the words “early years development” (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words “and childcare” (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. {150(5)}**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3**, (with Sch.)
- F102** Word in [s. 119\(5\)\(a\)](#) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 215(2)**, 216, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F103** [S. 119\(5\)\(ab\)](#) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. {150(1)}**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F104** Part. V: after the words “early years development” (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words “and childcare” (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. {150(5)}**, 216 (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), **art. 3**, (with Sch.)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F105** Part. V: after the words "early years development" (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words "and childcare" (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(5)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.)

### *Early years development [<sup>F106</sup>and childcare] plans*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F106** Words in cross-heading before s. 120 inserted (1.10.2002 for E. and 31.3.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 150(5)**, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5](#), Sch. Pt. II

## **120 Early years development [<sup>F107</sup>and childcare] plans.**

- (1) Every local education authority shall, in conjunction with the early years development [<sup>F108</sup>and childcare] partnership for their area—
- (a) prepare an early years development [<sup>F108</sup>and childcare] plan for their area, and
  - (b) prepare further such plans at such intervals as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations.
- (2) An early years development [<sup>F109</sup>and childcare] plan shall consist of—
- (a) a statement [<sup>F110</sup>of proposals] , which sets out the authority's proposals for complying with their duty under section 118, [<sup>F110</sup>and]
  - <sup>F111</sup>(b) a statement which sets out the authority's proposals for providing or promoting the provision of childcare for their area, and
  - (c) background and supporting statements.]
- <sup>F112</sup>(3) The statement mentioned in subsection (2)(a) must deal with such matters, and relate to such period, as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations.
- (4) In relation to the form and content of the statements mentioned in subsection (2)(b) and (c) the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F107** Part. V: after the words "early years development" (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words "and childcare" (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(5)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.)

**F108** Part. V: after the words "early years development" (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words "and childcare" (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(5)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.)

**F109** Part. V: after the words "early years development" (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words "and childcare" (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(5)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.)

**F110** Words in s. 120(2)(a) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**F111** S. 120(2)(b)(c) substituted for (2)(b) (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(2)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**F112** S. 120(3)(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(3)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C133 S. 120:** functions not to be the sole responsibility of an authority's executive (E.) (16.11.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/2853, reg. 4(1), **Sch. 3**

### 121 Approval, modification and review of statement of proposals.

- (1) Where an early years development [<sup>F113</sup>and childcare] plan has been prepared in accordance with section 120, the authority shall, by such date as may be determined by or in accordance with regulations, submit the plan to the Secretary of State for him to approve [<sup>F114</sup>the authority's statement of proposals] under this section.
- (2) The Secretary of State may in the case of any [<sup>F115</sup>plan] submitted to him under this section—
  - (a) approve the [<sup>F115</sup>plan] in any of the following ways, namely wholly or in part, for a limited period of time, or subject to conditions;
  - (b) require the authority to make such modifications to the [<sup>F115</sup>plan] as he may specify; or
  - (c) reject the [<sup>F115</sup>plan] .
- (3) If the Secretary of State approves the [<sup>F116</sup>plan]—
  - (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision; and
  - (b) the authority shall implement the [<sup>F116</sup>plan] , so far as approved by the Secretary of State, as from such date as he may determine.
- (4) If the Secretary of State requires the authority to make modifications or rejects the [<sup>F117</sup>plan]—
  - (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision and of his reasons for it; and
  - (b) the authority shall prepare a revised [<sup>F117</sup>plan] and submit it to the Secretary of State for his approval under this section by such date as he may determine.
- (5) Once the Secretary of State has approved an authority's [<sup>F118</sup>plan] under subsection (2), he shall keep under review the authority's [<sup>F118</sup>plan] , as approved by him, and [<sup>F119</sup>its] implementation by the authority, and—
  - (a) where he is of the opinion that the [<sup>F120</sup>plan] should be modified (or further modified), he may withdraw his approval and require the authority to make such modifications to the [<sup>F120</sup>plan] as he may specify; and
  - (b) where he is of the opinion that the authority's [<sup>F121</sup>plan] is not being properly implemented by them, he may withdraw his approval for such period as he thinks fit.
- (6) If under subsection (5) the Secretary of State withdraws his approval of a [<sup>F122</sup>plan]—
  - (a) he shall notify the authority of his decision and of his reasons for it; and
  - (b) in a case falling within paragraph (a) of that subsection, the authority shall prepare a revised [<sup>F123</sup>plan] and submit it to him for his approval under this section by such date as he may determine.
- (7) Section 120 shall apply to the preparation of a revised [<sup>F124</sup>plan] under subsection (4) (b) or (6)(b), with such modifications (if any) as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (8) At any time after the Secretary of State has approved an authority's [<sup>F125</sup>plan] under subsection (2)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the authority may, with the agreement of the early years development [<sup>F113</sup>and childcare] partnership, submit modifications to the [<sup>F126</sup>plan] to the Secretary of State for his approval, and
- (b) the Secretary of State may approve the modifications, whether in whole or in part, for a limited period of time, or subject to conditions, and
- (c) if and to the extent that he approves those modifications, he shall notify the authority of his decision and—
- (i) the [<sup>F127</sup>plan] shall have effect with the modifications, and
- (ii) the authority shall implement their [<sup>F127</sup>plan] as modified, as from such date as he may determine.
- (9) Once the Secretary of State has approved—
- (a) an authority's [<sup>F128</sup>plan] under subsection (2), or
- (b) the modification of an authority's [<sup>F128</sup>plan] under subsection (8),
- the authority shall publish their [<sup>F129</sup>early years development] plan (or their plan as so modified) in such manner and by such date as may be prescribed, and shall provide such persons as may be prescribed with copies of that plan or of a summary of that plan.

#### Textual Amendments

- F113** Part. V: after the words "early years development" (in each place it occurs) there is inserted the words "and childcare" (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(5)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#), (with Sch.)
- F114** Words in [s. 121\(1\)](#) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 150(4)(a), 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F115** Words in [s. 121\(2\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(b)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F116** Words in [s. 121\(3\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(c)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F117** Words in [s. 121\(4\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(d)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F118** Words in [s. 121\(5\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(e)(i)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F119** Word in [s. 121\(5\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(e)(ii)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F120** Words in [s. 121\(5\)\(a\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(e)(iii)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F121** Word in [s. 121\(5\)\(b\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(e)(iii)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F122** Words in [s. 121\(6\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(f)(i)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F123** Word in [s. 121\(6\)\(b\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(f)(ii)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F124** Word in [s. 121\(7\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(g)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F125** Words in [s. 121\(8\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(h)(i)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)
- F126** Word in [s. 121\(8\)\(a\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. {150(4)(h)(i)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F127** Words in s. 121(8)(c) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. {150(4)(h)(iii)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)
- F128** Words in s. 121(9) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. {150(4)(i)}, 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)
- F129** Words in s. 121(1) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 150(4)(a), 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

### *Inspection of nursery education*

#### **122 Inspection of nursery education.**

- (1) Schedule 26 (inspections, etc. of providers of nursery education) shall have effect.
- (2) Schedule 1 to the <sup>M39</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (which is superseded by Schedule 26 to this Act) shall cease to have effect.
- (3) Any register of nursery education inspectors established by the Chief Inspector under Schedule 1 to that Act shall be treated as established by him under Schedule 26 to this Act; and accordingly anything done under Schedule 1 to that Act in connection with the registration of (or any refusal to register) any person in that register shall, if effective immediately before the commencement of this section, continue to have effect as if done under Schedule 26 to this Act.
- (4) In subsection (3) “the Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Schools in England or [<sup>F130</sup>Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales or Prif Arolygydd Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru].

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F130** Words in s. 122(4) substituted (W.) (1.1.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 73(3)(a); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M39** 1996 c. 50.

### *Further provisions relating to nursery education*

#### **123 Children with special educational needs.**

- (1) It shall be the duty of—
  - (a) any local education authority or other person providing relevant nursery education, and
  - (b) any person employed by such an authority or other person, or otherwise engaged to provide his services, in the provision of such education,
 (except where a duty is already imposed by subsection (2) of section 313 of the <sup>M40</sup>Education Act 1996) to have regard to the provisions of the code of practice issued under that section (practical guidance in respect of the discharge of functions under Part IV of that Act).
- (2) That code of practice may include practical guidance in respect of the provision of relevant nursery education for children with special educational needs in

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

circumstances where functions under Part IV of the <sup>M41</sup>Education Act 1996 do not fall to be discharged.

(3) But unless that code of practice includes provision made by virtue of subsection (2)—

- (a) the Secretary of State shall publish a document explaining how the practical guidance contained in that code applies in circumstances where functions under Part IV of the <sup>M42</sup>Education Act 1996 do not fall to be discharged, and
- (b) the duty imposed by subsection (1) includes a duty to have regard to the provisions of that document.

[<sup>F131</sup>(3A) Subsection (3B) applies if—

- (a) a local education authority or other person providing relevant nursery education for a child makes special educational provision for him because it is considered that he has special educational needs;
- (b) no statement under section 324 of the Education Act 1996 is maintained for the child; and
- (c) his parent has not previously been informed under subsection (3B) of the special educational provision made for him.

(3B) The local education authority or other person concerned must inform the child’s parent that special educational provision is being made for him because it is considered that he has special educational needs.]

(4) In this section “relevant nursery education” means nursery education which is provided—

- (a) by a local education authority, or
- (b) by any other person who is in receipt of financial assistance given by such an authority and whose provision of nursery education is taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a).

#### Textual Amendments

**F131** S. 123(3A)(3B) inserted (1.1.2002 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 7(2), 43(3) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (which S.I. was amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

#### Marginal Citations

**M40** 1996 c. 56.

**M41** 1996 c. 56.

**M42** 1996 c. 56.

## 124 Travel arrangements for children receiving nursery education otherwise than at school.

After section 509 of the <sup>M43</sup>Education Act 1996 there shall be inserted—

### “509A Travel arrangements for children receiving nursery education otherwise than at school.

- (1) A local education authority may provide a child with assistance under this section if they are satisfied that, without such assistance, he would be prevented from attending at any premises—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) which are not a school or part of a school, but
  - (b) at which relevant nursery education is provided,
- for the purpose of receiving such education there.
- (2) The assistance which may be provided for a child under this section consists of either—
- (a) making arrangements (whether for the provision of transport or otherwise) for the purpose of facilitating the child’s attendance at the premises concerned, or
  - (b) paying the whole or any part of his reasonable travel expenses.
- (3) When considering whether to provide a child with assistance under this section in connection with his attendance at any premises, a local education authority may have regard (among other things) to whether it would be reasonable to expect alternative arrangements to be made for him to receive relevant nursery education at any other premises (whether nearer to his home or otherwise).
- (4) Where the assistance to be provided for a child under this section consists of making arrangements for the provision of transport, the authority may, if they consider it appropriate to do so, determine that the assistance shall not be so provided unless—
- (a) the child’s parent, or
  - (b) the person providing the relevant nursery education concerned,
- agrees to make to the authority such payments in respect of the provision of the transport (not exceeding the cost to the authority of its provision) as they may determine.
- (5) In this section “relevant nursery education” means nursery education which is provided—
- (a) by a local education authority, or
  - (b) by any other person—
    - (i) who is in receipt of financial assistance given by such an authority and whose provision of nursery education is taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, or
    - (ii) who is in receipt of grants under section 1 of the <sup>M44</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.”

#### Marginal Citations

**M43** 1996 c. 56.

**M44** 1996 c. 50.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## [<sup>F132</sup>PART VI]

### Textual Amendments

**F132 Pt. VI** (ss. 125-126) ceased to have effect (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and otherwise 1.1.2001 for W. and 1.9.2001 for E.) by virtue of 2000 c. 21, s. 154(3), **Sch. 9 para. 86**; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**

### <sup>F133</sup>125 [ Partnership arrangements to secure provision of certain further education in Wales.]

- (1) The <sup>M45</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In section 5 (administration of funds by further education funding councils), after subsection (5) there shall be inserted—
  - “(5A) The Further Education Funding Council for Wales may give financial support to a local education authority for an area in Wales for the purposes of any partnership arrangement made by the authority to which section 60A of this Act applies.”
- (3) In section 18 (principal powers of a further education corporation)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), the words “and those powers” to the end shall be omitted, and
  - (b) after subsection (3) there shall be added—
    - “(4) In addition to the powers conferred by subsection (1) above, a further education corporation which conducts one or more educational institutions situated in Wales may—
      - (a) secure the provision of full-time or part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age but under the age of 19, but only if that provision is made under a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of this Act applies, and
      - (b) supply goods or services in connection with the securing of the provision of education under paragraph (a) above.
    - (5) Subsections (2) and (3) above shall apply for the purposes of subsection (4) above as they apply for the purposes of subsection (1), except that references in those subsections to the provision of education shall be construed as references to the securing of the provision of education.
    - (6) The powers conferred by subsection (1) above and the powers conferred by subsection (4) above are referred to in section 19 of this Act as the corporation’s principal powers.”
- (4) After section 60 there shall be inserted—

#### “60A Partnership arrangements to secure provision of certain further education in Wales.

- (1) An arrangement is a partnership arrangement to which this section applies if—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) it is made by—
    - (i) one or more local education authorities for areas in Wales, and
    - (ii) one or more governing bodies of Welsh further education institutions,
 for the purpose of securing the provision of education within subsection (3),
  - (b) it provides for the facilities connected with the provision of education under the arrangement to be provided—
    - (i) in part, at one or more schools maintained by the local education authority which is a party to the arrangement (or where more than one local education authority is a party, by each of them), and
    - (ii) in part, at one or more Welsh further education institutions conducted by the governing body which is a party to the arrangement (or, where more than one governing body is a party, by each of them),
  - (c) it is made with the consent of—
    - (i) the Further Education Funding Council for Wales, and
    - (ii) the governing body of each school at which, in accordance with the arrangement, facilities are to be provided, and
  - (d) it is approved by the Secretary of State.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above—
- (a) “Welsh further education institution” means an institution which is within the further education sector and is situated in Wales, and
  - (b) a designated institution shall be treated as conducted by the governing body of the institution.
- (3) Education is within this subsection if it is full-time or part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age but under the age of 19.
- (4) The following bodies shall exercise their functions with a view to securing that any education provided under a partnership arrangement to which this section applies is provided and funded in accordance with the arrangement—
- (a) each local education authority which is a party to the arrangement;
  - (b) each governing body of an institution (or institutions) within the further education sector which is a party to the arrangement;
  - (c) the Further Education Funding Council for Wales;
  - (d) each governing body of a school which consented to the arrangement.
- (5) Schedule 5A to this Act shall have effect in relation to partnership arrangements to which this section applies.”
- (5) After Schedule 5 there shall be inserted the Schedule set out in Schedule 27 to this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F133** S. 125 repealed (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and 1.1.2001 (W.) otherwise) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Commencement Information

**I38** S. 125 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 125 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 125(5) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. IV; s. 125 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

**M45** 1992 c. 13.

### [<sup>F134</sup>126 Provisions relating to education provided under partnership arrangements.

- (1) The <sup>M46</sup>Education Act 1996 shall have effect in relation to education provided under relevant partnership arrangements subject to the following provisions of this section.
- (2) For the purposes of that Act—
  - (a) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age but under the age of 19 which is provided at a school at which education within section 2(2)(a) of that Act is also provided shall not be regarded as secondary education, and
  - (b) a person for whom full-time or part-time education suitable to the requirements of such persons is being provided at a school shall not be regarded as a pupil,
 

if that education is being provided under a relevant partnership arrangement.
- (3) Accordingly, education within subsection (2)(a) above which is provided under a relevant partnership arrangement shall, for the purposes of that Act, be regarded as further education.
- (4) In this section “relevant partnership arrangement” means a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of the <sup>M47</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (as inserted by section 125(4)) applies.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F134** S. 126 repealed (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and 1.1.2001 (W.) otherwise) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, Sch. 11; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

#### Marginal Citations

**M46** 1996 c. 56.

**M47** 1992 c. 13.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART VII

### MISCELLANEOUS AND GENERAL

#### *Code of practice for local education authorities and maintained schools*

#### **127 Code of practice for securing effective relationships between LEAs and maintained schools.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue, and may from time to time revise, a code of practice containing such practical guidance as he thinks appropriate with a view to securing effective relationships between local education authorities and the schools maintained by them—
  - (a) in relation to promoting high standards of education in such schools; and
  - (b) in relation to the discharge of relevant functions of such authorities in relation to such schools.
- (2) In discharging their functions in relation to any maintained school, it shall be the duty of—
  - (a) the local education authority,
  - (b) the governing body, and
  - (c) the head teacher,
 to have regard to any relevant provisions of the code.
- (3) Section 85 shall apply in relation to the code as it applies in relation to a code of practice under section 84.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall publish the code as for the time being in force.
- (5) The Secretary of State may under subsection (1) make different provision for England and Wales (whether or not by means of separate codes of practice); and references in this section to “the code” accordingly apply to any such separate code of practice.
- (6) For the purposes of this section the relevant functions of a local education authority are the functions exercisable by or on behalf of such an authority under—
  - (a) sections 6 and 7 (so far as they relate to schools maintained by the authority),
  - (b) section 15(2),
  - (c) section 16(1),
  - (d) section 17(1),
  - (e) section 42(3) and (4),
  - (f) sections 54 and 55,
  - (g) section 62(1),
  - (h) Schedules 9 and 11 (so far as they relate to the appointment and removal of LEA governors),
  - (i) Schedule 13,
  - (j) paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 15,
  - (k) Schedules 16 and 17, and
  - (l) section 25 of the <sup>M48</sup>School Inspections Act 1996,
 and such other functions exercisable by or on behalf of a local education authority as the Secretary of State may determine for the purposes of this subsection.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C134 S. 127 applied (18.6.1999) by S.I. 1999/2022, art. 2.

#### Marginal Citations

M48 1996 c. 57.

### *Financial assistance to non-maintained schools*

VALID FROM 12/01/2010

#### **128 Financial assistance to non-maintained schools.**

(1) For section 18 of the <sup>M49</sup>Education Act 1996 there shall be substituted—

##### **“18 Financial assistance to non-maintained schools.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a local education authority may—
  - (a) assist any primary or secondary non-maintained school (whether inside or outside their area);
  - (b) make arrangements for pupils to be provided with primary or secondary education at such schools.
- (2) Except in accordance with regulations, a local education authority may not under subsection (1) make any grant or other payment (whether to the proprietor of a school or otherwise) in respect of—
  - (a) fees or expenses (of whatever nature) which are payable in connection with the attendance of a pupil at a school, or
  - (b) such other matters as may be prescribed.
- (3) Regulations made for the purposes of subsection (2)(a) may provide that, in such circumstances as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations, a local education authority—
  - (a) shall exercise their power under subsection (1)(b) in relation to a pupil at a non-maintained school so as to pay the whole of—
    - (i) the fees payable in respect of the education provided for the pupil, and
    - (ii) if board and lodging are provided for him at the school, the fees payable in respect of the board and lodging, and
    - (iii) any expenses of a prescribed description which are payable in connection with his attendance at the school; or
  - (b) may exercise that power in relation to such a pupil so as to pay the whole or part of any fees or expenses falling within all or any of subparagraphs (i) to (iii) of paragraph (a) above.
- (4) In this section references to non-maintained schools are references to schools which are not maintained by any local education authority.”

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In consequence of subsection (1), section 16(1)(c) of the <sup>M50</sup>Education Act 1996 (power of local education authority to assist primary or secondary school not maintained by the authority) shall cease to have effect.

#### Marginal Citations

**M49** 1996 c. 56.

**M50** 1996 c. 56.

### 129 Payment of school expenses; grant of scholarships, etc.

For section 518 of the <sup>M51</sup>Education Act 1996 there shall be substituted—

#### “518 Payment of school expenses; grant of scholarships, etc.

- (1) A local education authority, for the purpose of enabling persons to take advantage of any educational facilities available to them, may in such circumstances as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations—
- (a) pay such expenses of children attending community, foundation, voluntary or special schools as may be necessary to enable them to take part in any school activities,
  - (b) grant scholarships, exhibitions, bursaries and other allowances in respect of persons over compulsory school age.
- (2) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) for requiring a local education authority to make, in relation to each financial year, a determination relating to the extent to which they propose to exercise their power under subsection (1)(b) in that year; and
  - (b) for authorising an authority to determine not to exercise that power in a financial year—
    - (i) generally,
    - (ii) in such cases as may be prescribed, or
    - (iii) in such cases as may be determined by the authority.”

#### Marginal Citations

**M51** 1996 c. 56.

### 130 Transfer of assisted places.

- (1) In section 3(2) of the <sup>M52</sup>Education (Schools) Act 1997 (regulations for purposes of transitional arrangements), after paragraph (f) there shall be added—

“(g) provide for the Secretary of State, in a case where he is satisfied that it is reasonable to do so in view of any particular circumstances relating to a pupil who holds (or has at any time held) an assisted place

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

provided by a school under section 2(1), to authorise another school which is either—

- (i) a former participating school, or
- (ii) a new school authorised to provide assisted places by virtue of paragraph (f) above,

to provide for the pupil under section 2(1) the assisted place which the first-mentioned school was authorised to provide.”

(2) In section 75A(9A) of the <sup>M53</sup>Education (Scotland) Act 1980 (regulations in connection with assisted places)—

- (a) the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (b) shall be omitted; and
- (b) after that paragraph there shall be inserted “; and
- (c) provide for the Secretary of State, in a case where he is satisfied that it is reasonable to do so in view of any particular circumstances relating to a pupil who holds (or has, at any time since the beginning of the first term of the 1997-98 school year, held) an assisted place at a school under a scheme operated by virtue of subsection (1) above, to authorise another school which is, or is treated as, a participating school to provide for the pupil under such a scheme the assisted place which the first-mentioned school was authorised to provide.”

#### Extent Information

**E4** S. 130(2) extends to Scotland only.

#### Marginal Citations

**M52** 1997 c. 59.

**M53** 1980 c. 44.

### *Abolition of corporal punishment*

#### **131 Abolition of corporal punishment in schools etc.**

(1) For section 548 of the <sup>M54</sup>Education Act 1996 there shall be substituted—

#### **“548 No right to give corporal punishment.**

(1) Corporal punishment given by, or on the authority of, a member of staff to a child—

- (a) for whom education is provided at any school, or
- (b) for whom education is provided, otherwise than at school, under any arrangements made by a local education authority, or
- (c) for whom specified nursery education is provided otherwise than at school,

cannot be justified in any proceedings on the ground that it was given in pursuance of a right exercisable by the member of staff by virtue of his position as such.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Subsection (1) applies to corporal punishment so given to a child at any time, whether at the school or other place at which education is provided for the child, or elsewhere.
- (3) The following provisions have effect for the purposes of this section.
- (4) Any reference to giving corporal punishment to a child is to doing anything for the purpose of punishing that child (whether or not there are other reasons for doing it) which, apart from any justification, would constitute battery.
- (5) However, corporal punishment shall not be taken to be given to a child by virtue of anything done for reasons that include averting—
  - (a) an immediate danger of personal injury to, or
  - (b) an immediate danger to the property of, any person (including the child himself).
- (6) “Member of staff”, in relation to the child concerned, means—
  - (a) any person who works as a teacher at the school or other place at which education is provided for the child, or
  - (b) any other person who (whether in connection with the provision of education for the child or otherwise)—
    - (i) works at that school or place, or
    - (ii) otherwise provides his services there (whether or not for payment),
 and has lawful control or charge of the child.
- (7) “Child” (except in subsection (8)) means a person under the age of 18.
- (8) “Specified nursery education” means full-time or part-time education suitable for children who have not attained compulsory school age which is provided—
  - (a) by a local education authority; or
  - (b) by any other person—
    - (i) who is (or is to be) in receipt of financial assistance given by such an authority and whose provision of nursery education is taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, or
    - (ii) who is (or is to be) in receipt of grants under section 1 of the <sup>M55</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996; or
  - (c) (otherwise than as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b)) in any educational institution which would fall within section 4(1) above (definition of “school”) but for the fact that it provides part-time, rather than full-time, primary education.”
- (2) The following provisions of the <sup>M56</sup>Education Act 1996, namely—
  - (a) section 549 (interpretation of section 548), and
  - (b) section 550 (no avoidance of section 548 by refusing admission to school etc.), shall cease to have effect.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Marginal Citations

**M54** 1996 c. 56.

**M55** 1996 c. 50.

**M56** 1996 c. 56.

## *The funding authorities*

### **132 Dissolution of Funding Agency for Schools.**

- (1) The Funding Agency for Schools shall be dissolved on such date as the Secretary of State may by order specify (“the dissolution date”).
- (2) Prior to their dissolution the Agency shall—
  - (a) prepare, and submit to the Secretary of State for his approval, a plan for the disposal of property of the Agency to persons other than the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) once the plan is approved by the Secretary of State, make arrangements for the disposal of the property in question in accordance with the plan.
- (3) The Agency shall use their best endeavours to secure that any functions remaining to be discharged by them at any time after the commencement of this section are discharged by such date or dates falling before the dissolution date as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (4) Section 24 of the <sup>M57</sup>Education Act 1996 (directions by Secretary of State) applies to functions of the Agency under this section; and paragraph 15 of Schedule 2 to that Act (accounts) shall have effect for the purposes of subsection (3) above subject to such modifications as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (5) Any property, rights and liabilities to which the Agency are entitled or subject immediately before the dissolution date (whether or not capable of being transferred or assigned by the Agency) shall by virtue of this section become property, rights and liabilities of the Secretary of State on that date.
- (6) Any legal proceedings to which the Agency are a party immediately before the dissolution date may be continued on or after that date by or in relation to the Secretary of State.
- (7) Every agreement (whether written or not), and every instrument or other document, which relates to any property, right or liability of the Agency to which subsection (5) applies shall have effect, so far as may be required for continuing its effect on or after the dissolution date, as if—
  - (a) where the Agency is a party to it, the Secretary of State were substituted as that party,
  - (b) for any reference to the Agency there were substituted a reference to the Secretary of State,
  - (c) for any reference (however worded and whether express or implied) to the chairman, the chief officer or any member of the Agency there were substituted a reference to such officer or officers as the Secretary of State may appoint for the purpose, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) for any reference to the office or place of business of the Agency there were substituted a reference to the principal office of the Secretary of State.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C135 S. 132 modified (*temp.*) (26.5.1999) by S.I. 1999/1287, reg. 3(2)(a).

**Marginal Citations**

M57 1996 c. 56.

**133 Removal of power to establish Schools Funding Council for Wales.**

Section 21 of the <sup>M58</sup>Education Act 1996 (which confers on the Secretary of State a power, so far unexercised, to establish the Schools Funding Council for Wales) shall cease to have effect.

**Marginal Citations**

M58 1996 c. 56.

*School and nursery inspections*

**134 Publication of inspection reports.**

- (1) After section 42 of the <sup>M59</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 there shall be inserted—

*“ Publication of reports*

**42A Publication of inspection reports.**

- (1) The Chief Inspector may in the case of—
- (a) any report by a member of the Inspectorate of an inspection carried out by him under any provision of this Act (whether the report is required by any such provision or is otherwise made in pursuance of his functions under that provision), or
  - (b) any report of an inspection under section 10 (other than one made by a member of the Inspectorate),
- arrange for the report to be published in such manner as the Chief Inspector considers appropriate.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of—
- (a) section 2(7)(c) or 5(7)(c), or
  - (b) subsection (1) above,
- the Chief Inspector may arrange for a report to which that provision applies to be published by electronic means.
- (3) For the purposes of the law of defamation any report published by the Chief Inspector under any of those provisions shall be privileged unless the publication is shown to be made with malice.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Nothing in subsection (3) shall be construed as limiting any privilege subsisting apart from that subsection.”
- (2) In Schedule 1 to the <sup>M60</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (inspections of nursery education), at the end of paragraph 13 (reports of inspections) there shall be added—
- “(3) Section 42A(2) to (4) of the <sup>M61</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 shall apply in relation to the publication of any such report as they apply in relation to the publication of a report under any of the provisions mentioned in section 42A(2).”
- (3) In section 39 of the <sup>M62</sup>Education Act 1997 (reports of inspections of local education authorities), at the end of subsection (4) (publication of such reports) there shall be added “; and section 42A(2) to (4) of the School Inspections Act 1996 shall apply in relation to the publication of any such report as they apply in relation to the publication of a report under any of the provisions mentioned in section 42A(2).”

#### Commencement Information

**I39** S. 134 partly in force; s. 134 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 134(1)(3) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I

#### Marginal Citations

**M59** 1996 c. 57.  
**M60** 1996 c. 50.  
**M61** 1996 c. 57.  
**M62** 1997 c. 44.

### 135 Miscellaneous amendments relating to school and nursery inspections.

[<sup>F135</sup>Schedule 28 (which contains amendments relating to inspections under the <sup>M63</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 and the <sup>M64</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996) shall have effect.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F135** S. 135 repealed (1.9.2005 for E.) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), Sch. 19 Pt. 1; S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4

#### Commencement Information

**I40** S. 135 partly in force; s. 135 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 135 in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I

#### Marginal Citations

**M63** 1996 c. 57.  
**M64** 1996 c. 50.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Education Assets Board*

#### **136 Change of name of Education Assets Board.**

- (1) The Education Assets Board shall be known instead as the Education Transfer Council.
- (2) For any reference to the Education Assets Board—
  - (a) in any statutory provision (other than this section), or
  - (b) in any instrument or document,
 there shall be substituted, as respects any time after the commencement of this section, a reference to the Education Transfer Council.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order specify a different name by which the Council are to be known; and an order under this section may make such provision as appears to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient in consequence of the change of name effected by the order (including provision for amending statutory provisions).

#### **137 Education Transfer Council: alteration of functions and provision for dissolution.**

- (1) Schedule 29 (which amends section 198 of, and Schedule 10 to, the <sup>M65</sup>Education Reform Act 1988, which relate to the functions of the Education Transfer Council) shall have effect.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order make such further amendments of those provisions of that Act as he considers expedient.
- (3) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for the dissolution of the Education Transfer Council by order of the Secretary of State and for enabling him to determine how any property, rights and liabilities of the Council are to be dealt with in connection with their dissolution;
  - (b) for the subsequent establishment of a new body with such name as may be prescribed and constituted in the same manner as, or similarly to, the Council;
  - (c) for dealing with transfers of property, rights and liabilities under this Act [<sup>F136</sup>, under the Education Reform Act 1988 or under the Further and Higher Education Act 1992] at a time when the Council has been dissolved and either—
    - (i) a body has been subsequently established under paragraph (b), or
    - (ii) no such body has been so established.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may, in connection with any matters falling within paragraph (b) or (c) of that subsection—
  - (a) modify any of the provisions of section 197 or 198 of, or Schedule 8 or 10 to, the <sup>M66</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 [<sup>F137</sup> or section 34 or 36 of, or Schedule 5 or 7 to, the Further and Higher Education Act 1992];
  - (b) apply any of those provisions with or without modifications;
  - (c) make provision corresponding or similar to any of those provisions.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F136** Words in s. 137(3)(c) substituted (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and otherwise 1.9.2000) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 87(1)(2)**; S.I. 2000/2114, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**
- F137** Words in s. 137(4)(a) inserted (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8 and otherwise 1.9.2000) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 87(1)(3)**; S.I. 2000/2144, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**

### Marginal Citations

- M65** 1988 c. 40.  
**M66** 1988 c. 40.

## Supplementary

### 138 Orders and regulations.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), any power of the Secretary of State to make an order or regulations under this Act shall be exercised by statutory instrument.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to any order under—
  - (a) section 11(5), 20(5), 21(8), 73, 82, 111(3)(a) or 142(1); or
  - (b) paragraph 5 of Schedule 5, paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 7, [F138 paragraph 3(5) or 4 of Schedule 10], paragraph 1 of Schedule 14, paragraph 10 of Schedule 21, paragraph 4(2) or 7(3)(c) of Schedule 22 or paragraph 5(3) of Schedule 32.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), a statutory instrument containing any order or regulations under this Act shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not apply to any order under—
  - (a) section 20(7), [F139 45C(2),] 69(3), 85(5), 104, 110(10) or 145; or
  - (b) [F140 paragraph 4 or 8 of Schedule 23 or] paragraph 1 of Schedule 32.
- (5) Subsection (3) also does not apply to—
  - (a) any order under—
    - (i) section 1(5),
    - (ii) paragraph 18 of Schedule 18, or
    - (iii) paragraph 17 of Schedule 24 or paragraph 14 of Schedule 25; or
  - (b) the first regulations to be made under—
    - (i) section 38(3) or 39(1),
    - (ii) section [F141 46], 47 or 48(1), or
    - (iii) section 105 or 108(2);
 and no such order or regulations shall be made (whether alone or with other provisions) unless a draft of the statutory instrument containing the order or regulations has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (6) If a draft of the statutory instrument containing any such regulations under section 105 would, apart from this subsection, be treated for the purposes of the Standing Orders

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it shall proceed in that House as if it were not such an instrument.

- (7) Any order or regulations under this Act may make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas and may contain such incidental, supplemental, saving or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (8) Any order or regulations under this Act may make different provision in relation to England and Wales respectively.
- (9) Nothing in this Act shall be read as affecting the generality of subsection (7).

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

- P3** S. 138(7) power partly exercised (9.9.1998): different days appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1998/2212.
- S. 138(7) power partly exercised (15.12.1998): different days appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1998/3198.
- S. 138(7) power partly exercised (20.1.1999): different days appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/120.
- S. 138(7) power partly exercised (13.8.1999): different days appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/2323.

#### Textual Amendments

- F138** Words in s. 138(2)(b) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)
- F139** Words in s. 138(4)(a) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, Sch. 21 para. 111 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)
- F140** Words in s. 138(4)(b) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)
- F141** Word in s. 138(5)(b)(ii) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

### 139 Financial provisions.

- (1) There shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament—
- any sums required for the making by the Secretary of State of grants or loans under this Act;
  - any other expenses of the Secretary of State under this Act; and
  - any increase attributable to this Act in the sums so payable by virtue of any other Act.
- (2) There shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund—
- any sums received by the Secretary of State under or by virtue of this Act; and
  - any fees received by Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Schools in England, or <sup>F142</sup>Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales or Prif Arolygydd Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru], under Schedule 26.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F142** Words in s. 139(2)(b) substituted (W.) (1.1.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 73(3)(a); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

## 140 Minor and consequential amendments and repeals.

- (1) The minor and consequential amendments set out in Schedule 30 shall have effect.
- (2) Unless the context otherwise requires, any reference in any enactment amended by this Act—
  - (a) to a maintained school, or
  - (b) to a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school,
 is a reference to such a school within the meaning of this Act.
- (3) The enactments specified in Schedule 31 (which include certain spent enactments) are repealed to the extent specified.
- (4) Any articles of government of a school which are in force under the <sup>M67</sup>Education Act 1996 immediately before the appointed day shall cease to have effect on that day.

### Extent Information

**E5** S. 140 extends to Scotland or Northern Ireland in so far as it amends or repeals an enactment extending to Scotland or Northern Ireland.

### Commencement Information

**I41** S. 140 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; s. 140 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); s. 140(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998, 1.2.1999 and 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pts. I, III and IV; s. 140(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); s. 140(1) in force for a certain purpose at 1.6.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); s. 140 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

### Marginal Citations

**M67** 1996 c. 56.

## Construction

## 141 Minor authorities.

- (1) For the purposes of this Act a maintained school serves an area for which there are one or more minor authorities if the area served by the school is—
  - (a) a parish or community;
  - (b) an area in England which is not within a parish and is not situated in—
    - (i) a county for which there is no council, or
    - (ii) a county in which there are no district councils; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) an area comprising two or more areas each of which falls within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (2) Where the area served by the school is a parish—
- (a) the parish council (if there is one), or
  - (b) the parish meeting (if there is no parish council),
- is the minor authority in relation to the school.
- (3) Where the area served by the school is a community, the community council is the minor authority in relation to the school.
- (4) Where the area served by the school is an area falling within subsection (1)(b), any district council for the whole or part of the area is a minor authority in relation to the school.
- (5) Where the area served by the school is an area falling within subsection (1)(c), each of the relevant authorities is a minor authority in relation to the school.
- (6) In subsection (5) “the relevant authorities” means the bodies which, if the two or more constituent areas referred to in subsection (1)(c) were taken separately, would be minor authorities in relation to the school.
- (7) References in this section to the area served by a school are references to the area appearing to the local education authority to be served by the school.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C136** S. 141 applied with modification (3.12.1998 until the appointed day) by S.I. 1998/2763, **reg. 6(1)(2)**
- S. 141 extended (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 2(4)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 8(1)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 9(1)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 27(1)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, **reg. 43(1)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 32(1)(2)**.
- S. 141 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 32(1)(2)**.
- S. 141 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 32(2)**.

## 142 General interpretation.

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—

**F143**

“Church in Wales school” means a school in the Province of Wales in relation to which the religion or religious denomination specified under section 69(4) is “Church in Wales” and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese of the Church in Wales in which the school is situated or such other person as the Secretary of State may by order designate in respect of that diocese;

“Church of England school” means a school in the Province of Canterbury or York in relation to which the religion or religious denomination specified under section 69(4) is “Church of England” and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the Diocesan Board of Education for the diocese of the Church of England in which the school is situated;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“community or foundation special school” means a community special school or a foundation special school;

“contract of employment”, “employee” and “employer” have the same meaning as in the <sup>M68</sup>Employment Rights Act 1996;

“employment” (except in section 92(4)) means employment under a contract of employment, and “employed” shall be construed accordingly;

“maintained school” (except in Part III) has the meaning given by section 20(7);

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;

“reception class” means a class in which education is provided which is suitable to the requirements of pupils aged five and any pupils under or over that age whom it is expedient to educate with pupils of that age;

“regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State under this Act;

“relevant age group”, in relation to a school, means an age group in which pupils are normally admitted (or, as the case may be, will normally be admitted) to the school;

“Roman Catholic Church school” means a school in relation to which the religion or religious denomination specified under section 69(4) is “Roman Catholic” and “appropriate diocesan authority”, in relation to such a school, means the bishop of the Roman Catholic diocese in which the school is situated;

“school maintained by a local education authority”, in relation to any time on or after the appointed day, means a community, foundation or voluntary school, a community or foundation special school, a maintained nursery school or a pupil referral unit;

“statutory provision” means a provision contained in an Act or in subordinate legislation within the meaning of the <sup>M69</sup>Interpretation Act 1978.

- (2) Before making an order in respect of any diocese in Wales in exercise of the power conferred by the definition of “appropriate diocesan authority” the Secretary of State shall consult the bishop for the diocese.
- (3) Any reference in this Act to the religion or religious denomination specified in relation to a school under section 69(4) shall be construed, in a case where more than one religion or religious denomination is so specified, as including a reference to any of those religions or religious denominations.
- (4) As a result of subsection (3), subsection (1) has the effect that a school may, for example, be both a Church of England school and a Roman Catholic Church school and so have a different appropriate diocesan authority in each of those capacities; and, in the case of a school with two appropriate diocesan authorities, any reference in this Act to “the appropriate diocesan authority” is—
  - (a) in relation to anything required to be done by or in relation to that authority, a reference to both of the authorities concerned; or
  - (b) in relation to anything authorised to be done by or in relation to that authority, a reference to either or both of the authorities concerned (or, in the context of section 16(6) or (8), to both of them acting together).
- (5) For the purposes of this Act children are to be regarded as admitted to a school for nursery education if they are or are to be placed on admission in a nursery class.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) For the purposes of this Act references to disposing of land include references to—
- (a) granting or disposing of any interest in land;
  - (b) entering into a contract to dispose of land or to grant or dispose of any such interest; and
  - (c) granting an option to purchase any land or any such interest.
- (7) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) a person employed by a local education authority is to be regarded as employed to work at a school if his employment with the authority for the time being involves work at that school; and
  - (b) a person employed by a local education authority is to be regarded as employed to work solely at a school if his only employment with the authority (disregarding any employment under a separate contract with the authority) is for the time being at that school.
- (8) This Act shall be construed as one with the <sup>M70</sup>Education Act 1996; and (without prejudice to their generality) paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 39 to that Act (construction of references etc.) apply to references in this Act to provisions of that Act.
- (9) Where, however, an expression is given for the purposes of any provision of this Act a meaning different from that given to it for the purposes of that Act, the meaning given for the purposes of that provision shall apply instead of the one given for the purposes of that Act.
- (10) Subsection (1) of section 576 of that Act (meaning of “parent”) shall, in its application for the purposes of—
- (a) section 43 or 62(2) of this Act, or
  - (b) paragraph 4 of Schedule 2 or paragraph 4 or 14 of Schedule 9 to this Act,
- be taken as referring only to persons within paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection who are individuals.

#### Textual Amendments

**F143** S. 142(1): definition of “the appropriate further education funding council” repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 153, Sch. 9 para. 88, Sch. 11; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, Sch. Pt. II (with art. 3)

#### Marginal Citations

**M68** 1996 c. 18.  
**M69** 1978 c. 30.  
**M70** 1996 c. 56.

## 143 Index.

The expressions listed in the left-hand column below are defined by, or (as the case may be) are to be interpreted in accordance with, the provisions of this Act listed in the right-hand column in relation to those expressions.

*Expression*

*Relevant provision*



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

ability (in Chapter II of Part III)	section 99(5)
adjudicator	section 25(3)
admission arrangements (in Part III in relation to a maintained school)	sections 88(2) and 99(5)
admission authority (in Chapter I of Part III in relation to a maintained school)	section 88(1)
admitted to a school for nursery education	section 142(5)
alteration (in Part II in the context of a prescribed alteration to a maintained school)	section 28(11)
appeal panel (in Chapter I of Part III)	section 84(6)
appointed day (except in Part I of Schedule 32)	section 20(7)
appropriate diocesan authority (in relation to a Church in Wales, Church of England or Roman Catholic Church school)	section 142(1) and (4)
appropriate further education funding council	section 142(1)
area (in Part II)	section 28(11)
budget share (in Part II)	section 47(1)
Chief Inspector (in Chapter IV of Part I)	section 14(4)
child (in Chapter I of Part III but not in sections 96 and 97)	section 84(6)
Church in Wales school	section 142(1)
Church of England school	section 142(1)
class (in Chapter I of Part I)	section 4
community or foundation special school	section 142(1)
“contract of employment” and other expressions relating to employment	section 142(1) and (7)
discontinuing, and implementing proposals to discontinue, a school (in Part II in relation to a local education authority)	section 29(10)
disposing of land	section 142(6)
education action zone (in Chapter III of Part I)	section 10(1)
exclude, exclusion (in relation to the exclusion of a child from a school)	section 64(4)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

foundation (in relation to a foundation or voluntary school) (and having a foundation)	section 21(3)
foundation body	section 21(4)
foundation governor	paragraph 2 of Schedule 9
governing body	
(in Chapter III of Part I)	section 10(6)
(of a maintained school or of a school maintained by a local education authority) (in Chapter IV of Part II)	section 45(3)
grammar school (in Chapter II of Part III)	section 104(7)
group (in relation to a foundation body)	section 21(4)
individual schools budget (in Part II)	[ <sup>F144</sup> section 45A(3)]
infant class (in Chapter I of Part I)	section 4
land or other property held on trust, or by trustees, for the purposes of a school	section 21(3)(c)
[ <sup>F145</sup> LEA budget (in Part 2)]	[ <sup>F145</sup> section 45A(1)]
local education authority (in relation to a school maintained, or proposed to be maintained, by such an authority)	section 22(8)
[ <sup>F146</sup> local schools budget (in Part II)]	[ <sup>F146</sup> section 46(1)]
maintain (in relation to a maintained school or a maintained nursery school)	section 22(8)
maintained school	
(generally)	section 20(7)
(in Chapter IV of Part II in a context referring to a local education authority)	section 45(3)
(in Chapter I of Part III)	section 84(6)
(in Chapter II of Part III)	section 99(5)
maintained nursery school	section 22(9)
member of the Inspectorate (in Chapter IV of Part I)	section 14(4)
minor authority	section 141
new school (in Chapter IV of Part II)	section 45(4)
nursery education (in Part V)	section 117
ordinary teaching session (in Chapter I of Part I)	section 4

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

participating school (in Chapter III of Part I in relation to an education action zone)	section 10(6)
prescribed	section 142(1)
promoters (in Part II)	section 28(2)
qualified teacher (in Chapter I of Part I in relation to an infant class)	section 4
reception class	section 142(1)
regulations	section 142(1)
relevant age group	section 142(1)
[ <sup>F147</sup> relevant standard number (in Chapter I of Part III)]	[ <sup>F147</sup> section 84(6)]
right to a delegated budget (in Part II)	section 49(7)
Roman Catholic Church school	section 142(1)
scheme (in Part II in relation to a maintained school)	section 48(5)
school having a delegated budget (in Part II)	section 49(7)
school maintained by a local education authority (generally)	section 142(1)
(in Chapter IV of Part II)	section 45(3)
school opening date	section 44(9)
school organisation committee	section 24(4)
school requiring special measures (in Chapter IV of Part I)	section 14(4)
school which has a religious character (in Part II in relation to a foundation or voluntary school)	section 69(3)
school which has selective admission arrangements (in Chapter II of Part III)	section 104(2)
[ <sup>F148</sup> schools budget (in Part 2)]	[ <sup>F148</sup> section 45A(2)]
specified religion or religious denomination	section 142(3)
statutory provision	section 142(1)

### Textual Amendments

- F144** S. 143: Words in entry relating to "individual schools budget" substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para.113\(c\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F145** S. 143: Entry relating to "LEA budget (in Part 2)" inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, **Sch. 21 para.113(d)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F146** S. 143: Entry relating to "local schools budget" repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F147** S. 143: Entry relating to "relevant standard number" repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)
- F148** S. 143: Entry relating to "schools budget (in Part 2)" inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, **Sch. 21 para.113(g)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.)

### *Final provisions*

#### **144 Transitional provisions etc.**

- (1) Regulations may at any time make such incidental, consequential, transitional or supplementary provision as appears to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient for the general purposes, or any particular purposes, of this Act or in consequence of any of its provisions or for giving full effect to it.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for enabling any authority or body by whom any functions will become exercisable on the appointed day by virtue of any provision made by or under this Act to take before that day any steps (such as the establishment of committees or the undertaking of consultation) which are necessary or expedient in preparation for the exercise of those functions;
  - (b) for requiring any body—
    - (i) by whom any functions will cease to be exercisable at any time, or
    - (ii) who are required to be reconstituted as from any time,
 by virtue of any provision made by or under this Act to take before that time any steps (such as the provision of information, the furnishing of other assistance or the taking of any decision) which are necessary or expedient in preparation for the exercise of functions conferred on any authority or other body, by virtue of any such provision, as from that time or (as the case may be) in preparation for their reconstitution;
  - (c) for the making before the appointed day of arrangements for securing the satisfactory operation from that day of any such provision and for defraying the cost of any such arrangements;
  - (d) for prohibiting or restricting the taking of steps before the appointed day which, by virtue of any such provision, will cease to be capable of being taken as from that day;
  - (e) for enabling the determination under the regulations of matters pending immediately before the appointed day;
  - (f) for any provision of this Act which comes into force before—
    - (i) another such provision has come into force, or
    - (ii) anything falling to be done under another such provision (such as the approval of a school organisation plan) has been done,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

to have effect, until that other provision has come into force or (as the case may be) that thing has been done, with such modifications as are specified in the regulations;

- (g) for amending, repealing or revoking (with or without savings) any statutory provision passed or made before the appointed day, for applying any such provision (with or without modification) and for making savings or additional savings from the effect of any amendment or repeal made by this Act.

- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) or any provision of subsection (2), regulations under subsection (1) may provide—

- (a) for any relevant provision to apply (with or without modification) to, or to any description of—

(i) schools maintained by a local education authority within the meaning of the <sup>M71</sup>Education Act 1996, or

(ii) grant-maintained or grant-maintained special schools within the meaning of that Act;

- (b) for any provision so applied, or any provision of the regulations, to have effect in relation to schools despite anything in their articles or instruments of government;

- (c) for any reference in this Act to the appointed day to have effect instead as a reference to such day as is specified in the regulations;

and accordingly references to the appointed day in subsection (2) include, in relation to any purposes for which any provision made by virtue of paragraph (c) above has effect, references to any such other day as is mentioned in that paragraph.

- (4) In paragraph (a) of subsection (3) “relevant provision” means—

- (a) (in relation to sub-paragraph (i) or (ii) of that paragraph) any provision of the Education Acts which is expressed to apply to, or to any description of, schools maintained by a local education authority within the meaning of this Act, or

- (b) (in relation only to sub-paragraph (ii) of that paragraph) any provision of the Education Acts which is expressed to apply to, or to any description of, schools maintained by a local education authority within the meaning of the <sup>M72</sup>Education Act 1996;

and in that paragraph and this subsection “school” includes a proposed school.

- (5) The amendments that may be made under subsection (2)(g) shall be in addition (and without prejudice) to those made by any other provision of this Act.

- (6) Nothing in this Act shall be read as prejudicing the generality of subsection (1).

- (7) The transitional provisions and savings in Schedule 32 shall have effect.

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

**P4** S. 144: power exercised, 20.11.1998 appointed by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 1**

**P5** S. 144: power exercised, 3.12.1998 appointed by S.I. 1998/2763, **reg. 1**

s. 144(1): power exercised, 6.1.1999 appointed by S.I. 1998/3165, **reg. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C137** S. 144: Transfer of functions (16.2.2000) by S.I. 2000/253, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M71** 1996 c. 56.

**M72** 1996 c. 56.

## 145 Short title, commencement and extent.

- (1) This Act may be cited as the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.
- (2) This Act shall be included in the list of Education Acts set out in section 578 of the <sup>M73</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), this Act shall come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint; and different days may be appointed for different provisions and for different purposes.
- (4) The following provisions come into force on the day on which this Act is passed—
  - sections 1 to 4;
  - sections 20 and 21;
  - section 36(3);
  - section 82;
  - sections 84 and 85;
  - section 130;
  - sections 138, 139, 141 to 144 and this section;
  - Schedule 2;
  - Parts I and III of Schedule 11;
  - paragraph 224 of Schedule 30 (and section 140(1) so far as relating thereto); and
  - Schedule 32.
- (5) The following provisions come into force on the day on which this Act is passed, but for the purposes only of the preparation of instruments of government and the constitution of governing bodies and the exercise (in relation to those or any other matters) of any power to make regulations—
  - sections 36(1) and (2) and 37(1) and (2); and
  - Schedules 9, 10 and 12.
- (6) Subject to subsections (7) and (8), this Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (7) Section 130(2) extends to Scotland only; and this section extends also to Scotland.
- (8) The amendment or (subject to subsection (9)) repeal by this Act of an enactment extending to Scotland or Northern Ireland extends also to Scotland or, as the case may be, Northern Ireland, and section 140 extends accordingly.
- (9) The entry in Schedule 31 relating to the <sup>M74</sup>Education (Scotland) Act 1980 extends to Scotland only.

### Subordinate Legislation Made

**P6** S. 145(3) power partly exercised (7.8.1998): different dates appointed for specified provisions by [S.I. 1998/2048](#)

**P7** S. 145(3) power partly exercised (9.9.1998): different dates appointed for specified provisions by [S.I. 1998/2212](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

S. 145(3) power partly exercised (15.12.1998): different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1998/3198

S. 145(3) power partly exercised (20.1.1999): different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/120

S. 145(3) power partly exercised (13.8.1999): different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/2323

S. 145(3) power partly exercised: 1.4.2001 appointed for specified provision by S.I. 2001/1195, **art. 2(1)**

S. 145(3) power partly exercised: 20.7.2001 appointed for specified provision by S.I. 2001/2663, **art. 2**

---

### Marginal Citations

**M73** 1996 c. 56.

**M74** 1980 c. 44.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 11.

#### PROVISIONS RELATING TO AN EDUCATION ACTION FORUM

##### *Powers*

- 1 (1) An Education Action Forum may, subject to sub-paragraph (2), do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is incidental or conducive to, the carrying out of any of its functions.
- (2) A Forum shall not have power to borrow money.

##### *Chairman*

- 2 The members of an Education Action Forum shall elect one of their number to be chairman of the Forum, who shall hold office for such period as is specified in the order by which the Forum is established under section 10(1).

##### *Committees*

- 3 An Education Action Forum may—
- (a) establish a committee for any purpose; and
  - (b) authorise any such committee to exercise such of its functions as it may determine.

##### *Proceedings*

- 4 The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the meetings and proceedings of an Education Action Forum.
- 5 The validity of the proceedings of an Education Action Forum shall not be affected by a vacancy among the members or any defect in the appointment of a member.
- 6 Subject to the preceding provisions of this Schedule, an Education Action Forum may regulate its own procedure and that of any of its committees.

##### *Accounts*

- 7 (1) It shall be the duty of an Education Action Forum—
- (a) to keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts,
  - (b) to prepare in respect of each financial year of the Forum a statement of accounts, and
  - (c) to send copies of the statement to the Secretary of State and to the Comptroller and Auditor General before the end of the month of August next following the financial year to which the statement relates.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The statement of accounts shall comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State as to—
- (a) the information to be contained in it,
  - (b) the manner in which the information contained in it is to be presented, or
  - (c) the methods and principles according to which the statement is to be prepared.
- (3) The Comptroller and Auditor General shall examine, certify and report on each statement received by him in pursuance of this paragraph and shall lay copies of each statement and of his report before each House of Parliament.
- (4) In this paragraph “financial year” means the period beginning with the date on which the Forum is established and ending with the 31st March following that date, and each successive period of twelve months.

#### *Application of seal and proof of instruments*

- 8 The application of the seal of an Education Action Forum shall be authenticated by the signature—
- (a) of the chairman or of some other person authorised either generally or specially by the Forum to act for that purpose, and
  - (b) of one other member.
- 9 Every document purporting to be an instrument made or issued by or on behalf of an Education Action Forum and to be duly executed under the seal of the Forum, or to be signed or executed by a person authorised by the Forum to act in that behalf, shall be received in evidence and be treated, without further proof, as being so made or issued unless the contrary is shown.

#### *Charitable status*

- 10 An Education Action Forum shall be a charity which is an exempt charity for the purposes of the <sup>M75</sup>Charities Act 1993.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M75** 1993 c. 10.

[<sup>F149</sup>SCHEDULE 1A

Section 19A

#### GOVERNING BODIES CONSISTING OF INTERIM EXECUTIVE MEMBERS

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F149** Sch. 1A inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 59(2), 216, Sch. 6 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Interpretation of Schedule*

1 (1) In this Schedule—

“the appropriate authority” means—

- (a) where this Schedule applies by virtue of a notice under section 16A(1), the local education authority who gave the notice, and
- (b) where this Schedule applies by virtue of a notice under section 18A(1), the Secretary of State;

“existing governors”, in relation to a school in respect of which a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) has been given, means the governors who hold office immediately before the governing body becomes constituted in accordance with this Schedule;

“the interim period”, in relation to a school in respect of which a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) has been given, means the period during which the governing body is constituted in accordance with this Schedule;

“a normally constituted governing body” means a governing body constituted in accordance with regulations made by virtue of section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies).

(2) In this Schedule any reference to the discontinuance of a maintained school is a reference to the local education authority ceasing to maintain it.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C138** Sch. 1A para. 1 modified (temp.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), **regs. 1, 5(a)**

### *Governing body to consist of members appointed by appropriate authority*

2 (1) The governing body of the school shall consist of members appointed by the appropriate authority, instead of being constituted in accordance with regulations made by virtue of section 19 of the Education Act 2002.

(2) In the following provisions of this Schedule—

- (a) the governing body as constituted in accordance with this Schedule is referred to as “the interim executive board”, and
- (b) the members of the governing body as so constituted are referred to as “interim executive members”.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C139** Sch. 1A para. 2 modified (temp.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), **regs. 1, 5(b)**

### *Effect of notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1)*

3 (1) On the date specified in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1), the existing governors shall vacate office.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the appointment of an existing governor as an interim executive member.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) During the interim period, any reference in any provision contained in, or made under, the Education Acts to a governor or foundation governor of a school shall have effect, in relation to the school, as a reference to an interim executive member.
- (4) During the interim period, section 83 (modification of provisions making governors of foundation or voluntary school ex officio trustees) shall have effect in relation to the school with the substitution for paragraphs (a) to (c) of a reference to the interim executive members.

#### *Interim executive members*

- 4 (1) The number of interim executive members must not be less than two.
- (2) The initial appointment of interim executive members shall be made so as to take effect on the date specified in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1).
- (3) The appropriate authority may appoint further interim executive members at any time during the interim period.
- 5 (1) Every appointment of an interim executive member must be made by an instrument in writing setting out the terms of his appointment.
- (2) An interim executive member—
  - (a) shall hold office in accordance with the terms of his appointment and subject to paragraph 18, and
  - (b) may at any time be removed from office by the appropriate authority for incapacity or misbehaviour.
- (3) The terms of appointment of an interim executive member may provide for his appointment to be terminable by the appropriate authority by notice.

#### *Duty of appropriate authority to inform other persons*

- 6 (1) The appropriate authority shall give a copy of the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) and of every instrument of appointment of an interim executive member—
  - (a) to every interim executive member,
  - (b) to every existing governor of the school,
  - (c) where the local education authority are the appropriate authority, to the Secretary of State,
  - (d) where the Secretary of State is the appropriate authority, to the local education authority,
  - (e) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, to the appropriate diocesan authority, and
  - (f) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, to the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.
- (2) A failure to comply with sub-paragraph (1) does not invalidate the notice or appointment.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### *Power to specify duration of interim period*

- 7 The appropriate authority may in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) specify the duration of the interim period.

#### *Chairman*

- 8 The appropriate authority may nominate one of the interim executive members to be chairman of the interim executive board.

#### *Remuneration and allowances*

- 9 The appropriate authority may pay to any interim executive member such remuneration and allowances as the appropriate authority may determine.

#### *Duty of interim executive board*

- 10 (1) During the interim period, the interim executive board shall conduct the school so as to secure, so far as is practicable to do so, the provision of a sound basis for future improvement in the conduct of the school.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the other duties of the interim executive board as governing body.

#### *Proceedings of interim executive board*

- 11 (1) The interim executive board may determine their own procedure.
- (2) The interim executive board may make such arrangements as they think fit for the discharge of their functions by any other person.

#### *Effect on suspension of delegated budget*

- 12 (1) If immediately before the date specified in a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) the school does not have a delegated budget, the suspension of the governing body's right to a delegated budget is by virtue of this sub-paragraph revoked with effect from that date.
- (2) If a notice under paragraph 1 of Schedule 15 (suspension of delegated budget for mismanagement etc.) has been given to the governing body before the date specified in a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) but has not yet taken effect, the notice shall cease to have effect on that date.
- (3) During the interim period, the local education authority may not exercise the power conferred by section 17 (power to suspend right to delegated budget).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (1) is to be construed in accordance with section 49(7).

#### *Exclusion of certain statutory provisions*

- 13 (1) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (2) or (3) of section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies) shall not apply in relation to the interim executive board.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The instrument of government of the school shall not, so far as it relates to the constitution of the governing body, have effect in relation to the interim executive board.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C140** Sch. 1A para. 13 modified (temp.) (2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), [regs. 1, 5\(c\)](#)

- 14 During the interim period—
- (a) the local education authority may not exercise any power conferred by section 16 (power to appoint additional governors), and
  - (b) the Secretary of State may not exercise any power conferred by section 18 (power to appoint additional governors).

*Closure of school*

- 15 (1) At any time during the interim period, the interim executive board may, if they think fit, make a report to the local education authority and the Secretary of State recommending that the school be discontinued, and stating the reasons for that recommendation.
- (2) The interim executive board may not—
- (a) publish under section 29(2) proposals to discontinue the school, or
  - (b) serve notice under section 30(2).
- 16 (1) Where during the interim period—
- (a) the Secretary of State gives a direction under section 19(1) or 32(1) in relation to the school, or
  - (b) the local education authority determine to discontinue the school,
- the interim period shall continue until the discontinuance date, even where it would otherwise end before that date.
- (2) In this paragraph “the discontinuance date” means—
- (a) the date on which proposals for discontinuing the school are implemented under Part 3 of Schedule 6,
  - (b) the date on which the school is discontinued under section 30, or
  - (c) the date specified in the direction under section 19(1) or 32(1),
- as the case may be.

*Notice of resumption of government by normally constituted governing body*

- 17 (1) Where—
- (a) the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) did not specify the duration of the interim period, and
  - (b) paragraph 16 does not apply,
- the appropriate authority may give notice to the persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) specifying a date on which the governing body are to become a normally constituted governing body.
- (2) The persons referred to in sub-paragraph (1) are—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) every interim executive member,
- (b) where the local education authority are the appropriate authority, the Secretary of State,
- (c) where the Secretary of State is the appropriate authority, the local education authority,
- (d) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority, and
- (e) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.

*Time when interim executive members cease to hold office*

- 18 (1) The interim executive members shall vacate office—
- (a) in a case where paragraph 16 applies, on the discontinuance date within the meaning of that paragraph,
  - (b) in a case where that paragraph does not apply and the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) specified the duration of the interim period, at the end of the specified period, and
  - (c) in any other case, on the date specified under paragraph 17 (1).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the termination of the appointment of an interim executive member at any earlier time under paragraph 5(2)(b) or in accordance with the terms of his appointment.

*Establishment of normally constituted governing body*

- 19 (1) Where interim executive members are to vacate office on the date referred to in paragraph 18(1)(b) or (c), the local education authority shall make arrangements providing for the constitution of the governing body on and after that date.
- (2) Regulations may make provision with respect to the transition from an interim executive board to a normally constituted governing body, and may in connection with that transition—
- (a) modify any provision made under any of sections 19, 20 and 23 of the Education Act 2002 or by Schedule 1 to that Act,
  - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications, and
  - (c) make provision corresponding to or similar to any such provision.
- (3) The provision that may be made by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) includes, in particular, provision enabling governors to be elected or appointed, and to exercise functions, before the end of the interim period.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 2

Section 20.

### ALLOCATION OF EXISTING SCHOOLS TO NEW CATEGORIES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C141** Sch. 2 excluded (7.9.1998) (temp.) by S.I. 1998/1969, reg.18

#### *Allocation of LEA-maintained schools*

- 1 A school which immediately before the appointed day is (within the meaning of the <sup>M76</sup>Education Act 1996)—
- (a) a county school,
  - (b) a controlled, aided or special agreement school, or
  - (c) a maintained special school,
- shall become on that day a school of the category to which it is allocated by the following table.

<i>Existing school</i>	<i>Allocated new category</i>
A county school.	Community school.
A controlled school.	Voluntary controlled school.
(1) An aided school.	Voluntary aided school.
(2) A special agreement school.	
A maintained special school.	Community special school.

#### Marginal Citations

**M76** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Allocation of grant-maintained and grant-maintained special schools*

- 2 A school which immediately before the appointed day is (within the meaning of the <sup>M77</sup>Education Act 1996)—
- (a) a grant-maintained school, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained special school,
- shall become on that day a school of the category to which it is to be allocated in accordance with the following paragraphs of this Schedule.

#### Marginal Citations

**M77** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Indicative allocation of schools within paragraph 2*

- 3 For the purposes of this Schedule the indicative allocation of a school within paragraph 2 is shown in the following table.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Any reference in the first column to a school of a particular description is a reference to a school of that description within the meaning of the Education Act 1996.

<i>Existing school</i>	<i>Indicative new category</i>
(1) A grant-maintained school formerly a county or controlled school. (2) A grant-maintained school established by the Funding Agency for Schools.	Foundation school.
(1) A grant-maintained school formerly an aided or special agreement school. (2) A grant-maintained school established by promoters (within the meaning of Part III of the Education Act 1996).	Voluntary aided school.
A grant-maintained special school.	Foundation special school.

*Preliminary decision by governing body as to new category*

- 4 (1) The governing body of a school within paragraph 2 shall in the first instance take a decision (their “preliminary decision”) on the question whether—
- (a) to accept the school’s allocation to a particular category in accordance with its indicative allocation, or
  - (b) to opt for it to be allocated to a different category.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to the procedure to be followed in connection with the taking by governing bodies of their preliminary decisions under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) Regulations under sub-paragraph (2) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) as to the consultation to be carried out by governing bodies before taking their preliminary decisions;
  - (b) as to the time by which governing bodies are to take such decisions;
  - (c) as to the notification of such decisions to prescribed persons;
  - (d) as to the provision of prescribed information to prescribed persons;
  - (e) authorising governing bodies to charge a fee (not exceeding the cost of supply) for prescribed documents supplied by them in pursuance of regulations made by virtue of paragraph (d);
  - (f) requiring the holding of ballots of registered parents in prescribed cases;
  - (g) enabling the Secretary of State, in any prescribed circumstances, to declare a previous ballot void and require the holding of a fresh ballot;
  - (h) as to the conduct of ballots held under the regulations;
  - (i) specifying criteria for determining, for the purposes of the regulations and this Schedule, the result of any such ballot.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C142 Sch. 2 paras. 4-7 excluded (7.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 19(2)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Final decision by governing body as to new category*

- 5 (1) Where—
- (a) the governing body of a school within paragraph 2 have taken their preliminary decision under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 4, and
  - (b) the result of a ballot held by virtue of that paragraph does not accord with that decision,
- the governing body shall reconsider the question set out in that sub-paragraph, having regard to the result of the ballot, and shall then take a further decision on that question.
- (2) Where—
- (a) the governing body of a school within paragraph 2 have taken their preliminary decision under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 4, and
  - (b) either—
    - (i) a ballot was held by virtue of that paragraph whose result (if any) was not to disagree with that decision, or
    - (ii) no such ballot was required to be held,
- the governing body shall take a further decision confirming their preliminary decision.
- (3) Regulations may make provision as to the procedure to be followed in connection with the taking by governing bodies of their final decisions (including, in particular, provision as to the time by which governing bodies are to take such decisions).
- (4) In this Schedule any reference to a governing body’s “final decision” is a reference to any such further decision as is required by sub-paragraph (1) or (2).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C143 Sch. 2 paras. 4-7 excluded (7.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 19(2)

*Notification of final decision*

- 6 (1) Once the governing body of a school within paragraph 2 have taken their final decision, they shall give written notification of that decision to the Secretary of State.
- (2) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) requiring governing bodies—
    - (i) when giving such notifications, to certify such matters as may be specified in the regulations, and
    - (ii) to provide such information to such persons as may be so specified;
  - (b) as to the time by which such notifications are to be given or such information is to be provided.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C144 Sch. 2 paras. 4-7 excluded (7.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 19(2)

*Final determination of new category*

- 7 (1) If—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the final decision of the governing body of a school within paragraph 2 accorded with the school's indicative allocation, and
  - (b) either—
    - (i) a ballot was held by virtue of paragraph 4 whose result (if any) was not to disagree with that allocation, or
    - (ii) no such ballot was required to be held,
 the school shall be allocated to the category provided for by its indicative allocation.
- (2) If in the case of a school within paragraph 2—
- (a) the final decision of the governing body, or
  - (b) the result of a ballot held by virtue of paragraph 4,
- did not accord with the school's indicative allocation, the school shall be allocated to such category (whether or not that provided for by its indicative allocation) as the Secretary of State may determine in conformity with regulations under paragraph 8.
- (3) The Secretary of State shall notify the governing body of each school within paragraph 2 of the category to which it is allocated in accordance with this paragraph.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C145** Sch. 2 paras. 4-7 excluded (7.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 19(2)

*Restrictions on decisions as to categories*

- 8 Regulations may make provision for prohibiting a school of any description specified in the regulations—
- (a) from being allocated under paragraph 7 to a category so specified; or
  - (b) from being so allocated unless such conditions are satisfied as are so specified.

**Subordinate Legislation Made**

**P8** Power conferred by Sch. 2, para.8 exercised; 7.9.1998 appointed by S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 1

*Transitional arrangements: schools within paragraph 2*

- 9 (1) Where the category to which a school within paragraph 2 is to be allocated has not been finally determined, in accordance with the preceding paragraphs of this Schedule, by the appointed day, the school shall be taken to be allocated on that day to the category provided for by its indicative allocation.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent such a school from being subsequently allocated to a different category in accordance with paragraph 7.
- (3) Where such a school is subsequently so allocated, section 20(2)(a) shall apply to it as if it had been allocated to the category in question on the appointed day.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Transitional arrangements: general*

- 10 (1) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate in connection with the allocation to the new categories of maintained schools of schools—
- (a) to which paragraph 9(1) applies; or
  - (b) whose school opening date falls on or after the date of the passing of this Act; or
  - (c) in relation to which a duty to implement proposals to discontinue the school has arisen, or a notice to discontinue the school has been given; or
  - (d) in relation to which a notice has been given under section 272 of the <sup>M78</sup>Education Act 1996 (school unsuitable to continue as grant-maintained school) which contains such a statement as is mentioned in subsection (3) or (5)(b) of that section.
- (2) Regulations under sub-paragraph (1) may provide that any provision of the Education Acts shall apply to any such school with such modifications as are specified in the regulations.

**Subordinate Legislation Made**

**P9** Power conferred by Sch. 2, para. 10 exercised; 7.9.1998 appointed by [S.I. 1998/1969, reg. 1](#)

**Marginal Citations**

**M78** [1996 c. 56.](#)

*Effect of allocation*

- 11 The allocation of a school to a particular category under this Schedule shall not be taken as authorising or requiring any change as from the appointed day in the character of the school conducted by its governing body (including, in particular, any religious character of the school).

SCHEDULE 3

Section 22.

FUNDING OF FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS

**PART I**

FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY CONTROLLED AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS

*Obligations of governing bodies*

- 1 (1) The governing body of a foundation, voluntary controlled or foundation special school are (in accordance with section 22(4)) not responsible for any of the expenses of maintaining the school.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to the repayment of the principal of, or interest on, a loan made to the governing body.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Obligations of LEAs as regards provision of sites and buildings  
 (otherwise than in connection with statutory proposals)*

- 2 (1) In the case of a foundation, voluntary controlled or foundation special school, the local education authority shall provide—
- (a) any new site which is to be provided in addition to, or instead of, the school's existing site (or part of its existing site), and
  - (b) any buildings which are to form part of the school premises.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not—
- (a) apply in relation to the provision of any site or buildings which the authority or promoters are required to provide by virtue of Part III of Schedule 6 (provision of premises in connection with statutory proposals); or
  - (b) require the local education authority to finance the acquisition by the governing body of any site or buildings provided otherwise than by the authority.
- (3) Where a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, the local education authority shall transfer their interest in the site, and in any buildings on the site which are to form part of the school premises—
- (a) to the trustees of the school, to be held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) if the school has no trustees, to the school's foundation body or (in the absence of such a body) to the governing body, to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (4) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer, it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (5) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (6) Where—
- (a) a transfer is made under this paragraph, and
  - (b) the transfer is made to persons who possess, or are or may become entitled to, any sum representing proceeds of the sale of other premises which have been used for the purposes of the school,
- those persons shall notify the local education authority that paragraph (b) applies to them and they or their successors shall pay to the local education authority so much of that sum as, having regard to the value of the interest transferred, may be determined to be just, either by agreement between them and the authority or, in default of agreement, by the Secretary of State.
- (7) In sub-paragraph (6)(b) the reference to proceeds of the sale of other premises includes a reference to—
- (a) consideration for the creation or disposition of any kind of interest in other premises, including rent; and
  - (b) interest which has accrued in respect of any such consideration;
- and for the purposes of any agreed determination under sub-paragraph (6) regard shall be had to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) Any sum paid under sub-paragraph (6) shall be treated for the purposes of section 14 of the <sup>M79</sup>Schools Sites Act 1841 (which relates to the sale or exchange of land held on trust for the purposes of a school) as a sum applied in the purchase of a site for the school.
- (9) A determination may be made under sub-paragraph (6) in respect of any property subject to a trust which has arisen under section 1 of the <sup>M80</sup>Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (right of reverter replaced by trust for sale) if (and only if)—
- (a) the determination is made by the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) he is satisfied that steps have been taken to protect the interests of the beneficiaries under the trust.
- (10) Sub-paragraph (6) shall apply for the purpose of compensating the authority notified under that sub-paragraph only in relation to such part of the sum mentioned in sub-paragraph (6)(b) (if any) as remains after the application of paragraphs 1 to 3 of Schedule 22 to that sum.
- (11) In this paragraph—
- “the relevant purposes” means—
  - (a) in relation to a transfer to a school’s foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts, and
  - (b) in relation to a transfer to a school’s governing body, the purposes of the school;
- “site” does not include playing fields but otherwise includes any site which is to form part of the premises of the school in question.

#### Marginal Citations

**M79** 1841 c. 38.

**M80** 1987 c. 15.

## PART II

### VOLUNTARY AIDED SCHOOLS

#### *Obligations of governing bodies*

- [<sup>F150</sup>3] (1) In the case of a voluntary aided school, the governing body of the school are responsible for meeting all capital expenditure in relation to the school premises subject to sub-paragraph (2) below.
- (2) The duty in sub-paragraph (1) does not extend—
- (a) to capital expenditure in relation to playing fields or any building or other structure erected thereon in connection with the use of playing fields, but does extend to capital expenditure in relation to boundary walls and fences;
  - (b) to capital expenditure necessary in consequence of the use of the school premises, in pursuance of a direction or requirement of the local education authority, for purposes other than those of the school;
  - (c) to capital expenditure on the provision of any new site which the local education authority is to provide by virtue of paragraph 4 of this Schedule.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) For the purposes of this Schedule “capital expenditure” has the meaning given by Article 13 of The Regulatory Reform (Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding) (England) Order 2002, as it has effect from time to time.]

*Obligations of LEAs as regards provision of sites  
 (otherwise than in connection with statutory proposals)*

- 4 (1) In the case of a voluntary aided school, the local education authority shall provide any new site which is to be provided in addition to, or instead of, the school’s existing site (or part of its existing site).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not—
- (a) apply in relation to the provision of any site which persons other than the authority are required to provide by virtue of Part III of Schedule 6 (provision of premises in connection with statutory proposals); or
  - (b) require the local education authority to finance the acquisition by the governing body of any site or buildings provided otherwise than by the authority.
- (3) Where a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, the local education authority shall transfer their interest in the site, and in any buildings on the site which are to form part of the school premises—
- (a) to the trustees of the school, to be held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) if the school has no trustees, to the school’s foundation body to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (4) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer, it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (5) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (6) Where—
- (a) a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, and
  - (b) work is required to be done to the site for the purpose of clearing it or making it suitable for building purposes,
- the local education authority and the governing body of the school may make an agreement providing for the making of such payments, or of such other adjustments of their respective rights and liabilities, as will secure that the cost of the work is borne by the authority.
- (7) Where—
- (a) a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, and
  - (b) there are buildings on the site which are of value for the purposes of the school,
- the local education authority and the governing body of the school may make an agreement providing for the making of such payments, or of such other adjustments of their respective rights and liabilities, as appear to be desirable having regard to the governing body’s duties under paragraph 3 with respect to the [<sup>F151</sup>school premises] .

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(8) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that provision for any payment or other adjustment ought to have been made under sub-paragraph (6) or (7) but has not been made, he may give directions providing for the making of such payment or other adjustment as he thinks proper.

(9) In this paragraph—

“the relevant purposes” means, in relation to a transfer to a school’s foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts;

“site” does not include playing fields but otherwise includes any site which is to form part of the premises of the school in question.

#### Extent Information

**E7** This version of this provision extends to England only; a separate version has been created for Wales.

#### Textual Amendments

**F151** Words in Sch. 3 para. 4(7) substituted (E.) (1.4.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding\) \(England\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/906\)](#), [art. 6](#)

- 4 (1) In the case of a voluntary aided school, the local education authority shall provide any new site which is to be provided in addition to, or instead of, the school’s existing site (or part of its existing site).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not—
- apply in relation to the provision of any site which persons other than the authority are required to provide by virtue of Part III of Schedule 6 (provision of premises in connection with statutory proposals); or
  - require the local education authority to finance the acquisition by the governing body of any site or buildings provided otherwise than by the authority.
- (3) Where a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, the local education authority shall transfer their interest in the site, and in any buildings on the site which are to form part of the school premises—
- to the trustees of the school, to be held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - if the school has no trustees, to the school’s foundation body to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (4) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer, it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (5) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (6) Where—
- a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, and
  - work is required to be done to the site for the purpose of clearing it or making it suitable for building purposes,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the local education authority and the governing body of the school may make an agreement providing for the making of such payments, or of such other adjustments of their respective rights and liabilities, as will secure that the cost of the work is borne by the authority.

(7) Where—

- (a) a site is provided for a school under this paragraph, and
- (b) there are buildings on the site which are of value for the purposes of the school,

the local education authority and the governing body of the school may make an agreement providing for the making of such payments, or of such other adjustments of their respective rights and liabilities, as appear to be desirable having regard to the governing body's duties under paragraph 3 with respect to the school buildings.

(8) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that provision for any payment or other adjustment ought to have been made under sub-paragraph (6) or (7) but has not been made, he may give directions providing for the making of such payment or other adjustment as he thinks proper.

(9) In this paragraph—

“the relevant purposes” means, in relation to a transfer to a school's foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts;

“site” does not include playing fields but otherwise includes any site which is to form part of the premises of the school in question.

#### **Extent Information**

**E16** This version of this provision extends to Wales only; a separate version has been created for England.

#### *Grants by Secretary of State in respect of expenditure on premises or equipment*

5 (1) The Secretary of State may make grants—

- (a) to the governing body of a voluntary aided school in respect of [<sup>F152</sup>capital expenditure incurred or to be incurred] by them; or
- (b) to a relevant body in the case of such a school, in respect of [<sup>F153</sup>capital expenditure incurred or to be incurred] by that body on behalf of the governing body.

(2) <sup>F154</sup> .....

(3) The amount of any grant paid under this paragraph in respect of any such expenditure—

- [<sup>F155</sup>(a) shall not exceed 90 per cent of the expenditure or, if the Secretary of State considers that the circumstances are exceptional, shall not exceed 100 per cent of the expenditure, and]
- (b) in the case of any prescribed class or description of such expenditure, shall be such as may be determined in accordance with regulations.

(4) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of a grant under this paragraph shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the Secretary of State.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F156</sup>(5) Without prejudice to any other duty of his, the Secretary of State shall, in performing functions relating to the exercise of the power under this paragraph to make grants in respect of expenditure on school premises, give priority to paying grants in respect of expenditure which is necessary to make such alterations as may be required by the local education authority for the purpose of securing that the school premises conform to the standards prescribed under section 542 of the Education Act 1996<sup>M81</sup> or as may be required for the purpose of securing that the school premises conform to standards specified by or under any other enactment relating to health and safety; and the amount of any grant paid in the exercise of that power in respect of such expenditure on school premises shall be at least 90 per cent of the expenditure.]
- (6) Any body to whom any payment is made in respect of a grant under this paragraph shall comply with such requirements determined by the Secretary of State as he may from time to time impose.
- (7) Such requirements—
- (a) may be imposed on, or at any time after, the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
  - (b) may at any time be waived, removed or varied by the Secretary of State;
- but such requirements may be imposed after the making of any such payment only if the Secretary of State is satisfied that in all the circumstances it is reasonable for them to be so imposed.
- (8) Such requirements may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied—
- (a) require the application for purposes connected with the provision of education in appropriate schools of—
    - (i) any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant has been paid under this paragraph, or
    - (ii) an amount equal to so much of the value of any such premises or equipment as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of the grant; and
  - (b) in the event that that requirement is not complied with, require the payment to the Secretary of State of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (9) That amount is—
- (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant under this paragraph, or
  - (b) the amount mentioned in sub-paragraph (8)(a)(ii),
- whichever the Secretary of State determines to be just.
- (10) When deciding whether to make any grant to a body under this paragraph in circumstances where he considers that it would be appropriate to impose requirements falling within sub-paragraph (8), the Secretary of State may have regard to whether, if such requirements were imposed, that body would have an enforceable right against some other person to be given by that person such financial assistance as would be necessary to enable them to pay to the Secretary of State the amount mentioned in sub-paragraph (9).
- (11) No grant may be paid under this paragraph in respect of any expenses incurred in the provision of any premises which it is the duty of the local education authority to provide.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(12) In this paragraph—

“appropriate schools”—

- (a) in relation to a voluntary aided school having a religious character, means schools which are either foundation or voluntary schools and whose specified religion or religious denomination under section 69(4) is the same as that school’s, and
- (b) in relation to any other voluntary aided school, means maintained schools;

“relevant body”, in relation to a voluntary aided school, means the appropriate diocesan authority or the school’s trustees;

<sup>F157</sup> .....

*Grants by Secretary of State in respect of preliminary expenditure*

6 (1) The Secretary of State may pay grants—

- (a) to the governing body of a voluntary aided school in respect of preliminary expenditure incurred [<sup>F158</sup>or to be incurred] by them for the purposes of any scheme for the transfer of the school to a new site or the enlargement or alteration of the school premises, or
- (b) to a relevant body in the case of such a school, in respect of any preliminary expenditure incurred [<sup>F158</sup>or to be incurred] by them, on behalf of the governing body, for the purposes of any such scheme.

(2) Where any persons propose or are considering whether to propose the establishment of a voluntary aided school, the Secretary of State may pay grants to them in respect of any preliminary expenditure incurred [<sup>F159</sup>or to be incurred] by them for the purposes of a scheme for the provision of a site for the school or of any buildings which would be [<sup>F160</sup>used for the purposes of the school] .

(3) Grants under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) may be paid in respect of a scheme such as is mentioned in that sub-paragraph whether or not—

- (a) the details of such a scheme had been formulated at the time when the expenditure was incurred,
- (b) where such details were not formulated at that time, they are subsequently formulated,
- (c) the governing body or persons in question had determined to proceed with such a scheme at that time, or
- (d) where they had not determined to proceed with such a scheme at that time, they subsequently determine to proceed with such a scheme.

(4) Expenditure in respect of which such grants are payable includes, in particular, costs incurred in connection with—

- (a) the preparation of plans and specifications for any proposed construction, enlargement or alteration of buildings which are or would be [<sup>F161</sup>used for the purposes of the school] , and
- (b) estimating the sums which would be expended if any such works were carried out,

but does not include any sums expended in carrying out any such works.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F162</sup>(5) A grant under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) shall not exceed 90 per cent of the expenditure or, if the Secretary of State considers that the circumstances are exceptional, shall not exceed 100 per cent of the expenditure, in respect of which it is paid.]
- (6) Where—
- (a) a grant is paid under sub-paragraph (1) in the case of any voluntary aided school, or
  - (b) a grant is paid under sub-paragraph (2) in the case of any school which is established as a voluntary aided school,
- the grant shall for the purposes of section 30(2) be treated as expenditure incurred by the Secretary of State (otherwise than in connection with repairs) in respect of the school premises.
- (7) In this paragraph “relevant body”, in relation to a voluntary aided school, means the appropriate diocesan authority or the school’s trustees.

*Loans by Secretary of State in respect of initial [<sup>F163</sup>expenses][<sup>F163</sup>expenditure]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F163** Cross-heading preceding Sch. 3 para. 7: "expenditure" substituted for "expenses" (E.) (1.4.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding\) \(England\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/906\)](#), [art. 9](#)

- 7 (1) Where, on the application of the governing body of a voluntary aided school and after consulting persons representing the governing body, the Secretary of State—
- (a) is satisfied that the governing body’s share of any [<sup>F164</sup>initial expenditure] required in connection with the school premises will involve capital expenditure, and
  - (b) having regard to all the circumstances of the case, considers that that [<sup>F165</sup>capital expenditure] ought properly to be met by borrowing,
- he may make a loan to the governing body for the purpose of helping them meet that expenditure.
- (2) The amount, rate of interest and other terms and conditions applicable to the loan shall be such as may be specified in an agreement made between the Secretary of State and the governing body with the consent of the Treasury.
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph [<sup>F166</sup>“initial expenditure” is expenditure] to be incurred in providing—
- (a) a site or <sup>F167</sup>. . . buildings for a voluntary aided school in connection with—
    - (i) the implementation of any proposals for a prescribed alteration to the school published under section 28, or
    - (ii) the transfer of the school to a new site, or
  - (b) a site or <sup>F168</sup>. . . buildings for a new voluntary aided school,
- being [<sup>F169</sup>expenditure] in respect of which grants may be paid under paragraph 5.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph the governing body’s share of any [<sup>F170</sup>initial expenditure] shall be taken to be so much of the [<sup>F171</sup>expenditure] as remains to be

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

borne by the governing body after taking into account the amount of any grant under paragraph 5 that may be paid or payable in respect of them.

- (5) The preceding provisions of this paragraph shall apply for the purpose of enabling loans to be made to a relevant body (within the meaning of paragraph 5) in respect of [<sup>F172</sup>expenditure] incurred by that body on behalf of the governing body as it applies to [<sup>F172</sup>expenditure] incurred by the governing body; and in those provisions, as they apply in relation to a new voluntary aided school, references to the governing body are to the promoters.
- (6) Paragraph 3(3) of Schedule 10 (consent to borrowing) does not apply to any borrowing by a governing body under this paragraph.

*Assistance by LEAs in respect of maintenance and other obligations of governing bodies*

- 8 A local education authority may give to the governing body of a voluntary aided school such assistance as the authority think fit in relation to the carrying out by the governing body of any obligation under paragraph 3.

*Duty to transfer interest in premises provided under paragraph 8*

- 9 (1) Where assistance under paragraph 8 consists of the provision of any premises for use for the purposes of a school, the local education authority shall transfer their interest in the premises—
- (a) to the trustees of the school, to be held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) if the school has no trustees, to the school's foundation body, to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (2) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer, it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (3) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (4) In this paragraph “the relevant purposes” means, in relation to a transfer to a school's foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts.

### PART III

#### FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS: COMMON PROVISIONS

*Default powers of Secretary of State*

- 10 (1) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that a local education authority have defaulted in the discharge of their duties relating to the maintenance of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, he may—
- (a) direct that any act done by or on behalf of the school's governing body for the purpose of securing the proper maintenance of the school shall be taken to have been done by or on behalf of the authority, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) reimburse to the governing body any sums which in his opinion they have properly expended for that purpose.
- (2) The amount of any sum reimbursed under sub-paragraph (1) shall be recoverable by the Secretary of State as a debt due to him from the authority; and without prejudice to any other method of recovery the whole or any part of any such sum may be deducted from any sums payable to the authority by the Secretary of State in pursuance of any regulations relating to the payment of grants.

#### *Endowments*

- 11 Where any sums accruing in respect of the income of an endowment are required by virtue of the provisions of a trust deed to be applied towards the maintenance of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, those sums shall not be payable to the local education authority but shall be applied by the governing body of the school—
- (a) (in the case of a voluntary aided school) towards the discharge of their obligations under paragraph 3, or
- (b) (in the case of any school) in such manner, if any, as may be determined by a scheme for the administration of the endowment made after 1st April 1945.

#### *Disapplication of restriction on local authority disposals*

- 12 Subsection (2) of section 123 of the <sup>M82</sup>Local Government Act 1972 (local authority prohibited from making disposal of land under that section below market value without consent of the Secretary of State) shall not apply in the case of a disposal—
- (a) to the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, or
- (b) to persons proposing to establish such a school.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M82** 1972 c. 70.

## SCHEDULE 4

Section 24.

### SCHOOL ORGANISATION COMMITTEES

#### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule—
- “committee” means a school organisation committee;
- “the relevant authority”, in the case of any such committee, means the local education authority by whom the committee are established.

#### *Election of chairmen and appointment of members*

- 2 Regulations may make provision with respect to—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the election by a committee of one of their number to be chairman, and one to be vice-chairman, of the committee;
- (b) the period for which the chairman and vice-chairman are to be elected; and
- (c) the appointment and tenure of office of, and the vacation of office by, members of a committee.

#### *Allowances for members*

- 3 (1) For the purpose of the payment of financial loss allowance under section 173(4) of the <sup>M83</sup>Local Government Act 1972, that provision shall apply, with any necessary modifications, to any member of a committee as it applies to any member of a parish or community council; and a committee shall be included in the bodies to which section 174 of that Act (travelling and subsistence allowances) applies.
- (2) In section 174(1) of that Act, in its application to a committee in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), the reference to payments at rates determined by the body in question shall be read as a reference to payments at rates determined by the relevant authority.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M83** 1972 c. 70.

#### *Financial and other assistance by LEA*

- 4 (1) The relevant authority in the case of a committee shall—
- (a) defray the expenses of the committee in accordance with sub-paragraphs (2) to (5); and
  - (b) make arrangements for them to be provided with accommodation and with such services as the authority consider appropriate.
- (2) Before the beginning of each financial year a committee shall submit to the relevant authority a statement of the estimated expenses of the committee in respect of that year (including estimates of any allowances payable to their members by virtue of paragraph 3).
- (3) Where they have received such a statement the relevant authority shall approve it, either without modification or with such modifications as they may specify.
- (4) Once they have approved the statement under sub-paragraph (3) the relevant authority shall (subject to sub-paragraphs (5) and (6)) defray the expenses of the committee, in respect of the financial year in question, up to the total amount of the expenses set out in the statement as so approved.
- (5) The relevant authority are not required by sub-paragraph (4) to defray any expenses of the committee which do not relate to an activity of the committee mentioned in the statement.
- (6) If they consider it appropriate to do so, the relevant authority may—
- (a) defray the expenses of the committee in respect of a financial year up to an amount which exceeds the total amount referred to in sub-paragraph (4);
  - (b) defray any expenses of the committee to which sub-paragraph (5) applies.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Proceedings

- 5 (1) Regulations may make provision as to the meetings and proceedings of a committee.
- (2) Regulations under this paragraph may in particular—
- (a) provide that, in any prescribed circumstances, the members within each category of members of a committee are to have collectively a single vote;
  - (b) require all decisions of a prescribed description which are taken by a committee (in accordance with regulations made by virtue of paragraph (a)) to be unanimous decisions of those voting.
- (3) Regulations under this paragraph must, however, include provision—
- (a) for the members within each category of members of a committee to have collectively a single vote in relation to any decision to which this sub-paragraph applies;
  - (b) requiring any such decision which is taken by a committee to be a unanimous decision of those voting.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (3) applies to any decision of a committee as to whether or not—
- (a) to give any approval under section 26(5) or to prepare such a plan as is mentioned in section 26(6)(d)(ii);
  - (b) to give any approval under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6 or to—
    - (i) modify any proposals,
    - (ii) specify any date, or
    - (iii) make any determination,under paragraph 5(2)(a) or (b) or (3) of that Schedule;
  - (c) to make, vary or revoke a transitional exemption order under paragraph 21 of that Schedule or paragraph 16 of Schedule 7;
  - (d) to give any approval under paragraph 8 of Schedule 7;
  - (e) [<sup>F173</sup>to make any decision authorised by or by virtue of paragraph 6 of Schedule 23.]
- (5) Where regulations under paragraph 2(2) of Schedule 8 provide for either of the following provisions, namely paragraph 3 or 5(2)(a) of Schedule 6, to have effect in relation to proposals published under paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 8, the reference to that provision in sub-paragraph (4) above shall include a reference to it as it so has effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F173** Sch. 4 para. 5(4)(e) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

- 6 The validity of any proceedings of a committee shall not be affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member.
- 7 Subject to any provision made by or under this Schedule, a committee may regulate their own procedure.
- 8 When taking any decision a committee shall have regard (so far as relevant) to the obligations which, by virtue of—
- (a) Part III of the <sup>M84</sup>Sex Discrimination Act 1975, <sup>F174</sup> . . .

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) Part III [<sup>F175</sup>or section 71]of the <sup>M85</sup>Race Relations Act 1976, [<sup>F176</sup>or  
(c) Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995,]  
are owed by any local education authority or governing body which will be affected by the decision.

#### Textual Amendments

**F174** Word in Sch. 4 para. 8(a) repealed (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1)(6), 43(3), Sch. 8 Pt. 2 para. 23(2) (a), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

**F175** Words in Sch. 4 para. 8(b) inserted (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(1), Sch. 2 para. 30 (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, art. 2(1)

**F176** Sch. 4 para. 8(c) and the preceding word "or" inserted (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(3), Sch. 8 Pt. 2 para. 23(2)(b) (with s. 43(12)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

#### Marginal Citations

**M84** 1975 c. 65.

**M85** 1976 c. 74.

#### *Indemnity*

- 9 The relevant authority in the case of a committee shall indemnify the members of the committee against any reasonable legal costs and expenses reasonably incurred by those members in connection with any decision or action taken by them in good faith in pursuance of their functions as members of the committee.

#### *Default powers of Secretary of State*

- 10 Each of sections 496 and 497 of the <sup>M86</sup>Education Act 1996 (default powers of Secretary of State) shall apply in relation to a committee as it applies in relation to a body falling within subsection (2) of that section.

#### Marginal Citations

**M86** 1996 c. 56.

## SCHEDULE 5

Section 25.

### ADJUDICATORS

#### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule “adjudicator” means a person appointed under section 25.

#### *Tenure of office*

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), an adjudicator shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.  
(2) An adjudicator—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) may at any time resign his office by notice in writing to the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) is eligible for re-appointment if he ceases to hold office.
- (3) An adjudicator may be removed from office by the Secretary of State on the ground of incapacity or misbehaviour.

#### *Remuneration and pensions*

- 3 (1) The Secretary of State may pay to an adjudicator such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (2) If the Secretary of State so determines in the case of any adjudicator, the Secretary of State may pay or make provision for the payment of such sums by way of pension, allowances and gratuities to or in respect of him as the Secretary of State may determine.

#### *Staff and accommodation etc.*

- 4 The Secretary of State may—
- (a) provide an adjudicator with such administrative staff as the adjudicator may require; and
  - (b) provide, or defray the expenses of providing, an adjudicator with such accommodation and other facilities as the adjudicator may require.

#### *Procedure*

- 5 (1) Regulations may make provision as to the procedure to be followed in connection with the reference, under this Part or Part III of this Act, of matters to adjudicators and their determination of matters so referred.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) as to the manner in which matters may be referred to adjudicators;
  - (b) for determining the adjudicators to which individual referrals are to be made;
  - (c) authorising adjudicators to hold local inquiries;
  - (d) as to the procedure to be followed where local inquiries are held by adjudicators (whether by virtue of paragraph (c) or otherwise);
  - (e) authorising adjudicators to appoint assessors to sit with them at such inquiries to advise them on matters arising;
  - (f) requiring anything falling to be done under the regulations to be done within such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (3) Subject to any provision made by the regulations, an adjudicator may regulate his own procedure.
- (4) The Secretary of State may make orders—
- (a) as to the costs of the parties at any local inquiry held by an adjudicator (whether by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(c) or otherwise), and
  - (b) as to the parties by whom the costs are to be paid;
- and any costs payable under any such order shall be subject to taxation in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 6 When taking any decision an adjudicator shall have regard (so far as relevant) to the obligations which, by virtue of—
- (a) Part III of the <sup>M87</sup>Sex Discrimination Act 1975, <sup>F177</sup> . . .
  - (b) Part III [<sup>F178</sup>or section 71] of the <sup>M88</sup>Race Relations Act 1976, [<sup>F179</sup>or
  - (c) Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995,]
- are owed by any local education authority or governing body which will be affected by the decision.

#### Textual Amendments

**F177** Word in Sch. 5 para. 6(a) repealed (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1)(6), 43(3), Sch. 8 Pt. 2 para. 23(3) (a), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

**F178** Words in Sch. 5 para. 6(b) inserted (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(1), Sch. 2 para. 31 (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, art. 2(1)

**F179** Sch. 5 para. 6(c) and the preceding word "or" inserted (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1)(6), 43(3), Sch. 8 Pt. 2 para. 23(3)(b), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

#### Marginal Citations

**M87** 1975 c. 65.

**M88** 1976 c. 74.

#### Indemnity

- 7 The Secretary of State shall indemnify an adjudicator against any reasonable legal costs and expenses reasonably incurred by him in connection with any decision or action taken by him in good faith in pursuance of his functions as an adjudicator.

#### Parliamentary disqualification

- 8 In Part III of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M89</sup>House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (disqualifying offices), at the appropriate place there shall be inserted—
- “Adjudicator appointed under section 25 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

#### Marginal Citations

**M89** 1975 c. 24.

#### Parliamentary Commissioner

- 9 For the purposes of section 5 of the <sup>M90</sup>Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (matters subject to investigation) administrative functions exercisable by any person provided by the Secretary of State under paragraph 4 above shall be taken to be administrative functions of [<sup>F180</sup>the Department for Education and Skills] .

#### Textual Amendments

**F180** Words in Sch. 5 para. 9 substituted (27.6.2002) by The Secretaries of State for Education and Skills and for Work and Pensions Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/1397), art. 12, Sch. Pt. I para. 14

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M90 1967 c. 13.

### *Supervision of Council on Tribunals*

- 10 (1) In section 7 of the <sup>M91</sup>Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (which restricts Ministers' powers to remove members of tribunals listed in Schedule 1 to that Act) in subsection (2) (tribunals to which that section does not apply) after "14," there shall be inserted " 15(f), ”.
- (2) In Schedule 1 to that Act (tribunals under the supervision of the Council on Tribunals) at the end of paragraph 15 (tribunals concerned with education) there shall be inserted—

“(f) an adjudicator appointed under section 25 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

### Marginal Citations

M91 1992 c. 53.

## SCHEDULE 6

Sections 28, 29 and 31.

### STATUTORY PROPOSALS: PROCEDURE AND IMPLEMENTATION

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C146 Sch. 6 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/704, regs. 21, 22, Sch.  
Sch. 6 continued (1.9.2001) by S.I. 2001/2678, reg. 2(2)

## PART I

### PROCEDURE FOR DEALING WITH STATUTORY PROPOSALS: ENGLAND

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C147 Sch. 6 Pt. I applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2259, regs. 5(1), 10, Sch. 1.  
Sch. 6 Pt. I applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2259, regs. 5(2), 10, Sch. 1.  
Sch. 6 Pt. 1 (paras. 1-5) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2000) by S.I. 2000/2195, reg. 4(1), Sch. 1  
(as amended (15.9.2003) by The Education (Change of Category of Maintained Schools) (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2136), regs. 1(1), 10)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Application of Part I*

- 1 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies to proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 which relate to a school or proposed school in England.
- (2) In this Part of this Schedule “the relevant committee” means the school organisation committee for the area of the local education authority who maintain the school or (in the case of a new school) who it is proposed should maintain the school.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C148** Sch. 6 para. 1 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212, reg. 16, Sch.4](#).  
 Sch. 6 para. 1 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213, reg. 15\(1\), Sch.4](#) (as amended (1.9.2006) by [The Education \(New Secondary School Proposals\) \(England\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2139\)](#), regs. 1, **26(17)**).

### *Objections*

- 2 (1) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31.
- (2) Where the proposals were published by a local education authority—
- (a) any objections under this paragraph shall be sent to the authority within such period as may be prescribed (“the objection period”); and
  - (b) within such period as may be prescribed the authority shall send to the relevant committee copies of all objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) within the objection period, together with the authority’s observations on them.
- (3) Where the proposals were published by a governing body or promoters, any objections under this paragraph shall be sent to the relevant committee within such period as may be prescribed.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C149** Sch. 6 para. 2 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2212, reg. 16, Sch.4](#).  
 Sch. 6 para. 2 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2213, reg. 15, Sch. 4](#) (as amended: (1.6.2003) by [The Education \(School Organisation Proposals\) \(England\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1229\)](#), regs. 1(1), **16**; and (1.9.2006) by [The Education \(New Secondary School Proposals\) \(England\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2139\)](#), regs. 1, **26(17)**).

### *Approval of proposals*

- 3 (1) Proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 require approval under this paragraph if—
- (a) the proposals were published by a local education authority and either—
    - (i) objections to the proposals have been made in accordance with paragraph 2 and any of them have not been withdrawn in writing within the objection period; or
    - (ii) such approval is required by virtue of paragraph 4(5); or
  - (b) the proposals were published by a governing body or promoters.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Where any proposals require approval under this paragraph, they shall be considered in the first instance by the relevant committee, who may—
- reject the proposals,
  - approve them without modification, or
  - approve them with such modifications as the committee think desirable after consulting such persons or bodies as may be prescribed.
- (3) Any approval given under this paragraph may be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the approval occurs by a date so specified; and regulations may prescribe the events that may be so specified.
- (4) When deciding whether or not to give any approval under this paragraph the committee shall have regard to—
- any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State, and
  - the school organisation plan for the committee's area;
- and the committee shall not give any such approval unless they are satisfied that adequate financial resources will be available to enable the proposals to be implemented.
- (5) If—
- by the end of such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations, the committee have not voted on the question whether to give any approval under this paragraph, and
  - the body or promoters by whom the proposals were published request the committee to refer the proposals to the adjudicator,
- they shall refer the proposals to the adjudicator.
- Regulations made for the purposes of this sub-paragraph (or any other corresponding provision of this Act) may be framed by reference to the opinion of the committee.
- (6) If the committee—
- have voted on any matter which (in accordance with regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 4) falls to be decided by them under this paragraph by a unanimous decision, but
  - have failed to reach such a decision on that matter,
- they shall refer the proposals to the adjudicator.
- (7) Where any proposals are referred to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (5) or (6)—
- he shall consider the proposals afresh; and
  - sub-paragraphs (2) to (4) shall apply to him in connection with his decision on the proposals as they apply to the committee.
- (8) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the body or promoters by whom any proposals have been published under section 28, 29 or 31 from withdrawing those proposals by notice in writing given to the relevant committee at any time before the proposals are determined under this paragraph.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C150 Sch. 6 para. 3 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2213, reg. 15(2)(4), Sch. 5 para. 3 (as amended by S.I. 2003/1229, regs. 1(1), 17

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Determination by LEA whether to implement proposals*

- 4 (1) Where any proposals have been published by a local education authority under section 28, 29 or 31 and either—
- (a) no objections were made in accordance with paragraph 2, or
  - (b) all objections so made were withdrawn in writing within the objection period,
- then (subject to the following provisions of this paragraph) the authority shall determine whether the proposals should be implemented.
- (2) Any determination under sub-paragraph (1) must be made within the period of four months beginning with the date of publication of the proposals (as determined in accordance with regulations); and the authority shall notify the relevant committee of any determination made by them under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) The requirement to make a determination under sub-paragraph (1) in the case of any proposals only applies if, at the time when the authority's determination falls to be made under that sub-paragraph, they are satisfied that the proposals are not related to any of the following, namely—
- (a) any undetermined proposals published under section 28(2) to establish a new foundation or voluntary school in the area of the authority;
  - (b) any undetermined proposals published under section 28(2), 29(2) or 31(2) by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school in the area of the authority;
  - (c) any undetermined proposals published by the authority which, by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(a) of paragraph 3, require approval under that paragraph; <sup>[F181]</sup>or
  - (d) any order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) of Schedule 7 <sup>[F182]</sup>or
  - (e) any undetermined proposals published under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) proposals are “undetermined” if they have not been withdrawn and—
- (a) they have not been approved or rejected under paragraph 3 <sup>[F183]</sup>of this Schedule, under paragraph 8 or 9 of Schedule 7 or under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000], or
  - (b) the authority have not determined under this paragraph whether to implement them,
- as the case may be; and when deciding under sub-paragraph (3) whether any proposals are related to other proposals the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Where, in the case of any proposals within sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) the authority fail to make a determination under that sub-paragraph within the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), or
  - (b) the requirement to make such a determination does not apply by virtue of sub-paragraph (3),
- the proposals require approval under paragraph 3.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F181** Word in Sch. 6 para. 4(3)(c) repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 153, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F182** Sch. 6 para. 4(3)(e) and the word preceding it inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 9 para. 89(1)(2)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F183** Words in Sch. 6 para. 4(4)(a) substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 9 para. 89(1)(3)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

### Requirement to implement proposals

- 5 (1) Where—
- (a) any proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 have been approved under paragraph 3, or
  - (b) a local education authority have determined under paragraph 4 to implement any such proposals,
- then (subject to the following provisions of this paragraph) the proposals shall be implemented, in the form in which they were so approved or determined, in accordance with Part III of this Schedule.
- (2) At the request of any prescribed body or persons, the relevant committee—
- (a) may modify the proposals after consulting such persons or bodies as may be prescribed; and
  - (b) where any approval under paragraph 3 was given in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) of that paragraph, may specify a later date by which the event in question must occur.
- (3) If the relevant committee are satisfied—
- (a) that implementation of the proposals would be unreasonably difficult, or
  - (b) that circumstances have so altered since approval was given under paragraph 3 that implementation of the proposals would be inappropriate,
- the committee may determine that sub-paragraph (1) shall cease to apply to the proposals.
- (4) The committee may only make a determination under sub-paragraph (3) where proposals that they should do so have been published, in accordance with regulations, by the body or promoters who published the proposals referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b); and regulations so made may provide for any of the provisions of sections 28, 29 and 31 and this Part of this Schedule to have effect in relation to any such further proposals with or without modifications.
- (5) If—
- (a) by the end of such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations, the committee have not voted on any matter falling to be decided by them under this paragraph, and
  - (b) the body or promoters who published the proposals referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) request the committee to refer that matter to the adjudicator,
- they shall refer that matter to the adjudicator.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) If the committee—
- (a) have voted on any matter which (in accordance with regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 4) falls to be decided by them under this paragraph by a unanimous decision, but
  - (b) have failed to reach such a decision on that matter,
- they shall refer that matter to the adjudicator.
- (7) Where any matter is referred to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (5) or (6)—
- (a) he shall consider the matter afresh; and
  - (b) such of the provisions of sub-paragraphs (2) to (4) as are relevant shall apply to him in connection with his decision on that matter as they apply to the committee.
- (8) Where—
- (a) any approval under paragraph 3 was given in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) of that paragraph, and
  - (b) the event specified under that sub-paragraph does not occur by the date in question (whether as specified under that sub-paragraph or as specified under sub-paragraph (2)(b) above),
- sub-paragraph (1) above shall cease to apply to the proposals.
- (9) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (3) or (8), sub-paragraph (1) ceases to apply to any proposals, those proposals shall be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as if they had been rejected under paragraph 3.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C151** Sch. 6 para. 5(4)(5) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2000) by S.I. 1999/2213, **reg. 21(3)** (as inserted by S.I. 2000/2198, **reg. 8**)

**Commencement Information**

**I42** Sch. 6 para. 5 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 6 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 6 para. 5(4) in force for specified purposes at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1998/3198, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch.**; Sch. 6 para. 5 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. 1** (with **arts. 3-5**, **Schs. 5-7**).

## PART II

### PROCEDURE FOR DEALING WITH STATUTORY PROPOSALS: WALES

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C152** Sch. 6 Pt. II applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) (*temp.*) by S.I. 1999/2633, **regs. 4, 5(1)**, **Sch. 1**. Sch. 6 Pt. II modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2633, **reg. 5(2)**, **Sch. 2**.

#### *Application of Part II*

- 6 This Part of this Schedule applies to proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 which relate to a school or proposed school in Wales.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C153** Sch. 6 para. 6 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), reg. 11, [Sch. 4](#).  
Sch. 6 para. 6 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), reg. 10, [Sch. 5](#)  
Sch. 6 para. 6 applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Tables 1, 2

*Objections*

- 7 (1) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31.
- (2) Where the proposals were published by a local education authority—
- (a) any objections under this paragraph shall be sent to the authority within such period as may be prescribed (“the objection period”); and
  - (b) within such period as may be prescribed the authority shall send to the Secretary of State copies of all objections made (and not withdrawn in writing) within the objection period, together with the authority’s observations on them.
- (3) Where the proposals were published by a governing body or promoters, any objections under this paragraph shall be sent to the Secretary of State within such period as may be prescribed.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C154** Sch. 6 para. 7 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1780](#), reg. 11, [Sch. 4](#).  
Sch. 6 para. 7 applied with modifications (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1671](#), reg. 10, [Sch. 5](#)  
Sch. 6 para. 7 applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Table 2
- C155** Sch. 6 para. 7(1) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Table 1
- C156** Sch. 6 para. 7(3) applied (with modifications) (w.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#) Table 3

*Approval of proposals*

- 8 (1) Proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 require approval under this paragraph if—
- (a) the Secretary of State, within two months after a copy of the published proposals is sent to him under that section, gives notice to the body or promoters by whom the proposals were published that they require such approval; or
  - (b) objections to the proposals have been made in accordance with paragraph 7 and any of them have not been withdrawn in writing within the objection period.
- (2) Where any proposals require approval under this paragraph, the Secretary of State may—
- (a) reject the proposals,
  - (b) approve them without modification, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) approve them with such modifications as he thinks desirable after consulting such persons or bodies as may be prescribed.
- (3) Any approval given under this paragraph may be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the approval occurs by a date so specified.
- (4) When deciding whether or not to give any approval under this paragraph the Secretary of State shall have regard to the school organisation plan for the area in which the school is, or (in the case of a new school) is proposed to be, situated.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the body or promoters by whom any proposals have been published under section 28, 29 or 31 from withdrawing those proposals by notice in writing given to the Secretary of State at any time before the proposals are approved under this paragraph.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C157** Sch. 6 para. 8(1)(3)(5) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, **Sch. 1 Pt. I** Table 3

**C158** Sch. 6 para. 8(2) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, **Sch. 1 Pt. I** Table 1

**C159** Sch. 6 para. 8(4) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678](#), reg. 7, **Sch. 1 Pt. I** Table 2

*Determination whether to implement proposals*

- 9 (1) Where any proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 do not require approval under paragraph 8, the body or promoters by whom the proposals were published shall determine whether the proposals should be implemented.
- (2) Any determination under sub-paragraph (1) must be made within four months after a copy of the published proposals was sent to the Secretary of State under section 28, 29 or 31.
- (3) The body or promoters in question shall notify the Secretary of State of any determination made by them under sub-paragraph (1).

*Requirement to implement proposals*

- 10 (1) Where—
  - (a) any proposals published under section 28, 29 or 31 have been approved under paragraph 8, or
  - (b) the body or promoters by whom such proposals were published have determined under paragraph 9 to implement the proposals,
 then (subject to the following provisions of this paragraph) the proposals shall be implemented, in the form in which they were so approved or determined, in accordance with Part III of this Schedule.
- (2) At the request of any prescribed body or persons, the Secretary of State—
  - (a) may modify the proposals after consulting such persons or bodies as may be prescribed; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where any approval under paragraph 8 was given in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) of that paragraph, may specify a later date by which the event in question must occur.
- (3) If the Secretary of State is satisfied—
- (a) that implementation of the proposals would be unreasonably difficult, or
- (b) that circumstances have so altered since approval was given under paragraph 8 that implementation of the proposals would be inappropriate,
- he may determine that sub-paragraph (1) shall cease to apply to the proposals.
- (4) The Secretary of State may only make a determination under sub-paragraph (3) where proposals that he should do so have been published, in accordance with regulations, by the body or promoters who published the proposals referred to in that sub-paragraph; and regulations so made may provide for any of the provisions of sections 28, 29 and 31 and this Part of this Schedule to have effect in relation to any such further proposals with or without modifications.
- (5) Where—
- (a) any approval under paragraph 8 was given in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) of that paragraph, and
- (b) the event specified under that sub-paragraph does not occur by the date in question (whether as specified under that sub-paragraph or as specified under sub-paragraph (2)(b) above),
- sub-paragraph (1) above shall cease to apply to the proposals.
- (6) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (3) or (5), sub-paragraph (1) ceases to apply to any proposals, those proposals shall be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as if they had been rejected under paragraph 8.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C160** Sch. 6 para. 10 applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678, reg. 7, Sch. 1 Pt. 1](#) Table 2

**C161** Sch. 6 para. 10(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678, reg. 7, Sch. 1 Pt. 1](#) Table 3

#### Commencement Information

**I43** Sch. 6 para. 10 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 6 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 6 para. 10(4) in force for specified purposes at 1.2.1999 by [S.I. 1999/3198, art. 2\(2\), Sch.](#); Sch. 6 para. 10 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7](#)).

### PART III

#### MANNER OF IMPLEMENTATION OF STATUTORY PROPOSALS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C162** Sch. 6 Pt. 3 excluded (19.12.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 193\(6\), 216](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Introductory*

- 11 In this Part of this Schedule “proposals” means proposals falling to be implemented under paragraph 5 or 10.

#### *Proposals relating to community or maintained nursery schools*

- 12 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals relating to a community or proposed community school or to a maintained nursery school.
- (2) The proposals shall be implemented by the local education authority by whom they were published under section 28(1) or 29(1).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C163** Sch. 6 para. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2103, reg. 3](#).

#### *Proposals relating to foundation or voluntary controlled schools*

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals relating to a foundation or voluntary controlled school or a proposed such school.
- (2) Where the proposals were published by a local education authority under section 28(1) or 29(1), they shall be implemented by the authority.
- (3) Where the proposals were published under section 28(2)—
- (a) by promoters, or
  - (b) by the governing body,
- they shall be implemented by the local education authority and by the promoters or (as the case may be) the governing body, respectively, to such extent (if any) as the proposals provide for each of them to do so.
- (4) Where the proposals were published by the governing body under section 29(2), they shall be implemented—
- (a) by the governing body; and
  - (b) by the local education authority as well.

#### *Proposals relating to voluntary aided schools*

- 14 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals relating to a voluntary aided school or a proposed such school.
- (2) Where the proposals were published by the governing body under section 28(2) or 29(2), they shall be implemented—
- (a) in the case of proposals published under section 28(2) so far as relating to the provision of any [<sup>F184</sup>playing fields] for the school, by the local education authority;
  - (b) in the case of proposals published under section 29(2), by the governing body and the authority; and
  - (c) otherwise by the governing body.
- (3) Where the proposals were published under section 28(2) by promoters, they shall be implemented—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) so far as relating to the provision of any [<sup>F185</sup>playing fields] for the school (but subject to sub-paragraph (5)), by the local education authority; and
  - (b) otherwise by the promoters.
- (4) <sup>F186</sup> .....
- (5) Nothing in sub-paragraph (3) requires a local education authority to provide any [<sup>F187</sup>such playing fields] where—
- (a) the new voluntary aided school is to be established in place of one or more existing independent, foundation or voluntary schools falling to be discontinued on or before the date of implementation of the proposals; and
  - (b) [<sup>F188</sup>those playing fields—]
    - (i) were part of the premises of any of the existing schools (whether it was an independent school or a foundation or voluntary school); and
    - (ii) (if it was a foundation or voluntary school) were not provided by the authority.
- (6) Where the proposals were published by a local education authority under section 29(1), they shall be implemented by the authority.

*Proposals relating to community or foundation special schools*

- 15 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals relating to—
- (a) a community or foundation special school; or
  - (b) a proposed such school.
- (2) Where the proposals were published by a local education authority under section 31(1), they shall be implemented by the authority.
- (3) Where the proposals were published by the governing body under section 31(2)(a), they shall be implemented by the local education authority and by the governing body, respectively, to such extent (if any) as the proposals provide for each of them to do so.
- (4) Where the proposals were published by the governing body under section 31(2)(b), they shall be implemented—
- (a) by the governing body; and
  - (b) by the local education authority as well.

**PART IV**

PROVISION OF PREMISES AND OTHER ASSISTANCE

*Provision of site and buildings for foundation, voluntary controlled or foundation special school*

- 16 (1) This paragraph applies where a local education authority are required—
- (a) by virtue of paragraph 13(2) or (3) to provide a site for a foundation or voluntary controlled school or a proposed such school; or
  - (b) by virtue of paragraph 15(2) or (3) to provide a site for a foundation special school.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The authority shall transfer their interest in the site and in any buildings on the site which are to form part of the school premises—
- (a) to the school’s trustees, to be held by them on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) if the school has no trustees, to the school’s foundation body or (in the absence of such a body) to the governing body, to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (3) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer, it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (4) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (5) Where—
- (a) a transfer is made under this paragraph, and
  - (b) the transfer is made to persons who possess, or are or may become entitled to, any sum representing proceeds of the sale of other premises which have been used for the purposes of the school,
- those persons shall notify the local education authority that paragraph (b) applies to them and they or their successors shall pay to the local education authority so much of that sum as, having regard to the value of the interest transferred, may be determined to be just, either by agreement between them and the authority or, in default of agreement, by the Secretary of State.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (5)(b) the reference to proceeds of the sale of other premises includes a reference to—
- (a) consideration for the creation or disposition of any kind of interest in other premises, including rent; and
  - (b) interest which has accrued in respect of any such consideration;
- and for the purposes of any agreed determination under sub-paragraph (5) regard shall be had to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (7) Any sum paid under sub-paragraph (5) shall be treated for the purposes of section 14 of the <sup>M92</sup>Schools Sites Act 1841 (which relates to the sale or exchange of land held on trust for the purposes of a school) as a sum applied in the purchase of a site for the school.
- (8) A determination may be made under sub-paragraph (5) in respect of any property subject to a trust which has arisen under section 1 of the <sup>M93</sup>Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (right of reverter replaced by trust for sale) if (and only if)—
- (a) the determination is made by the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) he is satisfied that steps have been taken to protect the interests of the beneficiaries under the trust.
- (9) Sub-paragraph (5) shall apply for the purpose of compensating the authority notified under that sub-paragraph only in relation to such part of the sum mentioned in sub-paragraph (5)(b) (if any) as remains after the application of paragraphs 1 to 3 of Schedule 22 to that sum.
- (10) In this paragraph—
- “the relevant purposes” means—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in relation to a transfer to a school’s foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts, or
  - (b) in relation to a transfer to a school’s governing body, the purposes of the school;
- “site” does not include playing fields but otherwise includes any site which is to form part of the premises of the school in question.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C164 Sch. 6 para. 16 applied (E.) (1.9.2000) by S.I. 1999/2213, reg. 20(1)(2) (as inserted by S.I. 2000/2198, reg. 8)

**Marginal Citations**

M92 1841 c. 38.

M93 1987 c. 15.

*Grants in respect of certain expenditure relating to existing or proposed voluntary aided school*

- 17 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) the governing body of a voluntary aided school are required by virtue of paragraph 14(2) to implement proposals relating to a prescribed alteration to the school; or
  - (b) any promoters are required by virtue of paragraph 14(3) to implement proposals involving the establishment of a new voluntary aided school.
- (2) Paragraph 5 of Schedule 3—
- (a) shall apply in relation to the voluntary aided school mentioned in subparagraph (1)(a) above; and
  - (b) shall apply in relation to the new voluntary aided school mentioned in subparagraph (1)(b) above as it applies in relation to an existing voluntary aided school.
- (3) In the application of that paragraph in relation to a new voluntary aided school—
- (a) the references to the governing body, in relation to any time before the governing body are constituted, are to the promoters; and
  - (b) where requirements are imposed in relation to grant paid by virtue of this paragraph to the promoters, the requirements shall be complied with by the governing body, when they are constituted, as well as by the promoters.

*Assistance in respect of maintenance and other obligations relating to voluntary aided school*

- 18 A local education authority may give to the governing body of a voluntary aided school such assistance as the authority think fit in relation to the carrying out by the governing body of any obligation arising by virtue of paragraph 14(2) in relation to proposals published by them under section 28.

*Assistance for promoters of new voluntary aided school*

- 19 A local education authority may give to persons required by virtue of paragraph 14(3) to implement proposals involving the establishment of a voluntary aided

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

school such assistance as the authority think fit in relation to the carrying out by those persons of any obligation arising by virtue of that provision.

*Duty to transfer interest in premises provided under paragraph 18 or 19*

- 20 (1) Where assistance under paragraph 18 or 19 consists of the provision of any premises for use for the purposes of a school, the local education authority shall transfer their interest in the premises—
- (a) to the trustees of the school to be held on trust for the purposes of the school; or
  - (b) if the school has no trustees, to the school’s foundation body, to be held by that body for the relevant purposes.
- (2) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom the authority are required to make the transfer it shall be made to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.
- (3) The authority shall pay to the persons to whom the transfer is made their reasonable costs in connection with the transfer.
- (4) In this paragraph “the relevant purposes” means, in relation to a transfer to a school’s foundation body, the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts.

## PART V

### TRANSITIONAL EXEMPTION ORDERS FOR PURPOSES OF SEX DISCRIMINATION ACT 1975

*Single-sex schools: England*

- 21 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals for a school in England to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) applies where—
- (a) such proposals are made under section 28 and, in accordance with subsection (6) of that section, the relevant body send a copy of the published proposals to the school organisation committee; or
  - (b) such proposals are made under section 31 and, in accordance with subsection (5) of that section, the relevant body send a copy of the published proposals to the school organisation committee.
- (3) The sending of the published proposals to the school organisation committee by the relevant body shall be treated as an application by the responsible body for the making by the school organisation committee of a transitional exemption order, and the committee may make such an order accordingly.
- (4) Where—
- (a) the school organisation committee have failed to reach a unanimous decision under sub-paragraph (3) above on whether to make a transitional exemption order, or
  - (b) the school organisation committee refer the proposals to the adjudicator under paragraph 3 or 5 of this Schedule,



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

they shall refer the question whether to make a transitional exemption order to the adjudicator.

(5) Where that question is referred to the adjudicator—

- (a) he shall consider the matter afresh; and
- (b) he may make a transitional exemption order accordingly.

(6) In this paragraph and in paragraph 22—

“the 1975 Act” means the <sup>M94</sup>Sex Discrimination Act 1975,

“make”, in relation to a transitional exemption order, includes (so far as the context permits) vary or revoke,

“the responsible body” has the same meaning as in section 22 of the 1975 Act, and

“transitional exemption order” has the same meaning as in section 27 of the 1975 Act,

and references to proposals for a school to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only are references to proposals which are or include proposals for such an alteration in a school’s admissions arrangements as is mentioned in section 27(1) of the 1975 Act (single-sex establishments becoming co-educational).

#### Marginal Citations

**M94** 1975 c. 65.

#### *Single-sex schools: Wales*

- 22 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals for a school in Wales to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) applies where—
- (a) such proposals are made under section 28 and, in accordance with subsection (7) of that section, the relevant body send a copy of the published proposals to the Secretary of State; or
  - (b) such proposals are made under section 31 and, in accordance with subsection (6) of that section, the relevant body send a copy of the published proposals to the Secretary of State.
- (3) The sending of the published proposals to the Secretary of State shall be treated as an application by the responsible body for the making by the Secretary of State of a transitional exemption order, and he may make such an order accordingly.

### SCHEDULE 7

Section 34.

#### RATIONALISATION OF SCHOOL PLACES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C165** Sch. 7 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/704, regs. 21, 22, Sch.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART I

### INTRODUCTORY

- 1 In this Schedule—
- (a) “powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools” means all or any of the powers of the local education authority to publish proposals under section 28, 29 or 31; and
  - (b) “powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school”, in relation to the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, means their powers to publish proposals under section 28(2)(b) or 31(2)(a).

## PART II

### DIRECTIONS TO BRING FORWARD PROPOSALS

#### *Directions to bring forward proposals to remedy excessive provision*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies where the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the provision for primary or secondary education in maintained schools—
- (a) in the area of any local education authority, or
  - (b) in any part of such an area,
- is excessive.
- (2) For the purpose of remedying the excess, the Secretary of State may—
- (a) by an order under this paragraph direct the local education authority to exercise their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, and
  - (b) in the case of any foundation, voluntary or foundation special school maintained by the authority, by an order under this paragraph direct the governing body to exercise their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school.
- (3) An order under sub-paragraph (2) shall—
- (a) require the proposals to be published not later than such date as may be specified in the order, and
  - (b) require the proposals to apply such principles in giving effect to the direction as may be specified in the order.
- (4) An order under sub-paragraph (2)(a) may not require the proposals to relate to any named school.
- (5) Where any proposals are published in pursuance of an order under sub-paragraph (2) which relates to an area in England, the body concerned shall (in addition to complying with section 28(6), 29(5) or 31(5), as the case may be) send—
- (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the Secretary of State.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Directions to bring forward proposals to remedy insufficient provision*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies where the Secretary of State is of the opinion that the provision for primary or secondary education in maintained schools—
- (a) in the area of any local education authority, or
  - (b) in any part of such an area,
- is, or is likely to become, insufficient.
- (2) The Secretary of State may—
- (a) by an order under this paragraph direct the local education authority to exercise their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, and
  - (b) in the case of any foundation, voluntary or foundation special school maintained by the authority, by an order under this paragraph direct the governing body to exercise their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school,
- with a view (in each case) to securing that provision is made for such additional number of pupils in the area, or in any such part of the area, as may be specified in the order.
- (3) An order under sub-paragraph (2) shall—
- (a) require the proposals to be published not later than such date as may be specified in the order, and
  - (b) require the proposals to apply such principles in giving effect to the direction as may be specified in the order.
- (4) An order under sub-paragraph (2)(a) may not require the proposals to relate to any named school.
- (5) Where any proposals are published in pursuance of an order under sub-paragraph (2) which relates to an area in England, the body concerned shall (in addition to complying with section 28(6), 29(5) or 31(5), as the case may be) send—
- (a) a copy of the published proposals, and
  - (b) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed, to the Secretary of State.

*Supplementary provisions*

- 4 (1) Where the Secretary of State makes an order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) in relation to the area of any local education authority in England, he shall send a copy of the order—
- (a) to the school organisation committee for the area, and
  - (b) to any adjudicator who appears to him to be likely to be considering proposals in relation to that area.
- (2) Where the school organisation committee or any adjudicator receive a copy of the order under sub-paragraph (1), the committee or adjudicator shall send to the Secretary of State—
- (a) a copy of all proposals relating to the area which have been received by them or him but have not been determined by the relevant time, and
  - (b) a copy of all proposals relating to the area, other than any made under paragraph 5, which they receive after the relevant time.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) Where sub-paragraph (2) applies, then unless the Secretary of State gives his consent—
- (a) neither the school organisation committee nor the adjudicator shall make any determination, and
  - (b) the school organisation committee shall not make any reference to the adjudicator under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 8 below,
- in relation to any proposals within sub-paragraph (2) during the period beginning with the relevant time and ending with the time when the Secretary of State notifies the committee or the adjudicator, as the case may be, that they or he may make any such determination or reference in relation to those proposals without the Secretary of State's consent.
- (4) The duty of the school organisation committee or any adjudicator to send copies of proposals to the Secretary of State under sub-paragraph (2) shall terminate at the end of the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (3).
- (5) In sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)—
- (a) references to the relevant time, in relation to the school organisation committee or to any adjudicator, are to the time when they or he receive the copy of the order under sub-paragraph (1);
  - (b) references to proposals are to proposals made under section 28, 29 or 31 [F189 of this Act, paragraph 5 of this Schedule or Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000]; and
  - (c) references to the determination of any proposals are to—
    - (i) any determination whether or not to approve the proposals under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 8 or 9 below, [F190 or]
    - (ii) any determination whether or not to implement the proposals under paragraph 4 of Schedule 6 [F191 or]
    - (iii) any determination whether or not to approve the proposals under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]
- (6) Where a local education authority publish any proposals in pursuance of an order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) which relates to an area in England, those proposals shall require approval under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6, despite anything in paragraph 3(1)(a) or 4 of that Schedule.
- (7) Proposals made in pursuance of an order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) (whether relating to an area in England or in Wales) may not be withdrawn without the consent of the Secretary of State and such consent may be given on such conditions (if any) as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (8) Where the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school make any proposals in pursuance of any such order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2), the local education authority shall reimburse any expenditure reasonably incurred by the governing body in making the proposals.
- (9) Where—
- (a) proposals made by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school in pursuance of any such order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) are approved or, as the case may be, determined to be implemented, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) proposals approved or adopted under paragraph 8, 9 or 14 have effect as mentioned in paragraph 10(b) or 15(b), as the case may be,  
then, despite anything in Part III of Schedule 6, the local education authority shall defray the cost of implementing the proposals.

#### Textual Amendments

- F189** Words in **Sch. 7 Pt. II para. 4(5)(b)** substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 9 para. 90(1)(2)(a)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F190** Word after **Sch. 7 Pt. II para. 4(5)(c)(i)** repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 153, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F191** **Sch. 7 Pt. II para. 4(5)(c)(iii)** and the word preceding it inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)-(5), **Sch. 9 para. 90(1)(2)(b)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

### PART III

#### PROPOSALS BY SECRETARY OF STATE

##### *Publication of proposals*

- 5 (1) Where—
- (a) the Secretary of State has, in relation to the area of any local education authority or any part of such an area, made an order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2) directing the local education authority or the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools or (as the case may be) for the alteration of their school, and
- (b) either—
- (i) any proposals have been published in pursuance of the order, or
- (ii) the time allowed under the order for the publication of the proposals has expired,
- he may make any such proposals as might have been made in accordance with the order relating to that area or that part of that area by the body to whom the directions were given.
- (2) Proposals under this paragraph shall—
- (a) contain such information, and
- (b) be published in such manner,
- as may be prescribed.
- (3) Where any proposals made under this paragraph relate to an area in England, the Secretary of State shall send a copy of the proposals to the school organisation committee for the area.
- (4) Where any proposals made under this paragraph relate to an area in Wales, the Secretary of State shall send a copy of the proposals—
- (a) to the local education authority for the area, and
- (b) to the governing body of each school to which the proposals relate.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART IV

### PROCEDURE FOR DEALING WITH PROPOSALS UNDER PARAGRAPH 5: ENGLAND

#### *Application of Part IV*

- 6 This Part of this Schedule applies to proposals published under paragraph 5 which relate to an area in England.

#### *Objections*

- 7 (1) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under paragraph 5.
- (2) Objections under this paragraph—
- (a) shall be sent to the school organisation committee for the area to which those proposals relate; and
  - (b) shall be so sent within such period as may be prescribed.

#### *Approval of proposals*

- 8 (1) Proposals published under paragraph 5 require the approval of the school organisation committee under this paragraph or of the adjudicator under paragraph 9.
- (2) Where the school organisation committee receive a copy of the proposals published under paragraph 5, they must either—
- (a) approve them without modification, or
  - (b) approve them with such modifications as the committee think desirable and to which the Secretary of State consents, or
  - (c) refer them to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (5) or (6).
- (3) Any approval given under this paragraph may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the approval occurs by a date so specified; and regulations may prescribe the events that may be so specified.
- (4) When deciding whether or not to give any approval under this paragraph the committee shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (5) If—
- (a) by the end of such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations, the committee have not voted on the question whether to give any approval under this paragraph, and
  - (b) the Secretary of State requests the committee to refer his proposals to the adjudicator,
- they shall refer his proposals to the adjudicator.
- (6) If the committee—
- (a) have voted on any matter which (in accordance with regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 4) falls to be decided by them under this paragraph by a unanimous decision but have failed to reach such a decision on that matter, or
  - (b) have decided not to give any approval under this paragraph,
- they shall refer the Secretary of State's proposals to the adjudicator.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) Where any proposals are referred to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (5) or (6), the school organisation committee shall also refer to him—
- (a) any other proposals published under paragraph 5 in relation to the area of the local education authority (and not withdrawn),
  - (b) any proposals made by that authority in the exercise of their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools (and not withdrawn), [<sup>F192</sup>and]
  - (c) any proposals made by the governing body of any foundation, voluntary or foundation special school in the area in the exercise of their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school (and not withdrawn), [<sup>F193</sup>and
  - (d) any proposals published under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (and not withdrawn).]
- where those proposals are not determined before the adjudicator holds an inquiry under paragraph 9(1) and appear to the committee to be related to the proposals referred by them to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (5) or (6).
- (8) Sub-paragraph (7) applies to any proposals within that sub-paragraph whether or not the proposals have been previously referred to the adjudicator by the committee.
- (9) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the Secretary of State from withdrawing any proposals published under paragraph 5 by notice in writing given to the school organisation committee at any time before the proposals are determined under this paragraph or paragraph 9.
- (10) References in this paragraph to the determination of any proposals are to—
- (a) any determination whether or not to approve the proposals under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6, sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (2)(b) above or paragraph 9(3) below, [<sup>F194</sup>or]
  - (b) any determination whether or not to implement the proposals under paragraph 4 of Schedule 6 [<sup>F195</sup>or
  - (c) any determination whether or not to approve the proposals under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F192** Word after Sch. 7 Pt. IV para. 8(7)(b) repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 153, 154(3)–(5), **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F193** Sch. 7 Pt. IV para. 8(7)(d) and the word preceding it inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)–(5), **Sch. 9 para. 90(1)(3)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F194** Word in Sch. 7 Pt. IV para. 8(10)(a) repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 153, 154(3)–(5), **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F195** Sch. 7 Pt. IV para. 8(10)(c) and the word preceding it inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(3)–(5), **Sch. 9 para. 90(1)(4)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

#### Local inquiry into proposals

- 9 (1) Where any proposals are referred to the adjudicator under paragraph 8(5) or (6), he shall hold a local inquiry to consider—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) those proposals,
  - (b) any additional proposals referred to him under paragraph 8(7),
  - (c) any objections made (under paragraph 2 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 7 above) to any proposals within paragraph (a) or (b) above unless such objections have been withdrawn, and
  - (d) any views expressed by the school organisation committee on any such proposals.
- (2) It shall not be open to the inquiry to question the principles specified in the order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2).
  - (3) After holding the inquiry, the adjudicator must, in the case of any proposals considered at the inquiry, either—
    - (a) approve them with or without modifications, or
    - (b) reject them.
  - (4) Any approval given under this paragraph may be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the approval occurs by a date so specified; and regulations may prescribe the events that may be so specified.
  - (5) When deciding whether or not to give any approval under this paragraph, paragraph 8(4) shall apply to the adjudicator as it does to the committee.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C166 Sch. 7 para. 9 extended (1.6.1999) by S.I. 1999/1286, reg. 12(13).

*Implementation of proposals*

- 10 Proposals approved by the school organisation committee under paragraph 8 or by the adjudicator under paragraph 9 shall have effect as if they—
  - (a) had been made by the local education authority under their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, or
  - (b) in any case where the proposals are for the alteration of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, had been made by the governing body under their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school, and had been approved by the school organisation committee or the adjudicator, as the case may be, under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6.

**PART V**

PROCEDURE FOR DEALING WITH PROPOSALS UNDER PARAGRAPH 5: WALES

*Application of Part V*

- 11 This Part of this Schedule applies to proposals published under paragraph 5 which relate to an area in Wales.

*Objections*

- 12 (1) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under paragraph 5.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Objections under this paragraph—
- (a) shall be sent to the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) shall be so sent within such period as may be prescribed.

*Local inquiry into proposals*

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies where in relation to the area of any local education authority the Secretary of State has made proposals under paragraph 5 (otherwise than in pursuance of paragraph 14(1)) which he has not withdrawn.
- (2) If objections have been made under paragraph 12(1) within the period prescribed in accordance with paragraph 12(2)(b), then, unless all objections so made have been withdrawn in writing within that period, the Secretary of State shall cause a local inquiry to be held to consider his proposals, any proposals he refers to the inquiry and any such objections.
- (3) Any proposals referred to a local inquiry under this paragraph require the approval of the Secretary of State (if they would not require such approval apart from this sub-paragraph).
- (4) Where the Secretary of State has a duty to cause a local inquiry to be held under this paragraph, he shall refer to the inquiry—
- (a) any other proposals published under paragraph 5 in relation to the area of the local education authority (and not withdrawn),
  - (b) any proposals made by that authority in the exercise of their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools (and not withdrawn),<sup>F196</sup> . . .
  - (c) any proposals made by the governing body of any foundation, voluntary or foundation special school in the area in the exercise of their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school (and not withdrawn), [<sup>F197</sup>and
  - (d) any proposals published under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (and not withdrawn).]

where those proposals are not determined before he causes the inquiry to be held and appear to him to be related to the proposals made under paragraph 5 in respect of which he is required under this paragraph to cause the inquiry to be held.

- (5) If, before the Secretary of State causes the inquiry to be held, he forms the opinion that any proposals ought to be implemented, sub-paragraph (4) does not require him to refer those proposals to the inquiry unless—
- (a) before the proceedings on the inquiry are concluded, or
  - (b) (if earlier) the proposals are determined,
- he subsequently forms a different opinion.
- (6) It shall not be open to the inquiry to question the principles specified in the order under paragraph 2(2) or 3(2).
- (7) References in this paragraph to the determination of any proposals are to—
- (a) any determination whether or not to approve or adopt the proposals under paragraph 8 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 14 below,<sup>F198</sup> . . .
  - (b) any determination whether or not to implement the proposals under paragraph 9 of Schedule 6 [<sup>F199</sup>and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) any determination whether or not to approve the proposals under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F196** Word after Sch. 7 Pt. V para. 13(4)(b) repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F197** Sch. 7 Pt. V para. 13(4)(d) and the word preceding it inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 90(5)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F198** Word after Sch. 7 Pt. V para. 13(7)(a) repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F199** Sch. 7 Pt. V para. 13(7)(c) inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 90(6)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

#### Adoption of proposals

- 14 (1) Where the Secretary of State has published proposals under paragraph 5 in respect of which he is required to cause a local inquiry to be held, he may when he has considered the report of the person appointed to hold the inquiry do one or more of the following—
- (a) adopt, with or without modifications, or determine not to adopt the proposals or any other proposals made by him under that paragraph which he referred to the inquiry;
  - (b) approve, with or without modifications, or reject any other proposals which he referred to the inquiry; and
  - (c) make any such further proposals under paragraph 5 as might have been made in accordance with the order or orders relating to the area of the local education authority concerned by the body to whom the directions were given.
- (2) Where the Secretary of State has published proposals under paragraph 5 in respect of which he is not required to cause a local inquiry to be held and which he is not required to refer to such an inquiry, he may, after considering any objections made under paragraph 12(1) (and not withdrawn) within the period prescribed in accordance with paragraph 12(2)(b)—
- (a) adopt the proposals with or without modifications; or
  - (b) determine not to adopt the proposals.
- (3) Any adoption of proposals under this paragraph may be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the adoption occurs by a date so specified.

#### Implementation of proposals

- 15 Proposals adopted by the Secretary of State under paragraph 14 shall have effect as if they—
- (a) had been made by the local education authority under their powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) in any case where the proposals are for the alteration of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, had been made by the governing body under their powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school, and had been approved by the Secretary of State under paragraph 8 of Schedule 6.

## PART VI

### TRANSITIONAL EXEMPTION ORDERS FOR PURPOSES OF SEX DISCRIMINATION ACT 1975

#### *Single-sex schools: England*

- 16 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals for a school in England to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) applies where such proposals are made under paragraph 5 of this Schedule and, in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) of that paragraph, the Secretary of State sends a copy of the published proposals to the school organisation committee.
- (3) The sending of the published proposals to the school organisation committee by the Secretary of State shall be treated as an application by the responsible body for the making by the school organisation committee of a transitional exemption order, and the committee may make such an order accordingly.
- (4) Where—
- (a) the school organisation committee have failed to reach a unanimous decision under sub-paragraph (3) above on whether to make a transitional exemption order, or
  - (b) the school organisation committee refer the proposals to the adjudicator under paragraph 8 of this Schedule,
- they shall refer the question whether to make a transitional exemption order to the adjudicator.
- (5) Where that question is referred to the adjudicator—
- (a) he shall consider the matter afresh; and
  - (b) he may make a transitional exemption order accordingly.
- (6) In this paragraph and in paragraph 17—
- “the 1975 Act” means the <sup>M95</sup>Sex Discrimination Act 1975,
  - “make”, in relation to a transitional exemption order, includes (so far as the context permits) vary or revoke,
  - “the responsible body” has the same meaning as in section 22 of the 1975 Act, and
  - “transitional exemption order” has the same meaning as in section 27 of the 1975 Act,
- and references to proposals for a school to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only are references to proposals which are or include proposals for such an alteration in a school’s admissions arrangements as is mentioned in section 27(1) of the 1975 Act (single-sex establishments becoming co-educational).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M95 1975 c. 65.

### *Single-sex schools: Wales*

- 17 (1) This paragraph applies to proposals for a school in Wales to cease to be an establishment which admits pupils of one sex only.
- (2) Where such proposals are made under paragraph 5 of this Schedule, the responsible body shall be treated as having made an application to the Secretary of State for the making of a transitional exemption order, and the Secretary of State may make such an order accordingly.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C167 Sch. 7 para. 17: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (19.12.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 193(5), 216 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1

## SCHEDULE 8

Section 35.

### CHANGES OF CATEGORY OF SCHOOL

#### *Permitted changes of category*

- 1 (1) A community school may in accordance with this Schedule become a foundation school in pursuance of proposals published by the local education authority.
- (2) A school within one of the following categories, namely—
- a community school,
  - a foundation school,
  - a voluntary aided school, or
  - a voluntary controlled school,
- may in accordance with this Schedule become a school within another of those categories in pursuance of proposals published by the governing body.
- (3) A community special school may in accordance with this Schedule become a foundation special school in pursuance of proposals published by the local education authority.
- (4) A community special school or a foundation special school may in accordance with this Schedule become a foundation special school or a community special school in pursuance of proposals published by the governing body.

#### *Procedure for changing category of school*

- 2 (1) Where, in the case of any maintained school, the local education authority or the governing body propose that the school should become a school of another category as permitted by paragraph 1, they shall publish their proposals under this paragraph.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Regulations may provide for any of the provisions of sections 28 and 31 and Part I or II of Schedule 6 to have effect in relation to any such proposals with or without modifications.

*Mandatory publication of proposals for voluntary aided school to change category*

- 3 (1) If at any time the governing body of a voluntary aided school are unable or unwilling to carry out their obligations under Schedule 3, they shall publish proposals under this paragraph.
- (2) If the proposals are published during the period mentioned in section 35(2), they shall be proposals for the school to become a voluntary controlled school.
- (3) If the proposals are published after the end of that period, they shall be proposals for the school to become either a voluntary controlled school or a foundation school, as the governing body may determine.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 2 shall apply in relation to proposals published under this paragraph as it applies in relation to proposals published under that paragraph.

*Restrictions on changing category of school*

- 4 (1) Regulations may make provision for preventing a school of any description specified in the regulations from changing its category under this Schedule unless such conditions are satisfied as are so specified.
- (2) The conditions which may be so specified include conditions requiring (according to the circumstances of the case) any of the following to be demonstrated to the satisfaction of any person so specified, namely—
- (a) that the school will join a group of schools for which a foundation body acts or proposes to act;
  - (b) where a foundation is proposed to be established for the school otherwise than under this Act, that the foundation would meet such requirements as may be so specified;
  - (c) that the governing body will be able to carry out their obligations under Schedule 3;
  - (d) that the school's governing or foundation body or trustees have agreed to sell or otherwise transfer to the local education authority any land of a description so specified.

*Implementation of proposals*

- 5 (1) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the implementation of proposals published under paragraph 2 or 3, including provision with respect to—
- (a) the revision or replacement of the school's instrument of government and the reconstitution of its governing body;
  - (b) the transfer of property, rights and liabilities (including such a transfer to or from a foundation body), and staff; and
  - (c) any transitional matters (whether relating to the implementation of proposals published under other provisions of this Act or otherwise).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Regulations under sub-paragraph (1) may, in particular, make provision with respect to—
- (a) restricting the disposal of land by a local authority which is used or held for the purposes of a school in relation to which proposals to change category are, or may be, published under paragraph 2, as from—
    - (i) the date of publication of such proposals; or
    - (ii) such other time as may be prescribed;
  - (b) restricting the taking of action by virtue of which any such land would cease to be so used or held to any extent;
  - (c) the consequences of any contravention of any such restriction;
  - (d) conferring on any prescribed body such functions as may be prescribed with respect to any such contravention.
- (3) Regulations under sub-paragraph (1) may, in connection with any matters falling within that sub-paragraph—
- (a) modify any provision made by or under this Part of this Act;
  - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications;
  - (c) make provision corresponding or similar to any such provision.
- 6 A school's change of category under this Schedule shall not be taken as authorising or requiring any change in the character of the school conducted by its governing body (including, in particular, any religious character of the school).

## SCHEDULE 9

Section 36(1).

### CONSTITUTION OF GOVERNING BODIES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C168** Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 81](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 9\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 27\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 excluded (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 34\(6\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 43\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 44\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 modified (26.5.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1287](#), [reg. 6\(1\)\(2\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 32\(1\)-\(4\)](#).  
 Sch. 9 applied (with modifications) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [reg. 32\(1\)\(2\)-\(4\)](#).

#### Commencement Information

- I44** Sch. 9 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 9 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 145(5); Sch. 9 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART I

### CATEGORIES OF GOVERNOR

#### *Co-opted governors*

- 1 In this Schedule “co-opted governor” means a person who is appointed to be a member of the school’s governing body by being co-opted by governors who have not themselves been so appointed.

#### *Foundation governors*

- 2 In this Act “foundation governor” means a person appointed to be a member of the school’s governing body, otherwise than by a local education authority, who—
- (a) where the school has a particular religious character, is appointed for the purpose of securing that that character is preserved and developed, and
  - (b) where the school has a trust deed, is appointed for the purpose of securing that the school is conducted in accordance with that deed,
- or, where the school has neither a religious character nor a trust deed, is appointed as a foundation governor of the school.

#### *LEA governors*

- 3 In this Schedule “LEA governor” means a governor appointed to the school’s governing body by the local education authority.

#### *Parent governors*

- 4 In this Schedule “parent governor” means—
- (a) a person who is elected as a member of the school’s governing body by parents of registered pupils at the school and is himself such a parent at the time when he is elected, or
  - (b) a person who is appointed as a parent governor by the governing body in accordance with regulations.

#### *Partnership governors*

- 5 In this Schedule “partnership governor” means a person nominated as a partnership governor, and appointed as such, in accordance with regulations.

#### *Staff governors*

- 6 In this Schedule “staff governor” means a person—
- (a) who is elected as a member of the school’s governing body by persons employed to work at the school otherwise than as teachers, and
  - (b) who is himself a person so employed at the time when he is elected;
- and for this purpose “employed” means employed under a contract of employment or a contract for services.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Teacher governors*

- 7 In this Schedule “teacher governor” means a person—
- (a) who is elected as a member of the school’s governing body by teachers at the school, and
  - (b) who is himself such a teacher at the time when he is elected;
- and for this purpose “teacher” means a teacher employed under a contract of employment or a contract for services or otherwise engaged to provide his services as a teacher.

### *Head teacher*

- 8 At any time when the head teacher is a governor, he shall be treated for all purposes as being an ex officio governor.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C169 Sch. 9 para. 8 modified (26.5.1999) by S.I. 1999/1287, reg. 6(2).

## **PART II**

### CONSTITUTION OF GOVERNING BODIES

#### *Community schools*

- 9 (1) The governing body of a community school shall consist of the following—
- (a) the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,
  - (b) governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the following table, in the numbers specified in whichever of the other columns relates to the school, and
  - (c) any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the third or fifth column is available—
- (a) in the case of a secondary school, where the school has less than 600 registered pupils, and
  - (b) in the case of a primary school, where the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column of the table, the governing body of a primary school to which that column applies must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either all the first alternatives or all the second alternatives.

<b>Category of governor</b>	<b>Secondary school-normal basis</b>	<b>Secondary school-option if less than 600 pupils</b>	<b>Primary school-normal basis</b>	<b>Primary school-option if less than 100 pupils</b>
Parent governors	6	5	4 or 5	3



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

LEA governors	5	4	3 or 4	2
Teacher governors	2	2	1 or 2	1
Staff governors	1	1	1	1 or 0
Co-opted governors	5	4	3 or 4	2

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C170** Sch. 9 para. 9 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 10(1)**.

Sch. 9 para. 9 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **regs. 14(1), 16**.

Sch. 9 para. 9 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 10(1)(2), 17**.

*Community special schools*

- 10 (1) The governing body of a community special school shall consist of the following—
- (a) the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,
  - (b) governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the table set out in paragraph 9, in the numbers specified in either the fourth or the fifth column, and
  - (c) any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the fifth column of the table is accordingly available whether or not the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column of the table, the governing body of a community special school to which that column is applicable must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either all the first alternatives or all the second alternatives.
- (4) Whichever set of numbers applies to the governing body of such a school under the fourth or fifth column—
- (a) the number of co-opted governors shall be reduced by one, and
  - (b) in place of that governor there shall be a representative governor appointed under sub-paragraph (5) or (6),
- except in a case where sub-paragraph (6) applies and no voluntary organisation is designated for the purposes of that sub-paragraph.
- (5) Where the school is established in a hospital, a representative governor shall be appointed—
- (a) (if the hospital is vested in the Secretary of State) by the [<sup>F200</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority; or
  - (b) (if the hospital is vested in a National Health Service trust [<sup>F201</sup>or a Primary Care Trust]) by that trust.
- (6) Where the school is not established in a hospital, then—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) if a voluntary organisation is designated by the local education authority, in relation to the school, as the appropriate voluntary organisation concerned with matters in respect of which the school is specially organised, a representative governor shall be appointed by that organisation; or
- (b) if two or more voluntary organisations are so designated as appropriate voluntary organisations concerned with such matters, a representative governor shall be appointed by those organisations acting jointly.

#### Textual Amendments

**F200** Words in Sch. 9 para. 10(5)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 65**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(d)**

**F201** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II para. 10(5)(b) inserted (8.2.2000) by S.I. 2000/90, arts. 1, 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 34**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C171** Sch. 9 para. 10 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 10(1)**.

Sch. 9 para. 10 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **regs. 14(1), 16**.

Sch. 9 para. 10 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 10(1)(2), 17**

Sch. 9 para. 10 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 32(3)**

#### Foundation schools

- 11 (1) The governing body of a foundation school shall consist of the following—
- (a) the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,
  - (b) governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the following table, in the numbers specified in whichever of the other columns relates to the school, and
  - (c) any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15.
- Where the school does not have a foundation, the reference to foundation governors in the first column shall be read as a reference to partnership governors.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the third or fifth column is available—
- (a) in the case of a secondary school, where the school has less than 600 registered pupils, and
  - (b) in the case of a primary school, where the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column of the table, the governing body of a primary school to which that column applies must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either both of the first alternatives or both of the second alternatives.

Category of governor	Secondary school-normal basis	Secondary school-option if less than 600 pupils	Primary school-normal basis	Primary school-option if less than 100 pupils
Parent governors	7	6	5 or 6	4

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

LEA governors	2	2	2	2
Teacher governors	2	2	1	1
Staff governors	1	1	1	1 or 0
Foundation governors	5	4	3 or 4	2
Co-opted governors	3	2	1	1

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C172** Sch. 9 para. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 10(1).  
 Sch. 9 para. 11 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, regs. 14(1), 16.  
 Sch. 9 para. 11 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, regs. 10(1)(2), 17.

*Foundation special schools*

- 12 (1) The governing body of a foundation special school shall consist of the following—
- the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,
  - governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the table set out in paragraph 11, in the numbers specified in either the fourth or the fifth column, and
  - any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15.
- Where the school does not have a foundation, the reference to foundation governors in the first column shall be read as a reference to partnership governors.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the fifth column of the table is accordingly available whether or not the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column of the table, the governing body of a foundation special school to which that column is applicable must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either both of the first alternatives or both of the second alternatives.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C173** Sch. 9 para. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 10(1).  
 Sch. 9 para. 12 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, regs. 14(1), 16.  
 Sch. 9 para. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, regs. 10(1)(2), 17.

*Voluntary controlled schools*

- 13 (1) The governing body of a voluntary controlled school shall consist of the following—
- the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the following table, in the numbers specified in whichever of the other columns relates to the school, and
  - (c) any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the third or fifth column is available—
- (a) in the case of a secondary school, where the school has less than 600 registered pupils, and
  - (b) in the case of a primary school, where the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column, the governing body of a primary school to which that column applies must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either both of the first alternatives or both of the second alternatives.

Category of governor	Secondary school-normal basis	Secondary school-option if less than 600 pupils	Primary school-normal basis	Primary school-option if less than 100 pupils
Parent governors	6	5	4 or 5	3
LEA governors	4	3	3	2
Teacher governors	2	2	1	1
Staff governors	1	1	1	1 or 0
Foundation governors	5	4	3 or 4	2
Co-opted governors	2	2	1	1

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C174 Sch. 9 para. 13 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 10(1).

Sch. 9 para. 13 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, regs. 14(1), 16.

Sch. 9 para. 13 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, regs. 10(1)(2), 17.

*Voluntary aided schools*

- 14 (1) The governing body of a voluntary aided school shall consist of the following—
- (a) the head teacher, except at any time when he chooses not to be a governor,
  - (b) governors of each of the categories specified in the first column of the following table, in the numbers specified in whichever of the other columns relates to the school,
  - (c) any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) such number of foundation governors as will lead to their outnumbering the other governors mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c)—
- (i) by three, in the case of a school to which the second column applies, or
  - (ii) by two, in the case of any other school.
- (2) The option of having a smaller governing body constituted in accordance with the third or fifth column is available—
- (a) in the case of a secondary school, where the school has less than 600 registered pupils, and
  - (b) in the case of a primary school, where the school has less than 100 registered pupils.
- (3) As regards the alternatives specified in the fourth column, the governing body of a primary school to which that column applies must be constituted in such a way as to reflect either both of the first alternatives or both of the second alternatives.
- (4) The foundation governors required by sub-paragraph (1)(d) must include—
- (a) at least three governors who at the time of their appointment are parents of registered pupils at the school, in the case of a school to which the second column applies, or
  - (b) at least two such governors in the case of any other school.

Category of governor	Secondary school-normal basis	Secondary school-option if less than 600 pupils	Primary school-normal basis	Primary school-option if less than 100 pupils
Parent governors	3	2	1 or 2	1
LEA governors	2	1	1 or 2	1
Teacher governors	2	2	1	1
Staff governors	1	1	1	1 or 0

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C175** Sch. 9 para. 14 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, reg. 36(2).  
 Sch. 9 para. 14 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 10(1).  
 Sch. 9 para. 14 excluded (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, regs. 14(1), 16.  
 Sch. 9 para. 14 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, regs. 10(1)(2), 17.

*Additional governors*

- 15 (1) If the governing body of any maintained school so determine, or regulations so require, the instrument of government for the school shall provide for the governing body to include, in addition to the governors required by virtue of the preceding

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

provisions of this Schedule, such number of co-opted governors as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations.

- (2) Regulations shall specify—
- (a) the circumstances in which provision for such appointments is authorised or required to be made under this paragraph; and
  - (b) the categories of person from whom or from amongst whose members nominations for such appointments are to be sought.
- (3) The instrument of government for any community or voluntary school which—
- (a) is a primary school, and
  - (b) serves an area for which there are one or more minor authorities,
- shall provide for the governing body to include (in addition to the governors required by virtue of paragraph 9, 13 or 14, as the case may be, and any required by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)) one co-opted governor nominated by the minor authority or (as the case may be) one of the minor authorities in question.
- (4) Where any such school serves an area for which there are two or more minor authorities, the relevant governors shall, for the purposes of the appointment of any such co-opted governor, seek nominations from such one or more of those authorities as the governors think fit.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4) “the relevant governors” means those members of the school’s governing body who are not co-opted governors.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C176** Sch. 9 para. 15 applied with modification (3.12.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2763, reg. 6\(2\)](#)  
 Sch. 9 para. 15(1) applied with modification (3.12.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2763, regs. 6\(3\), 7\(2\)](#)  
 Sch. 9 para. 15 modified (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262, reg. 32\(2\)](#).

*Substitutes for ex officio foundation governors*

- 16 Regulations may make provision for, and in connection with, the appointment of foundation governors to act in the place of ex officio foundation governors in cases where—
- (a) any person holding a foundation governorship ex officio is unable or unwilling to act as a foundation governor, or
  - (b) there is a vacancy in the office by virtue of which such a governorship exists.

*Adjustment in number of governors*

- 17 (1) Where—
- (a) a maintained school has more governors of a particular category than are provided for by the instrument of government for the school in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (b) the excess is not eliminated by the required number of governors of that category resigning,
- such number of governors of that category as is required to eliminate the excess shall cease to hold office.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) If the excess has arisen in relation to foundation governors, the excess shall be eliminated in accordance with such procedure as is set out in the instrument of government for the school.
- (3) If the excess has arisen in relation to any other category of governor, the excess shall be eliminated in accordance with such procedure as may be prescribed.
- (4) Where the governing body of a maintained school includes any additional governors appointed in pursuance of paragraph 15, this paragraph shall apply to the school as if such of those governors as are nominated by a particular category of person constituted a separate category of governor.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C177 Sch. 9 para. 17 excluded (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/362, reg. 34(6)

[<sup>F202</sup>SCHEDULE 10]

Section 36(2).

INCORPORATION AND POWERS OF GOVERNING BODIES

**Textual Amendments**

**F202** Sch. 10 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

*Introductory*

- <sup>1</sup> [<sup>F203</sup>(1) In the following paragraphs of this Schedule “the governing body” means the governing body of a maintained school incorporated under section 36(1).
- (2) Where an existing school (other than a grouped school) becomes a maintained school on the appointed day in accordance with Schedule 2, the governing body of the school—
    - (a) shall continue in existence as a body corporate; and
    - (b) shall so continue in existence as if incorporated under section 36(1);but as from that day the governing body shall (subject to regulations under sub-paragraph (3) or (4)) conform with Part II of Schedule 9.
  - (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) the governing body of each such existing school shall (subject to regulations under sub-paragraph (4)) be reconstituted under the instrument of government required by paragraph 6 of Schedule 12 before the appointed day; and regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the reconstitution of a governing body in pursuance of this sub-paragraph.
  - (4) Regulations may, in relation to cases where—
    - (a) the instrument of government required by paragraph 6 of Schedule 12 in the case of an existing school within sub-paragraph (2) above is not made before the appointed day, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the governing body of such a school are not reconstituted before that day, make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with any of the following matters, namely—
  - (i) the making of such instruments of government on or after that day,
  - (ii) the reconstitution of governing bodies on or after that day, and
  - (iii) the existence of such bodies on and after that day pending their reconstitution at some later date.
- (5) Regulations may, in relation to existing schools which are grouped schools, make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the transition of such schools from being grouped under a single governing body to having their own governing bodies constituted under instruments of government made in accordance with Schedule 12.
- (6) If the instrument of government required by paragraph 6 of Schedule 12 is not made before the appointed day in the case of an existing school, the following requirements, namely—
  - (a) the requirements of paragraph 2(1) below as to the name of the governing body, and
  - (b) the requirements of section 37(3) as to the name of the school,
 shall not apply until such time as that instrument of government is made.
- (7) In this paragraph “existing school” means (subject to sub-paragraph (8))—
  - (a) a county, controlled, aided or special agreement school or a maintained special school, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school,
 within the meaning of the <sup>M96</sup>Education Act 1996; and “grouped school” means a school grouped under section 89 or 280 of that Act.
- (8) A school is not an existing school for the purposes of this paragraph if immediately before the appointed day—
  - (a) in the case of a school within paragraph (a) of sub-paragraph (7), it has a temporary governing body, or
  - (b) in the case of a school within paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph, it has a governing body but it has not yet opened;
 and for this purpose a school “opens” on the date when it first admits pupils.
- (9) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the transition of—
  - (a) any such school as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (8)(a) or (b), or
  - (b) any proposed school which would be a school within sub-paragraph (7)(a) and which has, or is required to have, a temporary governing body,
 to a school with a governing body constituted under an instrument of government made in accordance with Schedule 12.
- (10) Regulations under any provision of this paragraph may, in connection with any matters falling within that provision—
  - (a) modify any provision made by or under this Part of this Act;
  - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications;
  - (c) make provision corresponding or similar to any such provision;



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) provide for the continued application of any provision made by or under any of the Education Acts with or without modifications.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F203** Sch. 10 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Marginal Citations

**M96** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Name and seal of governing body*

- <sup>2</sup> [F204 (1) The governing body shall be known as “The governing body of . . .” with the addition of the name of the school as for the time being set out in the school’s instrument of government.
- (2) The application of the seal of the governing body must be authenticated by the signature—
- (a) of the chairman of the governing body, or
  - (b) of some other member authorised either generally or specially by the governing body to act for that purpose,
- together with the signature of any other member.
- (3) Every document purporting to be an instrument made or issued by or on behalf of the governing body and—
- (a) to be duly executed under the seal of the governing body, or
  - (b) to be signed or executed by a person authorised by the governing body to act in that behalf,
- shall be received in evidence and be treated, without further proof, as being so made or issued unless the contrary is shown.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F204** Sch. 10 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### *Powers of governing body*

- <sup>3</sup> [F205 (1) The governing body may do anything which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of, or in connection with, the conduct of the school.
- (2) The governing body may in particular—
- (a) borrow such sums as the governing body think fit and, in connection with such borrowing, grant any mortgage, charge or other security over any land or other property of the governing body;
  - (b) acquire and dispose of land and other property;
  - (c) enter into contracts;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) invest any sums not immediately required for the purposes of carrying on any activities they have power to carry on;
  - (e) accept gifts of money, land or other property and apply it, or hold and administer it on trust, for any of those purposes; and
  - (f) do anything incidental to the conduct of the school.
- (3) The power to borrow sums and grant security mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) may only be exercised with the written consent—
- (a) of the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) if an order under sub-paragraph (4) so provides, of the local education authority;
- and any such consent may be given for particular borrowing or for borrowing of a particular class.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for his function of giving consent under sub-paragraph (3) to be instead exercisable—
- (a) in the case of all maintained schools, or
  - (b) in the case of any class of such schools specified in the order,
- by the local education authorities by whom those schools are maintained.
- (5) In exercising that function those authorities shall comply with any directions contained in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (6) Where the school is a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, the power to enter into contracts mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(c) includes power to enter into contracts for the employment of teachers and other staff; but no such contracts may be entered into by the governing body of a community, voluntary controlled or community special school.
- (7) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) have effect subject to—
- (a) any provisions of the school’s instrument of government; and
  - (b) any provisions of a scheme under section 48 which relates to the school.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F205** Sch. 10 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C178** Sch. 10 para. 3 extended (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 54](#).

Sch. 10 para. 3 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 55\(3\)](#).

Sch. 10 para. 3 applied (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [reg. 54](#).

Sch. 10 para. 3 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [reg. 55\(3\)](#).

### *Dissolution of governing body*

- <sup>4</sup> [F206(1) If the school is discontinued, the governing body are dissolved by virtue of this paragraph—
- (a) on the discontinuance date, or
  - (b) on such later date as the Secretary of State may specify by order made before the discontinuance date.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In this paragraph “the discontinuance date” means—
- (a) the date when proposals for discontinuing the school are implemented under Part III of Schedule 6,
  - (b) the date when the school is discontinued under section 30, or
  - (c) the date specified in a direction given under section 19(1) or 32(1),
- as the case may be.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F206** Sch. 10 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

## SCHEDULE 11

Section 36(3).

### MEMBERSHIP AND PROCEEDINGS ETC. OF GOVERNING BODIES

#### Commencement Information

**I45** Sch. 11 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 11 Pts. I and III in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(4); Sch. 11 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2262, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

## PART I

### MEMBERSHIP AND PROCEEDINGS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C179** Sch. 11 Pt. I (paras. 1-5) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg. 3(1)(3)

#### *Regulations about governing bodies*

- 1 Regulations may make in relation to governing bodies of maintained schools such provision as is authorised by the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

#### *Election or appointment of governors*

- 2 (1) The regulations may make provision—
- (a) as to the procedures to be followed in connection with the election or appointment of persons as governors of such schools or in connection with the nomination of persons to be so appointed;
  - (b) imposing requirements which must be complied with in relation to the appointment or nomination of persons as governors of any prescribed category;
  - (c) as to the circumstances in which persons are qualified or disqualified—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) for being elected, appointed or nominated as governors of any such category, or
- (ii) for voting in an election of such governors.

(2) The regulations may make provision—

- (a) for enabling the local education authority or (as the case may be) the governing body to determine, for the purposes of any such election, whether any person is a person of such a description as is specified in the regulations;
- (b) for requiring appointments falling to be made by persons acting jointly to be made, in any prescribed circumstances, by or in accordance with a direction given by the Secretary of State.

#### *Qualifications and tenure of office*

3 The regulations may make provision as to—

- (a) the circumstances in which persons are qualified or disqualified for holding office as governors;
- (b) the term of office of governors (subject to any provision made by virtue of sub-paragraph (a));
- (c) the resignation or removal of governors from office.

#### *Meetings and proceedings*

4 (1) The regulations may make provision as to the meetings and proceedings of governing bodies.

(2) The provision authorised by sub-paragraph (1) includes, in particular, provision—

- (a) for the election by the governors of a school of one of their number to be chairman, and one to be vice-chairman, of the governing body;
- (b) for the period for which the chairman and vice-chairman are to be elected and for the removal from office of either of those persons;
- (c) for the establishment by a governing body of committees (which may include persons who are not members of the governing body) and for the constitution, meetings and proceedings of committees so established;
- (d) for the delegation of functions of a governing body, in such circumstances as may be specified, to committees established by that body, to any member of that body or to the head teacher;
- (e) for the chairman, or such other member of a governing body as may be specified, to have power in specified circumstances to discharge any of the governing body's functions as a matter of urgency;
- (f) as to the quorum required in any specified circumstances;
- (g) for securing that proceedings of a governing body, or of any committee established by them, are not invalidated by any vacancy among the governors, or among the members of any such committee, or in any other specified circumstances;
- (h) requiring decisions taken by a governing body in any specified circumstances to be confirmed at a second meeting of that body held within such period as may be specified.

(3) In sub-paragraph (2) “specified” means specified in the regulations.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The regulations may authorise or require governing bodies to make provision with respect to any matters relating to their meetings or proceedings (including any of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)).
- (5) Subject to the regulations, a governing body may regulate their own procedure and that of any of their committees.

#### *Information as to meetings and proceedings*

- 5 (1) The regulations may make provision requiring a governing body—
  - (a) to make minutes (including draft minutes) of their proceedings available for inspection by the local education authority;
  - (b) to make available—
    - (i) to such persons or classes of person as may be specified, and
    - (ii) in such form, and at such times, as may be specified,such documents and information relating to their meetings and proceedings as may be specified.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “specified” means specified in the regulations.

## **PART II**

### **OTHER PROVISIONS ABOUT GOVERNORS**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C180** Sch. 11 Pt. II modified (3.12.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2670](#),

#### *Governors’ expenses*

- 6 (1) A governor shall be entitled to receive such allowances, payable at such rates, as the governing body may determine in accordance with regulations.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply at any time when the school does not have a delegated budget, and the payment of allowances to a governor at any such time shall instead be in accordance with a scheme made by the local education authority for the purposes of section 519 of the <sup>M97</sup>Education Act 1996.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C181** Sch. 11 para. 6 modified (20.11.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2670](#), [reg. 3\(1\)](#)

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M97** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Training and support of governors*

- 7 The local education authority shall—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) (to the extent that they are not otherwise required to secure the provision of such information) secure that every governor is provided, free of charge, with such information as they consider appropriate in connection with the discharge of his functions as a governor; and
- (b) secure that there is made available to every governor, free of charge, such training as they consider necessary for the effective discharge of those functions.

### PART III

#### CLERK TO THE GOVERNING BODY

##### *Appointment etc. of clerk*

- 8 Regulations may make provision—
- (a) requiring the appointment of a clerk to the governing body of a maintained school and authorising or requiring the appointment of clerks to committees of the governing body;
  - (b) prescribing the body by whom any such appointment is to be made and any restrictions or other requirements relating to any such appointment;
  - (c) as to the dismissal of any such clerk and the procedure to be followed in connection with his dismissal;
  - (d) authorising the governing body or a committee of the governing body, where the clerk fails to attend a meeting of theirs, to appoint one of their number to act as clerk for the purposes of that meeting.

#### SCHEDULE 12

Section 37.

#### INSTRUMENTS OF GOVERNMENT

##### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C182** Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 8\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 9\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 27\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 43\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/362](#), [reg. 44\(1\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 32\(1\)-\(4\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2243](#), [reg. 32\(1\)\(5\)\(6\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2262](#), [reg. 32\(1\)\(5\)\(6\)](#).  
 Sch. 12 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2000) by [S.I. 2000/2195](#), [reg. 13\(1\)](#), [Sch. 4 Pt. VI](#)

##### **Commencement Information**

- I46** Sch. 12 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 12 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 145(5); Sch. 12 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Contents and form of instrument of government*

- 1 (1) The instrument of government for a maintained school shall set out—
  - (a) the name of the school;
  - (b) the category of school (within section 20(1)) to which the school belongs;
  - (c) the name of the governing body of the school;
  - (d) the manner in which the governing body are to be constituted, specifying—
    - (i) the categories of governor and the number of governors in each category,
    - (ii) the categories of person from whom or from amongst whose members nominations for the appointment of any additional governors required by virtue of paragraph 15 of Schedule 9 are to be sought,
    - (iii) the number of such governors for whose appointment nominations are to be sought in the case of each such category of person,
    - (iv) where the school is a community special school, whether it has a representative governor by virtue of paragraph 10 of Schedule 9, and
    - (v) the total number of governors;
  - (e) where the school has foundation governors—
    - (i) the name of any foundation body or person who is entitled to appoint such governors and (if there is more than one such person) the basis on which such appointments are made,
    - (ii) details of any foundation governorship to be held ex officio by the holder of a named office and the name of any person entitled to make any appointment by virtue of paragraph 16 of Schedule 9, and
    - (iii) the procedure to be adopted for eliminating any excess in the number of foundation governors for the purposes of paragraph 17 of that Schedule;
  - (f) where the school is a community special school, the names of any body or bodies by whom any representative governor is appointed under paragraph 10 of that Schedule;
  - (g) where the school is a foundation or voluntary school which has a religious character, a description of the ethos of the school; and
  - (h) the date when the instrument takes effect.
- (2) The manner in which the governing body are to be constituted, as set out in the instrument in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(d), must conform with the provisions of—
  - (a) Part II of Schedule 9, and
  - (b) any regulations made under paragraph 15 of that Schedule,as they apply to a school of the category to which the school belongs.
- (3) Where, for the purposes of any provision of that Part of that Schedule, it is material to determine the number of registered pupils at the school, that number shall be determined as at the date when the instrument is made.
- (4) The instrument shall (subject to any other statutory provision) comply with any trust deed relating to the school.
- (5) The instrument shall be made in such form as may be prescribed.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C183** Sch. 12 para. 1 applied (with modifications) (3.12.1998) by *S.I. 1998/2763*, **regs. 6(4), 7(3)**  
Sch. 12 para. 1 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by *S.I. 1999/2262*, **reg. 32(5)**.

#### *Making of instruments of government*

- 2 (1) Paragraph 3 shall apply in connection with the making of an instrument of government for a maintained school subject to any relevant modifications.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “relevant modifications” means—
- (a) where the instrument of government is to be made in pursuance of paragraph 6 for a school which is to become a maintained school on the appointed day in accordance with Schedule 2, modifications prescribed under that paragraph;
  - (b) where the instrument of government is to be made in pursuance of regulations under section 44 for a new maintained school, modifications prescribed under that section; and
  - (c) where the instrument of government is to be made in pursuance of regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 8 for a school changing its category in accordance with that Schedule, modifications prescribed by regulations under that paragraph.

#### *Procedure for making instrument*

- 3 (1) The governing body shall prepare a draft of the instrument and submit it to the local education authority.
- (2) Where the school has foundation governors, the governing body shall not submit the draft to the authority unless the following persons have agreed to the contents of the draft, namely—
- (a) the foundation governors;
  - (b) any trustees under a trust deed relating to the school; and
  - (c) in the case of a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority.
- (3) On receiving the draft the authority shall consider whether it complies with all applicable statutory provisions, and if—
- (a) the authority are content with the draft, or
  - (b) there is agreement between the authority, the governing body and (if the school has foundation governors) the persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) that the draft should be revised to any extent,
- the instrument shall be made by order of the authority in the form of the draft or (as the case may be) in the form of the revised draft.
- (4) If, in the case of a school which has foundation governors, there is at any time disagreement as to the contents of the draft among the bodies and persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (3)(b), any of those bodies or persons may refer the draft to the Secretary of State; and on such a reference the Secretary of State shall give such direction as he thinks fit having regard, in particular, to the category of school to which the school belongs.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) If neither of paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (3) applies in the case of a school which does not have foundation governors, the authority shall—
- (a) notify the governing body of the reasons why they are not content with the draft instrument, and
  - (b) give the governing body a reasonable opportunity to reach agreement with the authority on revising the draft;
- and the instrument shall be made by order of the authority either in the form of a revised draft agreed between the authority and the governing body or (in the absence of such agreement) in such form as the authority think fit having regard, in particular, to the category of school to which the school belongs.
- (6) When taking any decision as to the name of the school the governing body, the authority and (if the school has foundation governors) the persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (7) Nothing in this paragraph requires the agreement of, or enables any objection to be made by, any body or person to any part of a draft instrument that reflects any decision taken by the governing body or any other person which the governing body or that person is required or authorised to take by virtue of any statutory provision.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C184** Sch. 12 para. 3 applied with modification (3.12.1998) by [S. I. 1998/2763, reg. 6\(5\)](#)

**C185** Sch. 12 para. 3(2)-(6) modified (W.) (1.9.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2678, reg. 12](#)

*Review of instruments of government*

- 4 (1) The governing body or the local education authority may review the instrument at any time after it is made.
- (2) The governing body or the authority shall review the instrument on such occasions as may be prescribed; and regulations may require the instrument to be varied at the instance of the governing body in such circumstances as may be prescribed.
- (3) Where—
- (a) on any review the governing body or the authority decide that the instrument should be varied, or
  - (b) any regulations under sub-paragraph (2) require the instrument to be varied, the governing body or (as the case may be) the authority shall notify the other of their proposed variation.
- (4) Where the governing body have received a notification under sub-paragraph (3), they shall notify the authority as to whether or not they are content with it.
- (5) Where the school has foundation governors, the governing body shall not give the authority—
- (a) any notification under sub-paragraph (3), or
  - (b) any notification under sub-paragraph (4) to the effect that they are content with the authority's proposed variation,
- unless the persons mentioned in paragraph 3(2) have agreed to the proposed variation.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) If—
- (a) both the governing body and the authority are content with a proposed variation as notified under sub-paragraph (3), or
  - (b) there is agreement between the authority, the governing body and (if the school has foundation governors) the persons mentioned in paragraph 3(2) that some other variation should be made instead,
- the instrument shall be varied accordingly by order of the authority.
- (7) If, in the case of a school which has foundation governors, there is at any time disagreement as to the proposed variation among the bodies and persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (6)(b), any of those bodies or persons may refer the proposed variation to the Secretary of State; and on such a reference the Secretary of State shall give such direction as he thinks fit having regard, in particular, to the category of school to which the school belongs.
- (8) If neither of paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (6) applies in the case of a school which does not have foundation governors, the authority shall—
- (a) notify the governing body of the reasons—
    - (i) why they are not content with the governing body's proposed variation, or
    - (ii) why they wish to proceed with their own proposed variation,
 as the case may be, and
  - (b) give the governing body a reasonable opportunity to reach agreement with the authority on revising the variation;
- and the instrument shall be varied by order of the authority either in the manner agreed between the authority and the governing body or (in the absence of such agreement) in such manner as the authority think fit having regard, in particular, to the category of school to which the school belongs.
- (9) Where there is no such agreement (and no variation is required by regulations under sub-paragraph (2)), sub-paragraph (8) does not require the authority to vary the instrument if they consider it appropriate not to do so.
- (10) The following requirements under paragraph 3, namely—
- (a) the requirement under sub-paragraph (3) for the authority to consider compliance with all applicable statutory provisions, and
  - (b) the requirement under sub-paragraph (6) to have regard, in connection with the name of the school, to guidance given by the Secretary of State,
- shall apply in relation to a proposed variation of an instrument of government as they apply in relation to a draft of such an instrument.
- (11) Where an instrument of government is varied under this paragraph—
- (a) the instrument shall set out the date on which the variation takes effect, and
  - (b) paragraph 1(3) shall apply in relation to any variation relating to the manner in which the governing body are to be constituted as if it referred to the date when the variation is made rather than the date when the instrument is made.
- (12) Nothing in this paragraph requires the agreement of, or enables any objection to be made by, any body or person to any proposed variation that reflects any decision taken by the governing body or any other person which the governing body or that person is required or authorised to take by virtue of any statutory provision.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Other requirements relating to instruments of government*

- 5 Regulations may make provision imposing on local education authorities requirements with respect to the provision of—
- (a) copies of instruments of government made or varied by them; or
  - (b) information relating to such instruments.

*Duty to secure making of first instrument of government*

- 6 (1) A local education authority shall secure that, by the end of such period as may be prescribed, an instrument of government has been made in accordance with this Schedule for each school which is to be, or is, maintained by them as from the appointed day in accordance with section 20(4) or (5).
- (2) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the making of instruments of government in pursuance of sub-paragraph (1), including provision modifying any provision of this Schedule or Schedule 9.

SCHEDULE 13

Section 40.

CONTROL OF SCHOOL PREMISES BY GOVERNING BODIES

*Community and community special schools: general*

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies to a community or community special school.
- (2) The occupation and use of the premises of the school, both during and outside school hours, shall be under the control of the governing body, subject to—
- (a) any directions given by the local education authority under sub-paragraph (3);
  - (b) any transfer of control agreement entered into by the governing body under paragraph 2; and
  - (c) any requirements of an enactment other than this Act or regulations made under it.
- (3) The local education authority may give such directions as to the occupation and use of the premises of a community or community special school as they think fit.
- (4) In exercising control of the occupation and use of the premises of the school outside school hours the governing body shall have regard to the desirability of those premises being made available for community use.

*Transfer of control agreement in case of community or community special school*

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the governing body of a community or community special school may enter into a transfer of control agreement with any body or person if their purpose, or one of their purposes, in doing so is to promote community use of the whole or any part of the school premises.
- (2) The governing body shall not enter into any transfer of control agreement which makes or includes provision for the use of the whole or any part of the school

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

premises during school hours unless they have first obtained the local education authority's consent to the agreement in so far as it makes such provision.

(3) A transfer of control agreement shall be taken to include the following terms, namely—

- (a) that the governing body shall notify the controlling body of any directions given to the governing body under paragraph 1(3);
- (b) that the controlling body, in exercising control of the use of any premises subject to the agreement—
  - (i) shall do so in accordance with any directions from time to time notified to that body in pursuance of paragraph (a); and
  - (ii) shall have regard to the desirability of the premises being made available for community use; and
- (c) that, if reasonable notice is given in writing by the governing body to the controlling body that such of the premises subject to the agreement as may be specified in the notice are reasonably required for use by or in connection with the school at such times as may be so specified, then—
  - (i) the use of the specified premises at those times shall be under the control of the governing body, and
  - (ii) accordingly, those premises may be used at those times by or in connection with the school for such purposes as may be specified in the notice,

even though their use at those times would, apart from this paragraph, be under the control of the controlling body.

(4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies where a transfer of control agreement makes express provision for the use of any school premises which are subject to the agreement to be occasionally under the control of the governing body, instead of the controlling body, in such circumstances, at such times or for such purposes as may be provided by or under the agreement.

(5) In such a case paragraph (c) of sub-paragraph (3) shall not have effect in relation to the transfer of control agreement if, at the time of entering into it, the governing body were of the opinion that the express provision would be more favourable to the interests of the school than the term that would otherwise be included by virtue of that paragraph.

(6) Where the governing body enter into a transfer of control agreement, they shall so far as reasonably practicable secure that the controlling body exercises control in accordance with any such directions as are notified to that body in pursuance of sub-paragraph (3)(a).

(7) In this paragraph—

“the controlling body” means the body or person (other than the governing body) which has control of the use of the whole or any part of the school premises under the transfer of control agreement in question;

“transfer of control agreement” means an agreement which (subject to sub-paragraph (3)) provides for the use of so much of the school premises as may be specified in the agreement to be under the control, at such times as may be so specified, of such body or person as may be so specified.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Foundation and foundation special schools: general*

- 3
- (1) This paragraph applies to a foundation or foundation special school.
  - (2) The occupation and use of the premises of the school, both during and outside school hours, shall be under the control of the governing body, subject to—
    - (a) any transfer of control agreement entered into by the governing body under paragraph 4; and
    - (b) any requirements of an enactment other than this Act or regulations made under it.
  - (3) In exercising control of the occupation and use of the premises of the school outside school hours the governing body shall have regard to the desirability of those premises being made available for community use.
  - (4) Where the school has a trust deed which provides for any person other than the governing body to be entitled to control the occupation and use of the school premises to any extent, then, if and to the extent that (disregarding any transfer of control agreement made under paragraph 4) the use of those premises is or would be under the control of such a person—
    - (a) this paragraph, and
    - (b) paragraph 4,shall have effect in relation to the school with the substitution of references to that person for references to the governing body.

*Transfer of control agreement in case of foundation or foundation special school*

- 4
- (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the governing body of any foundation or foundation special school shall have power to enter into a transfer of control agreement with any body or person if their purpose, or one of their purposes, in doing so is to promote community use of the whole or any part of the school premises; and—
    - (a) they may do so even though the school has a trust deed that would, apart from this sub-paragraph, expressly or impliedly preclude them from entering into such an agreement with that body or person or from conferring control on the controlling body in question; but
    - (b) they shall not enter into a transfer of control agreement unless the use to which the premises may be put under the agreement is in all other respects in conformity with any such requirements, prohibitions or restrictions imposed by any such trust deed as would apply if control were being exercised by the governing body.
  - (2) The governing body shall not enter into any transfer of control agreement which makes or includes provision for the use of the whole or any part of the school premises during school hours unless they have first obtained the Secretary of State's consent to the agreement in so far as it makes such provision.
  - (3) A transfer of control agreement shall be taken to include the following terms, namely—
    - (a) that the controlling body, in exercising control of the use of any premises subject to the agreement, shall have regard to the desirability of the premises being made available for community use; and
    - (b) that, if reasonable notice is given in writing by the governing body to the controlling body that such of the premises subject to the agreement as may

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

be specified in the notice are reasonably required for use by or in connection with the school at such times as may be so specified, then—

- (i) the use of the specified premises at those times shall be under the control of the governing body, and
- (ii) accordingly, those premises may be used at those times by or in connection with the school for such purposes as may be specified in the notice,

even though their use at those times would, apart from this paragraph, be under the control of the controlling body.

(4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies where a transfer of control agreement makes express provision for the use of any school premises which are subject to the agreement to be occasionally under the control of the governing body, instead of the controlling body, in such circumstances, at such times or for such purposes as may be provided by or under the agreement.

(5) In such a case paragraph (b) of sub-paragraph (3) shall not have effect in relation to the transfer of control agreement if, at the time of entering into it, the governing body were of the opinion that the express provision would be more favourable to the interests of the school than the term that would otherwise be included by virtue of that paragraph.

(6) In this paragraph—

“the controlling body” means the body or person (other than the governing body) which has control of the use of the whole or any part of the school premises under the transfer of control agreement in question;

“transfer of control agreement” means an agreement which (subject to sub-paragraph (3)) provides for the use of so much of the school premises as may be specified in the agreement to be under the control, at such times as may be so specified, of such body or person as may be so specified.

#### *Voluntary schools: general*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies to a voluntary school.
- (2) The occupation and use of the premises of the school, both during and outside school hours, shall be under the control of the governing body, subject to—
- (a) any directions given by the local education authority—
    - (i) (in the case of a voluntary controlled school) under sub-paragraph (3), or
    - (ii) (in the case of a voluntary aided school) under paragraph 7(3);
  - (b) any transfer of control agreement entered into by the governing body under paragraph 6; and
  - (c) any requirements of an enactment other than this Act or regulations made under it.
- (3) The local education authority may give such directions as to the occupation and use of the premises of a voluntary controlled school as they think fit (subject to paragraph 7(1) and (2)).
- (4) Where the trust deed for a voluntary school provides for any person other than the governing body to be entitled to control the occupation and use of the school premises to any extent, then, if and to the extent that (disregarding any transfer of control

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

agreement made under paragraph 6) the use of those premises is or would be under the control of such a person—

- (a) this paragraph, and
- (b) paragraphs 6 and 7,

shall have effect in relation to the school with the substitution of references to that person for references to the governing body.

*Transfer of control agreement in case of voluntary school*

- 6 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the governing body of any voluntary school shall have power to enter into a transfer of control agreement with any body or person if their purpose, or one of their purposes, in doing so is to promote community use of the whole or any part of the school premises; and—
- (a) they may do so even though the trust deed for the school would, apart from this sub-paragraph, expressly or impliedly preclude them from entering into such an agreement with that body or person or from conferring control on the controlling body in question; but
  - (b) they shall not enter into a transfer of control agreement unless the use to which the premises may be put under the agreement is in all other respects in conformity with any such requirements, prohibitions or restrictions imposed by the trust deed as would apply if control were being exercised by the governing body.
- (2) The governing body shall not enter into any transfer of control agreement which makes or includes provision for the use of the whole or any part of the school premises during school hours unless they have first obtained the local education authority's consent to the agreement in so far as it makes such provision.
- (3) A transfer of control agreement shall be taken to include the following terms, namely—
- (a) that the governing body shall notify the controlling body of—
    - (i) any directions given to the governing body under paragraph 5(3) (in the case of a voluntary controlled school) or paragraph 7(3) (in the case of a voluntary aided school); and
    - (ii) any determination made by the foundation governors under paragraph 7(2) (in the case of a voluntary controlled school);
  - (b) that the controlling body, in exercising control of the use of any premises subject to the agreement—
    - (i) shall do so in accordance with any directions or determinations from time to time notified to that body in pursuance of paragraph (a); and
    - (ii) shall have regard to the desirability of the premises being made available for community use; and
  - (c) that, if reasonable notice is given in writing by the governing body to the controlling body that such of the premises subject to the agreement as may be specified in the notice are reasonably required for use by or in connection with the school at such times as may be so specified, then—
    - (i) the use of the specified premises at those times shall be under the control of the governing body, and
    - (ii) accordingly, those premises may be used at those times by or in connection with the school for such purposes as may be specified in the notice,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

even though their use at those times would, apart from this paragraph, be under the control of the controlling body.

- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies where a transfer of control agreement makes express provision for the use of any school premises which are subject to the agreement to be occasionally under the control of the governing body, instead of the controlling body, in such circumstances, at such times or for such purposes as may be provided by or under the agreement.
- (5) In such a case paragraph (c) of sub-paragraph (3) shall not have effect in relation to the transfer of control agreement if, at the time of entering into it, the governing body were of the opinion that the express provision would be more favourable to the interests of the school than the term that would otherwise be included by virtue of that paragraph.
- (6) Where the governing body enter into a transfer of control agreement, they shall so far as reasonably practicable secure that the controlling body exercises control in accordance with any such directions or determinations as are notified to that body in pursuance of sub-paragraph (3)(a).
- (7) In this paragraph—
  - “the controlling body” means the body or person (other than the governing body) which has control of the use of the whole or any part of the school premises under the transfer of control agreement in question;
  - “transfer of control agreement” means an agreement which (subject to sub-paragraph (3)) provides for the use of so much of the school premises as may be specified in the agreement to be under the control, at such times as may be so specified, of such body or person as may be so specified.

*Control of use of premises of voluntary school outside school hours*

- 7 (1) The governing body may determine the use to which the premises of a voluntary controlled school (or any part of them) are put on Saturdays when not required—
  - (a) for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) for any purpose connected with education or with the welfare of the young for which the local education authority desire to provide accommodation on the premises (or on the part in question).
- (2) The foundation governors may determine the use to which the premises of a voluntary controlled school (or any part of them) are put on Sundays.
- (3) If the local education authority—
  - (a) desire to provide accommodation for any purpose connected with education or with the welfare of the young, and
  - (b) are satisfied that there is no suitable alternative accommodation in their area for that purpose,
 they may direct the governing body of a voluntary aided school to provide accommodation free of charge for that purpose on the school premises (or any part of them) on any weekday when not needed for the purposes of the school.
- (4) The local education authority shall not exercise their power under sub-paragraph (3) so as to direct the governing body to provide accommodation on more than three days in any week.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) In exercising control of the occupation and use of the premises of a voluntary school outside school hours the governing body shall have regard to the desirability of those premises being made available for community use.

#### *Saving*

- 8 The power of the governing body of a maintained school to control the occupation and use of the premises of the school shall be subject to any arrangements made under or by virtue of—
- (a) an agreement made under paragraph 1 or 2 of Schedule 10 to the <sup>M98</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 or a determination made in accordance with paragraph 62 or 63 of Schedule 8 to the <sup>M99</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992; or
  - (b) an agreement made under paragraph 1 or 2 of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M100</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 or a determination made in accordance with paragraph 3 or 4 of that Schedule.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M98** 1988 c. 40.

**M99** 1992 c. 13.

**M100** 1992 c. 13.

#### *Interpretation*

- 9 In this Schedule—
- “community use” means the use of school premises (when not required by or in connection with the school) by members of the local community;
- “school hours” means any time during a school session or during a break between sessions on the same day;
- “school session”, in relation to any school, means a school session beginning and ending at such times as may from time to time be determined for that school in accordance with section 41.

### SCHEDULE 14

Section 48.

#### LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITY SCHEMES: APPROVAL, IMPOSITION AND REVISION

##### *Approval or imposition of schemes by Secretary of State*

- 1 (1) A scheme prepared by a local education authority under section 48(1) shall be submitted to the Secretary of State on or before such date as he may by order direct, whether—
- (a) generally; or
  - (b) in relation to that authority or to any class or description of local education authorities to which that authority belongs.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) In preparing such a scheme a local education authority shall take into account any guidance given by the Secretary of State, whether—
- (a) generally, or
  - (b) in relation to that authority or to any class or description of local education authorities to which that authority belongs,
- as to the provisions he regards as appropriate for inclusion in the scheme.
- (3) Before preparing such a scheme the local education authority shall consult—
- (a) where this sub-paragraph applies in relation to any time before the appointed day—
    - (i) the governing body and the head teacher of every school maintained by the authority as a county, voluntary or maintained special school (within the meaning of the <sup>M101</sup>Education Act 1996), and
    - (ii) the governing body and the head teacher of every grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school (within the meaning of that Act) in the area of the authority; and
  - (b) where this sub-paragraph applies in relation to any time on or after the appointed day, the governing body and the head teacher of every school maintained by the authority (within the meaning of this Chapter);
- and in paragraph (a)(i) “every school” includes any new school (within the meaning of Part II of the <sup>M102</sup>Education Act 1996).
- (4) Such a scheme shall not come into force until it has been approved by the Secretary of State or until such date as he may, in giving his approval, specify; and the Secretary of State may approve such a scheme—
- (a) either without modifications or with such modifications as he thinks fit after consulting the authority concerned; and
  - (b) subject to such conditions as he may specify in giving his approval.
- (5) If in the case of any local education authority either—
- (a) the authority fail to submit a scheme as required by sub-paragraph (1), or
  - (b) it appears to the Secretary of State that a scheme submitted by the authority as required by that sub-paragraph does not accord with any guidance given by him for the purposes of this paragraph and cannot be made to do so merely by modifying it,
- he may, after consulting the authority and such other persons as he thinks fit, impose a scheme making such provision of a description required to be made by a scheme under section 48 as he considers appropriate.
- (6) A scheme imposed by the Secretary of State by virtue of sub-paragraph (5)—
- (a) shall be treated as if made under section 48 by the local education authority concerned; and
  - (b) shall come into force on such date as may be specified in the scheme.
- (7) A scheme shall be published in such manner as may be prescribed—
- (a) on its coming into force, and
  - (b) on such subsequent occasions as may be prescribed.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Marginal Citations

M101 1996 c. 56.

M102 1996 c. 56.

#### *Revision of schemes*

- 2
- (1) A local education authority may, in accordance with this paragraph, revise the whole or any part of the scheme prepared by them under section 48(1).
  - (2) Section 48(1) and paragraph 1(2) shall apply in relation to the preparation by the authority of any revision under this paragraph as they apply in relation to the preparation by the authority of a scheme.
  - (3) As regards any proposed variation of the scheme, the authority—
    - (a) shall first consult every governing body and head teacher whom they are obliged to consult under paragraph 1(3), and
    - (b) shall then submit a copy of their proposals to the Secretary of State for his approval.
  - (4) Where the proposals are so submitted, paragraph 1(4) shall apply to the scheme as revised as it applies to a scheme prepared under section 48.
  - (5) The Secretary of State may by a direction revise the whole or any part of any scheme as from such date as may be specified in the direction.
  - (6) Before giving such a direction the Secretary of State shall consult the local education authority and such other persons as he thinks fit.

### SCHEDULE 15

Section 51.

#### SUSPENSION OF FINANCIAL DELEGATION

##### *Suspension of financial delegation for mismanagement, etc.*

- 1
- (1) This paragraph applies where it appears to the local education authority that the governing body of a school which has a delegated budget—
    - (a) have been guilty of a substantial or persistent failure to comply with any delegation requirement or restriction, [<sup>F207</sup>or]
    - (b) are not managing in a satisfactory manner the expenditure or appropriation of the sum referred to in section 50(1)[<sup>F208</sup> or
    - (c) are not managing in a satisfactory manner any expenditure, or sums received, in the exercise of the power conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power to provide community facilities etc.).]
  - (2) The authority may suspend the governing body's right to a delegated budget by giving the governing body not less than one month's notice of the suspension, unless by reason of any gross incompetence or mismanagement on the part of the governing body or other emergency it appears to the authority to be necessary—
    - (a) to give the governing body a shorter period of notice, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) to give the governing body a notice suspending their right to such a budget with immediate effect.
- (3) The notice must specify the grounds for the suspension, giving particulars—
  - (a) of any alleged failure on the part of the governing body to comply with any delegation requirement or restriction;
  - (b) of any alleged mismanagement on their part; and
  - (c) if applicable, of the basis upon which a period of notice of less than one month was given under sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) The notice must also inform the governing body of their right to appeal against the suspension under paragraph 3 and of the time within which such an appeal may be brought.
- (5) A copy of the notice must be given to the head teacher of the school at the same time as the notice is given to the governing body.
- (6) The authority shall send a copy of the notice to the Secretary of State.
- (7) In this paragraph “delegation requirement or restriction” means any requirement or restriction applicable, under or by virtue of the scheme or section 50(3), to the management by the governing body of the school’s budget share.
- (8) Any notice given under this paragraph must be in writing.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F207** Sch. 15 para. 1(1): Word "or" at the end of para. 1(1)(a) omitted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by virtue of Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 40, 216, **Sch. 3 para. 5** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 4**

**F208** Sch. 15 para. 1(1)(c) and word "or" at the end of para. 1(1)(b) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 40, 216, **Sch. 3 para. 5** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 4**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C186** Sch. 15 para. 1 modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 6**

#### *Review of suspension*

- 2 (1) The local education authority concerned—
  - (a) shall review before the beginning of every financial year any suspension under paragraph 1 which is for the time being in force, unless the suspension took effect less than two months before the beginning of that year; and
  - (b) may review at any time any suspension under paragraph 1 which is for the time being in force, if they consider it appropriate to do so.
- (2) For the purposes of any review under sub-paragraph (1), the authority shall give the governing body and the head teacher of the school an opportunity of making representations with respect to the suspension.
- (3) If on the review the authority consider it appropriate to do so, they shall revoke the suspension—
  - (a) (in the case of a review under sub-paragraph (1)(a)) with effect from the beginning of the financial year next following the review; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) (in the case of a review under sub-paragraph (1)(b)) with effect from such time before the beginning of the financial year next following the review as they may determine.
- (4) The authority shall give the governing body and the head teacher notice in writing of their decision on the review.
- (5) If—
  - (a) the review was conducted under sub-paragraph (1)(a), and
  - (b) the authority's decision is to refuse to revoke the suspension,the notice must inform the governing body of their right to appeal against the refusal under paragraph 3 and of the time within which such an appeal may be brought.

*Appeal against suspension or refusal to revoke it*

- 3 (1) A governing body may appeal to the Secretary of State against—
  - (a) the imposition of any suspension under paragraph 1 of their right to a delegated budget; or
  - (b) any refusal of a local education authority to revoke any such suspension on a review under paragraph 2(1)(a).
- (2) An appeal under this paragraph must be brought within the period of two months beginning with the date on which the governing body receive the authority's notice under paragraph 1(2) or 2(4), as the case may be.
- (3) But if the authority's notice failed to comply with paragraph 1(4) or 2(5), such an appeal may be brought at any time before the end of the period of two months beginning with the date on which the governing body are informed by the authority in writing of their right of appeal under this paragraph.
- (4) On an appeal under this paragraph, the Secretary of State—
  - (a) may allow or reject the appeal; and
  - (b) shall have regard, in making his determination, to the gravity of the default on the part of the governing body and the likelihood of its continuing or recurring.
- (5) Where the Secretary of State allows an appeal under this paragraph, the suspension of the governing body's right to a delegated budget shall be revoked from a date determined by the Secretary of State.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C187 Sch. 15 para. 3(1)(a) excluded (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg.6

*Effect of suspension of right to delegated budget*

- 4 (1) During any period when a governing body's right to a delegated budget is suspended under paragraph 1—
  - (a) the local education authority's duty under section 50(1) shall not apply in relation to the school; but

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the authority may permit the governing body to take such decisions as to the spending of sums to be met from the school’s budget share as the authority consider appropriate.
- (2) Where in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(b) the governing body have decided that a particular sum should be spent, they shall, in spending that sum, comply with such reasonable conditions as the authority think fit to impose.
- (3) The governing body may, to such extent as they may specify, delegate their powers in relation to that sum to the head teacher.

## SCHEDULE 16

Section 54.

### STAFFING OF COMMUNITY, VOLUNTARY CONTROLLED AND COMMUNITY SPECIAL SCHOOLS

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C188** Sch. 16 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 49(2)**.

Sch. 16 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 49(4)**.

Sch. 16 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 49(2)**.

Sch. 16 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 49(4)**.

#### *Introductory*

- 1 (1) In this Schedule “the school” means a community, voluntary controlled or community special school.
- (2) References in this Schedule to a vacancy in any post include a prospective vacancy in the post, and references to a person’s absence are to his absence, or prospective absence, from the school.
- (3) References in this Schedule to staff qualification requirements are to any requirements with respect to—
  - (a) qualifications,
  - (b) registration,
  - (c) health and physical capacity, or
  - (d) fitness on educational grounds or in any other respect,
 of teachers or other persons employed, or otherwise engaged to provide their services, in work that brings them regularly into contact with persons who have not attained the age of 19 which for the time being apply under regulations under section 218 of the <sup>M103</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (regulations relating to employment of teachers etc.) or section 19 of the <sup>M104</sup>Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (induction training).
- (4) References in this Schedule to the chief education officer of the local education authority include any officer of the authority nominated by the chief education officer.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M103 1988 c. 40.

M104 1998 c. 30.

### *Appointment of head teacher and deputy head teacher*

- 2 Paragraphs 3 to 7 apply in relation to the filling of a vacancy in the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher of the school.
- 3 The governing body shall notify the local education authority of the vacancy in writing before taking any of the steps mentioned in paragraphs 4 to 7.
- 4 (1) Where the vacancy is in the post of head teacher and either the post has not been filled, or it appears to the governing body that the post will not be filled, by an appointment made in accordance with paragraphs 5 to 7 before the date on which it falls vacant, the governing body shall either—
- (a) recommend a person for appointment as acting head teacher, or
  - (b) exercise their power under sub-paragraph (5).
- (2) Where the vacancy is in the post of deputy head teacher and either the post has not been filled, or it appears to the governing body that the post will not be filled, by an appointment made in accordance with paragraphs 5 to 7 before the date on which it falls vacant, the governing body may—
- (a) recommend a person for appointment as acting deputy head teacher, or
  - (b) exercise their power under sub-paragraph (5).
- (3) If the governing body recommend a person for appointment as acting head teacher or acting deputy head teacher, the local education authority shall appoint the person recommended unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (4) If the authority decline to appoint a person recommended by the governing body for appointment as acting head teacher, the governing body shall recommend another person for appointment.
- (5) Instead of making a recommendation under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) the governing body may for the purpose of filling the vacancy—
- (a) engage, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,
- a person to provide his services as acting head teacher, or (as the case may be) acting deputy head teacher, otherwise than under a contract of employment with the local education authority.
- (6) No person shall be engaged under sub-paragraph (5) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to the head teacher or (as the case may be) deputy head teacher at the school.
- 5 The governing body shall advertise the vacancy in such publications circulating throughout England and Wales as they consider appropriate.
- 6 (1) The governing body shall appoint a selection panel consisting of at least three of their members to perform the functions conferred on them by this paragraph.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The selection panel shall—
- (a) select for interview such applicants for the post as they think fit and, where the post is that of head teacher, notify the local education authority in writing of the names of the applicants so selected,
  - (b) interview such of those applicants as attend for the purpose,
  - (c) where they consider it appropriate to do so, recommend to the governing body for appointment one of the applicants interviewed by them, and
  - (d) if their recommendation is approved by the governing body, recommend the applicant in question to the local education authority for appointment.
- (3) Any decision of the selection panel shall be taken by a vote representing an absolute majority of all the members of the panel (whether or not taking part in the vote).
- (4) If, within the period of 14 days beginning with the date when they receive a notification under sub-paragraph (2)(a), the authority make written representations to the selection panel that any of the applicants selected by the panel is not a suitable person for the appointment, the panel shall not recommend that person to the governing body for appointment unless the panel have—
- (a) considered those representations, and
  - (b) notified the authority in writing of their response to the representations;
- and when making such a recommendation the panel shall supply the governing body with a copy of those representations and of the panel's response to them.
- (5) If the panel do not recommend a person to the governing body, or the governing body do not approve their recommendation, the governing body—
- (a) may, if they think fit, re-advertise the vacancy in the manner required by paragraph 5, and
  - (b) whether or not they re-advertise the vacancy, may require the panel to repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (2).
- (6) In determining whether a person is suitable for appointment as head teacher the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- 7 (1) Where the governing body approve a recommendation of the selection panel, the local education authority shall appoint the person recommended by the panel unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (2) If the authority decline to appoint the person recommended by the panel, the governing body—
- (a) may, if they think fit, re-advertise the vacancy in the manner required by paragraph 5, and
  - (b) whether or not they re-advertise the vacancy, may require the panel to repeat the steps mentioned in paragraph 6(2).
- 8 (1) The governing body may, in connection with any absence of the person for the time being holding the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher of the school, take either of the steps mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (1) or (as the case may be) (2) of paragraph 4.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) paragraph 4(3) shall apply in relation to any recommendation made by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above as it applies in relation to any recommendation made by virtue of paragraph 4(1) or (2); and
- (b) paragraph 4(5) and (6) shall apply in connection with any such absence as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above as they apply for the purpose of filling any such vacancy as is mentioned in paragraph 4(1) or (2).

#### *Appointment of other teachers*

- 9 Subject to paragraph 10, paragraphs 11 to 15 apply in relation to the filling of a vacancy in any teaching post (whether full-time or part-time) at the school, other than the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher.
- 10 (1) Paragraphs 11 to 15 do not apply in relation to any temporary appointment or engagement to fill a vacancy in any such post as is mentioned in paragraph 9—
- (a) for a period not exceeding four months, or
  - (b) where it appears to the governing body that the period for which the person appointed or engaged will act in the post in question will not exceed four months.
- (2) Where it appears to the governing body in the case of any post that it would be appropriate for such an appointment as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) to be made—
- (a) they may recommend a person for appointment to the post on such terms as to the duration of the appointment as they may specify, and
  - (b) the local education authority shall appoint the person recommended on the terms specified unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (3) Where it appears to the governing body in the case of any post that it would be appropriate for such an engagement as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) to be made, the governing body may—
- (a) engage, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,
- a person to provide his services as a teacher at the school otherwise than under a contract of employment with the local education authority.
- (4) Any engagement under sub-paragraph (3) shall be on such terms as to the duration of the engagement as the governing body may specify; but no person shall be engaged under that sub-paragraph unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to a teacher in the post in which he would be acting as a temporary teacher.
- 11 Before taking any of the steps mentioned below, the governing body shall—
- (a) determine a specification for the post in consultation with the head teacher, and
  - (b) send a copy of the specification to the local education authority.
- 12 (1) The local education authority may nominate for consideration for appointment to the post any person who appears to them to be qualified to fill it and who at the time of his nomination either—
- (a) is an employee of theirs or has been appointed to take up employment with them at a future date, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) is employed by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school maintained by them.
- (2) No person who is employed at any school maintained by the authority shall be nominated by the authority under sub-paragraph (1) without the consent of the governing body of the school.
- 13 (1) The governing body may advertise the vacancy at any time after they have sent a copy of the specification for the post to the local education authority in accordance with paragraph 11, and shall do so unless either—
  - (a) they accept for appointment to the post a person nominated by the local education authority under paragraph 12, or
  - (b) they decide to recommend to the authority for appointment to the post a person who is already employed to work at the school.
- (2) Where the governing body advertise the vacancy, they shall do so in a manner likely in their opinion to bring it to the notice of persons (including employees of the authority) who are qualified to fill it.
- 14 (1) Where the governing body advertise the vacancy, they shall—
  - (a) interview such applicants for the post and such of the persons (if any) nominated by the local education authority under paragraph 12 as they think fit, and
  - (b) where they consider it appropriate to do so, either recommend to the authority for appointment one of the applicants interviewed by them or notify the authority that they accept for appointment any person nominated by the authority under paragraph 12.
- (2) If the governing body are unable to agree on a person to recommend or accept for appointment, they may repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b), with or without first re-advertising the vacancy in accordance with paragraph 13(2).
- 15 (1) The local education authority shall appoint the person recommended or accepted for appointment by the governing body unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (2) If the authority decline to appoint a person recommended by the governing body, the governing body shall repeat such of the steps mentioned in paragraph 14(1)(a) and (b) as they think fit, with or without first re-advertising the vacancy in accordance with paragraph 13(2).
- 16 (1) The governing body may, in connection with any absence of the person for the time being holding any such post as is mentioned in paragraph 9—
  - (a) engage, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,
 a person to provide his services as a teacher at the school otherwise than under a contract of employment with the local education authority.
- (2) No person shall be engaged under sub-paragraph (1) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to a teacher in the post in which he would be acting as a temporary teacher.
- 17 The governing body may, in relation to a particular vacancy or absence or a vacancy or absence of a kind specified by them, delegate any of their functions under paragraphs 10 to 16—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) to one or more governors,
- (b) to the head teacher, or
- (c) to one or more governors and the head teacher acting together.

*Advice of chief education officer on appointments of teachers*

- 18 (1) The chief education officer of the local education authority shall be entitled to attend, for the purpose of giving advice—
- (a) all proceedings (including interviews) of the governing body, and of any selection panel appointed under paragraph 6, relating to appointments or engagements to which any of the provisions of paragraphs 3 to 8 apply, and
  - (b) all proceedings (including interviews) of the governing body, and of any persons to whom any functions of the governing body under paragraphs 10 to 16 are delegated, relating to appointments or engagements to which any of the provisions of paragraphs 10 to 16 apply.
- (2) The chief education officer shall offer such advice as he considers appropriate with respect to—
- (a) the appointment of a head teacher or deputy head teacher or the appointment or engagement of an acting head teacher or acting deputy head teacher, or
  - (b) any matter arising in connection with any such appointment or engagement.
- (3) If requested to do so by the governing body, the chief education officer shall give such advice as he considers appropriate in relation to any appointment or engagement to which any of the provisions of paragraphs 10 to 16 apply.
- (4) Any advice given by the chief education officer to—
- (a) the governing body,
  - (b) any selection panel appointed under paragraph 6, or
  - (c) any persons to whom any functions of the governing body under paragraphs 10 to 16 are delegated,
- with respect to any matter which relates to an appointment or engagement and falls to be determined by them shall be considered by them before determining that matter, whether or not the advice was given at their request.

*Advice of head teacher on appointments etc. of teachers*

- 19 Except in relation to the appointment of a head teacher—
- (a) paragraph 18(1) applies in relation to the head teacher (if not otherwise entitled to be present at the proceedings there mentioned) as it applies in relation to the chief education officer, and
  - (b) paragraph 18(4) applies in relation to advice given by the head teacher as it applies in relation to advice given by the chief education officer.

*Appointment of non-teaching staff*

- 20 (1) Where the governing body desire the appointment of a person to work in a non-teaching post at the school, they may recommend a person to the local education authority for appointment to the post.
- (2) A recommendation under this paragraph shall be in writing and shall specify—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the duties to be performed by the person appointed (including, where the post is part-time, his hours of work) and such terms (if any) as to the duration of his appointment as are proposed by the governing body;
  - (b) the grade (on the scale of grades currently applicable in relation to employment with the authority) which the governing body consider appropriate for the post; and
  - (c) where the authority have a discretion with respect to the remuneration to be paid to a person appointed to the post, the determination of any matter to which that discretion applies and which the governing body consider appropriate in the case of the person recommended for appointment.
- (3) Before selecting a person to recommend under this paragraph and determining in relation to such a recommendation any matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), the governing body shall consult—
- (a) the head teacher (where he would not otherwise be involved in the decision), and
  - (b) the chief education officer of the authority.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(c), the authority are to be regarded as having a discretion with respect to the remuneration to be paid to a person appointed to a post if any provisions regulating the rates of remuneration or allowances payable to persons in the authority’s employment either—
- (a) do not apply in relation to that appointment, or
  - (b) leave to the authority any degree of discretion as to rate of remuneration or allowances in the case of that appointment.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C189** Sch. 16 para. 20 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 20 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

- 21 (1) The local education authority shall appoint a person recommended to them under paragraph 20 unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (2) Any such appointment shall be on such terms as to give effect, so far as they relate to any matter mentioned in paragraph 20(2), to the governing body’s recommendation in respect of that matter.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C190** Sch. 16 para. 21 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 21 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

*Discipline*

- 22 (1) The regulation of conduct and discipline in relation to the staff of the school, and any procedures for giving members of the staff opportunities for seeking redress of any grievances relating to their employment, shall be under the control of the governing body.
- (2) The governing body shall establish—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) disciplinary rules and procedures (including such rules and procedures for dealing with lack of capability on the part of members of the staff), and
  - (b) procedures such as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (1);
- and shall take such steps as appear to the governing body to be appropriate for making them known to members of the staff.
- (3) In determining the capability of members of the staff the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (4) If the Secretary of State determines that any prescribed rules and procedures are to apply to the school or to any class or description of school to which the school belongs—
- (a) the governing body shall act in accordance with those rules and procedures in determining the capability of members of the staff; and
  - (b) in the event of any inconsistency, those rules and procedures shall prevail over any rules and procedures established by the governing body under sub-paragraph (2)(a).
- (5) Where the implementation of any determination made by the governing body in the exercise of their control over the conduct and discipline of the staff requires any action which—
- (a) is not within the functions exercisable by the governing body by virtue of this Act, but
  - (b) is within the power of the local education authority,
- the authority shall take that action at the request of the governing body.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C191 Sch. 16 para. 22 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.

Sch. 16 para. 22 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1)

*LEA report on performance of head teacher*

- 23 (1) Where the authority have any serious concerns about the performance of the head teacher of the school—
- (a) they shall make a written report of their concerns to the chairman of the governing body at the same time sending a copy to the head teacher; and
  - (b) the chairman of the governing body shall notify the authority in writing of the action which he proposes to take in the light of the report.
- (2) In determining whether to make a report under this paragraph the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

*Suspension*

- 24 (1) Both the governing body and the head teacher shall have power to suspend any person employed to work at the school where, in the opinion of the governing body or (as the case may be) the head teacher, his exclusion from the school is required.
- (2) The governing body or head teacher shall, when exercising that power, immediately inform the local education authority and the head teacher or (as the case may be) governing body.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) A suspension under this paragraph may only be ended by the governing body.
- (4) The governing body shall, on ending such a suspension, immediately inform the authority and the head teacher.
- (5) In this paragraph “suspend” means suspend without loss of emoluments.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C192 Sch. 16 para. 24 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 24 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

*Dismissal, etc.*

- 25 (1) Where the governing body determine that any person employed by the local education authority to work at the school should cease to work there, they shall notify the authority in writing of their determination and the reasons for it.
- (2) If the person concerned is employed to work solely at the school (and he does not resign), the authority shall, before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the date on which the notification under sub-paragraph (1) is given, either—
- (a) give him such notice terminating his contract of employment with the authority as is required under that contract, or
  - (b) terminate that contract without notice if the circumstances are such that they are entitled to do so by reason of his conduct.
- (3) If the person concerned is not employed to work solely at the school, the authority shall require him to cease to work at the school.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C193 Sch. 16 para. 25 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 25 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

- 26 (1) Where paragraph 25(3) applies, no part of the costs incurred by the local education authority in respect of the emoluments of the person concerned, so far as they relate to any period falling after the expiration of his contractual notice period, shall be met from the school’s budget share.
- (2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1) to the person’s contractual notice period is to the period of notice that would have been required under his contract of employment with the authority for termination of that contract if such notice had been given on the date on which the notification under paragraph 25(1) was given.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C194 Sch. 16 para. 26 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 26 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4(1).

- 27 (1) The governing body shall—
- (a) make arrangements for giving any person in respect of whom they propose to make a determination under paragraph 25(1) an opportunity of making

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- representations as to the action they propose to take (including, if he so wishes, oral representations to such person or persons as the governing body may appoint for the purpose), and
- (b) have regard to any representations made by him.
- (2) The governing body shall also make arrangements for giving any person in respect of whom they have made a determination under paragraph 25(1) an opportunity of appealing against it before they notify the local education authority of the determination.
- (3) Nothing in this paragraph shall, however, apply to a person who—
- (a) is due to cease to work at the school by reason of the termination of his contract of employment by effluxion of time; and
- (b) has not been continuously employed at the school [<sup>F209</sup>, within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, for a period at least as long as the period for the time being specified in section 108(1) of that Act (unfair dismissal: qualifying period)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F209** Words in Sch. 16 para. 27(3)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1999 c. 26, s. 40(1); S.I. 1999/2262, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C195** Sch. 16 para. 27 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
Sch. 16 para. 27 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

- 28 (1) The head teacher (except where he is the person concerned) and the chief education officer of the local education authority shall be entitled to attend, for the purpose of giving advice, all proceedings of the governing body relating to a determination under paragraph 25(1).
- (2) The governing body shall consider any advice given by a person who is entitled to attend such proceedings under this paragraph before making a determination under paragraph 25(1).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C196** Sch. 16 para. 28 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
Sch. 16 para. 28 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

- 29 (1) The local education authority shall not dismiss a person employed by them to work solely at the school except as provided by paragraph 25.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply in a case where—
- (a) the dismissal of the person in question is required by virtue of regulations under section 218 of the <sup>M105</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 or section 19 of the <sup>M106</sup>Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998, or
- (b) the person in question is a teacher who is subject to a conditional registration, suspension or prohibition order made under Schedule 2 to the 1998 Act (disciplinary powers of General Teaching Council).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C197 Sch. 16 para. 29 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2258, reg. 4.  
 Sch. 16 para. 29 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2802, reg. 4(1).

**Marginal Citations**

- M105 1988 c. 40.  
 M106 1998 c. 30.

*School meals staff*

- 30 The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the appointment, discipline, suspension and dismissal of persons employed or to be employed to work at a community, voluntary controlled or community special school solely in connection with the provision of meals.

*Advisory rights for appropriate diocesan authorities*

- 31 (1) This paragraph applies to a voluntary controlled school which is a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school.
- (2) The governing body may agree with the appropriate diocesan authority to accord to the appropriate diocesan officer—
- (a) with respect to all teachers at the school, or
  - (b) with respect to any particular description of such teachers,
- the same advisory rights in relation to their appointment, engagement or dismissal as are exercisable by the chief education officer in accordance with paragraphs 18 and 28.
- (3) The agreement of the governing body for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) must be given in writing and may only be withdrawn by notice in writing to the appropriate diocesan authority.
- (4) In paragraphs 18 and 28, as they apply to a voluntary controlled school within sub-paragraph (1) above, references to the chief education officer accordingly include the appropriate diocesan officer, so far as necessary for giving effect to any advisory rights exercisable by him under this paragraph.
- (5) In this paragraph “the appropriate diocesan officer” means such person as the appropriate diocesan authority may nominate.

SCHEDULE 17

Section 55.

STAFFING OF FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY AIDED AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C198 Sch. 17 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 50(2).  
 Sch. 17 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 50(3).  
 Sch. 17 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, reg. 52(2).



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Sch. 17 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(2)**.  
Sch. 17 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(3)**.  
Sch. 17 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 52(4)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(2)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 50(3)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(2)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(2)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(3)**.  
Sch. 17 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **regs. 48, 52(4)**.

### *Introductory*

- 1 (1) In this Schedule “the school” means a foundation or voluntary aided or foundation special school.
- (2) References in this Schedule to a vacancy in any post include a prospective vacancy in the post, and references to a person’s absence are to his absence, or prospective absence, from the school.
- (3) References in this Schedule to staff qualification requirements are to any requirements with respect to—
- (a) qualifications,
  - (b) registration,
  - (c) health and physical capacity, or
  - (d) fitness on educational grounds or in any other respect,
- of teachers or other persons employed, or otherwise engaged to provide their services, in work that brings them regularly into contact with persons who have not attained the age of 19 which for the time being apply under regulations under section 218 of the <sup>M107</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (regulations relating to employment of teachers etc.) or section 19 of the <sup>M108</sup>Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (induction training).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I47** Sch. 17 para. 1 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 17 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 17 para. 1(1) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; Sch. 17 para. 1 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M107** 1988 c. 40.

**M108** 1998 c. 30.

### *Advisory rights of chief education officer*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) the governing body of the school have agreed with the local education authority to accord to the authority’s chief education officer advisory rights in relation to the appointment, engagement or dismissal of teachers at the school, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in default of such agreement, the Secretary of State has determined that it would be appropriate that such advisory rights should be accorded to the chief education officer.
- (2) Advisory rights accorded by an agreement or determination under sub-paragraph (1) shall be framed by reference to the rights conferred on the chief education officer by the following paragraphs of this Schedule and may relate to the appointment and engagement or dismissal, or both to the appointment and engagement and to the dismissal, either—
  - (a) of head teachers and deputy head teachers alone, or
  - (b) of all teachers at the school.
- (3) During any period when an agreement or determination under sub-paragraph (1) is effective, the chief education officer shall be entitled to exercise such of the rights conferred on him under the following paragraphs of this Schedule as are accorded to him by virtue of the agreement or determination.
- (4) The chief education officer shall not be entitled to exercise any of the rights so conferred except in accordance with sub-paragraph (3).
- (5) The agreement of a governing body for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) must be given in writing and may only be withdrawn by notice in writing to the local education authority.
- (6) A determination by the Secretary of State for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(b) may be withdrawn at any time (without prejudice to a further determination for those purposes).
- (7) References in this Schedule to the chief education officer of the local education authority include any officer of the authority nominated by the chief education officer.

*Appointment of head teacher and deputy head teacher*

- 3 Paragraphs 4 to 8 apply in relation to the filling of a vacancy in the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher of the school (but paragraphs 6 to 8 so apply subject to paragraphs 29 and 30).
- 4 The governing body shall notify the local education authority of the vacancy in writing before taking any of the steps mentioned in paragraphs 5 to 8 (or, in a case where paragraph 29 or 30 applies, any of the steps falling to be taken under that paragraph).
- 5 (1) Where the vacancy is in the post of head teacher and either the post has not been filled, or it appears to the governing body that the post will not be filled, by an appointment made in accordance with paragraphs 6 to 8 before the date on which it falls vacant, the governing body shall either—
  - (a) appoint a person as acting head teacher, or
  - (b) exercise their power under sub-paragraph (4).
- (2) Where the vacancy is in the post of deputy head teacher and either the post has not been filled, or it appears to the governing body that the post will not be filled, by an appointment made in accordance with paragraphs 6 to 8 before the date on which it falls vacant, the governing body may—
  - (a) appoint a person as acting deputy head teacher, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) exercise their power under sub-paragraph (4).
- (3) A person shall not be appointed under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (4) Instead of making an appointment under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) the governing body may for the purpose of filling the vacancy—
  - (a) engage, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,  
a person to provide his services as acting head teacher, or (as the case may be) acting deputy head teacher, otherwise than under a contract of employment.
- (5) No person shall be engaged under sub-paragraph (4) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to the head teacher or (as the case may be) deputy head teacher at the school.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (1) the reference to paragraphs 6 to 8 includes a reference to paragraph 29 or 30; and in sub-paragraph (2) the reference to paragraphs 6 to 8 includes a reference to paragraph 30.
- 6 The governing body shall advertise the vacancy in such publications circulating throughout England and Wales as they consider appropriate.
- 7 (1) The governing body shall appoint a selection panel consisting of at least three of their members to perform the functions conferred on them by this paragraph.
- (2) The selection panel shall—
  - (a) select for interview such applicants for the post as they think fit and, where the post is that of head teacher, notify the local education authority in writing of the names of the applicants so selected,
  - (b) interview such of those applicants as attend for the purpose, and
  - (c) where they consider it appropriate to do so, recommend to the governing body for appointment one of the applicants interviewed by them.
- (3) Any decision of the selection panel shall be taken by a vote representing an absolute majority of all the members of the panel (whether or not taking part in the vote).
- (4) If, within the period of 14 days beginning with the date when they receive a notification under sub-paragraph (2)(a), the authority make written representations to the selection panel that any of the applicants selected by the panel is not a suitable person for the appointment, the panel shall not recommend that person to the governing body for appointment unless the panel have—
  - (a) considered those representations, and
  - (b) notified the authority in writing of their response to the representations;and when making such a recommendation the panel shall supply the governing body with a copy of those representations and of the panel's response to them.
- (5) If the panel do not recommend a person to the governing body, or the governing body do not approve their recommendation, the governing body—
  - (a) may, if they think fit, re-advertise the vacancy in the manner required by paragraph 6, and
  - (b) whether or not they re-advertise the vacancy, may require the panel to repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (2).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Where the chief education officer has no advisory rights under paragraph 2 with respect to the appointment of head teachers and deputy head teachers, the selection panel's notification under sub-paragraph (2)(a) shall be accompanied by such information relating to each of the persons selected for interview as will enable the authority to determine his suitability for the appointment.
- (7) In determining whether a person is suitable for appointment as head teacher the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- 8       Where the governing body approve a recommendation of the selection panel, the governing body shall appoint the person recommended by the panel unless he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- 9       (1) The governing body may, in connection with any absence of the person for the time being holding the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher of the school, take either of the steps mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (1) or (as the case may be) (2) of paragraph 5.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) paragraph 5(3) shall apply in relation to any appointment made by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above as it applies in relation to any appointment made by virtue of paragraph 5(1) or (2); and
- (b) paragraph 5(4) and (5) shall apply in connection with any such absence as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above as they apply for the purpose of filling any such vacancy as is mentioned in paragraph 5(1) or (2).

#### *Appointment of other teachers*

- 10       Subject to paragraph 11, paragraphs 12 to 15 apply in relation to the filling of a vacancy in any teaching post (whether full-time or part-time) at the school, other than the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher.
- 11       (1) Paragraphs 12 to 15 do not apply in relation to any temporary appointment or engagement to fill a vacancy in any such post as is mentioned in paragraph 10—
- (a) for a period not exceeding four months, or
- (b) where it appears to the governing body that the period for which the person appointed or engaged will act in the post in question will not exceed four months.
- (2) Where it appears to the governing body in the case of any post that it would be appropriate for such an appointment as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) to be made, they may appoint a person to the post on such terms as to the duration of the appointment as they think fit.
- (3) A person shall not be appointed under sub-paragraph (2) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (4) Where it appears to the governing body in the case of any post that it would be appropriate for such an engagement as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) to be made, the governing body may—
- (a) engage, or
- (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- a person to provide his services as a teacher at the school otherwise than under a contract of employment.
- (5) Any engagement under sub-paragraph (4) shall be on such terms as to the duration of the engagement as the governing body may specify; but no person shall be engaged under that sub-paragraph unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to a teacher in the post in which he would be acting as a temporary teacher.
- 12 Before taking any of the steps mentioned below, the governing body shall—
- (a) determine a specification for the post in consultation with the head teacher, and
  - (b) send a copy of the specification to the local education authority.
- 13 (1) The local education authority may nominate for consideration for appointment to the post any person who appears to them to be qualified to fill it and who at the time of his nomination either—
- (a) is an employee of theirs or has been appointed to take up employment with them at a future date, or
  - (b) is employed by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school maintained by them.
- (2) No person who is employed at any school maintained by the authority shall be nominated by the authority under sub-paragraph (1) without the consent of the governing body of the school.
- 14 (1) The governing body may advertise the vacancy at any time after they have sent a copy of the specification for the post to the local education authority in accordance with paragraph 12, and shall do so unless they appoint to the post either—
- (a) a person nominated by the local education authority under paragraph 13, or
  - (b) a person who is already employed to work at the school.
- (2) Where the governing body advertise the vacancy, they shall do so in a manner likely in their opinion to bring it to the notice of persons (including employees of the authority) who are qualified to fill it.
- 15 (1) Where the governing body advertise the vacancy, they shall—
- (a) interview such applicants for the post and such of the persons (if any) nominated by the local education authority under paragraph 13 as they think fit, and
  - (b) where they consider it appropriate to do so, appoint to the post either one of the applicants interviewed by them or a person so nominated by the authority;
- and the person so appointed shall be employed by the governing body under a contract of employment.
- (2) If the governing body are unable to agree on a person to appoint to the post, they may repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b), with or without first re-advertising the vacancy in accordance with paragraph 14(2).
- (3) A person shall not be appointed under this paragraph unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- 16 (1) The governing body may, in connection with any absence of the person for the time being holding any such post as is mentioned in paragraph 10—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) engage, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the engagement of,
- a person to provide his services as a teacher at the school otherwise than under a contract of employment.
- (2) No person shall be engaged under sub-paragraph (1) unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements applicable in relation to a teacher in the post in which he would be acting as a temporary teacher.
- 17 The governing body may, in relation to a particular vacancy or absence or a vacancy or absence of a kind specified by them, delegate any of their functions under paragraphs 11 to 16—
- (a) to one or more governors,
  - (b) to the head teacher, or
  - (c) to one or more governors and the head teacher acting together.

*Advice of chief education officer on appointments of teachers*

- 18 (1) The chief education officer shall be entitled to attend, for the purpose of giving advice—
- (a) all proceedings (including interviews) of the governing body, and of any selection panel appointed under paragraph 7, relating to appointments or engagements to which any of the provisions of paragraphs 4 to 9 or 29 and 30 apply, and
  - (b) all proceedings (including interviews) of the governing body, and of any persons to whom any functions of the governing body under paragraphs 11 to 16 are delegated, relating to appointments or engagements to which any of the provisions of paragraphs 11 to 16 apply.
- (2) The chief education officer shall be entitled to offer such advice as he considers appropriate with respect to—
- (a) the appointment of a head teacher or deputy head teacher or the appointment or engagement of an acting head teacher or an acting deputy head teacher, or
  - (b) any matter arising in connection with any such appointment or engagement.
- (3) Any advice given by the chief education officer to—
- (a) the governing body,
  - (b) any selection panel appointed under paragraph 7, or
  - (c) any persons to whom any functions of the governing body under paragraphs 11 to 16 are delegated,
- with respect to any matter which relates to an appointment or engagement and falls to be determined by them shall be considered by them before determining that matter, whether or not the advice was given at their request.
- (4) This paragraph has effect subject to paragraph 2(3) and (4).

*Advice of head teacher on appointments etc. of teachers*

- 19 (1) Except in relation to the appointment of a head teacher—
- (a) paragraph 18(1) applies in relation to the head teacher (if not otherwise entitled to be present at the proceedings there mentioned) as it applies in relation to the chief education officer, and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) paragraph 18(3) applies in relation to advice given by the head teacher as it applies in relation to advice given by the chief education officer.
- (2) Paragraph 18 shall have effect for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above as if sub-paragraph (4) of that paragraph were omitted.

#### *Appointment of non-teaching staff*

- 20
- (1) Except in a case where the governing body and the authority agree that the appointment of a person to work in a non-teaching post at the school should be made by the authority—
    - (a) any such appointment shall be made by the governing body; and
    - (b) the person appointed shall be employed by the governing body under a contract of employment on such terms as they think fit.
  - (2) Before making an appointment under this paragraph the governing body shall consult the head teacher (where he would not otherwise be involved in the decision to make the appointment).
  - (3) No person shall be appointed to work in a non-teaching post at the school, whether—
    - (a) by the governing body, or
    - (b) by the authority,unless he meets all the staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.

#### *Conduct and discipline of staff*

- 21
- (1) The regulation of conduct and discipline in relation to the staff of the school, and any procedures for giving members of the staff opportunities for seeking redress of any grievances relating to their employment, shall be under the control of the governing body.
  - (2) The governing body shall establish—
    - (a) disciplinary rules and procedures (including such rules and procedures for dealing with lack of capability on the part of members of the staff), and
    - (b) procedures such as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (1);and shall take such steps as appear to the governing body to be appropriate for making them known to members of the staff.
  - (3) In determining the capability of members of the staff the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
  - (4) If the Secretary of State determines that any prescribed rules and procedures are to apply to the school or to any class or description of school to which the school belongs—
    - (a) the governing body shall act in accordance with those rules and procedures in determining the capability of members of the staff; and
    - (b) in the event of any inconsistency, those rules and procedures shall prevail over any rules and procedures established by the governing body under sub-paragraph (2)(a).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *LEA report on performance of head teacher*

- 22 (1) Where the authority have any serious concerns about the performance of the head teacher of the school—
- (a) they shall make a written report of their concerns to the chairman of the governing body at the same time sending a copy to the head teacher; and
  - (b) the chairman of the governing body shall notify the authority in writing of the action which he proposes to take in the light of the report.
- (2) In determining whether to make a report under this paragraph the authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

### *Suspension*

- 23 (1) Both the governing body and the head teacher shall have power to suspend any person employed to work at the school (whether or not he is employed by the governing body) where, in the opinion of the governing body or (as the case may be) the head teacher, his exclusion from the school is required.
- (2) The governing body or head teacher shall, when exercising that power, immediately inform the head teacher or (as the case may be) governing body.
- (3) A suspension under this paragraph may only be ended by the governing body.
- (4) The governing body shall, on ending such a suspension, immediately inform the head teacher.
- (5) In this paragraph “suspend” means suspend without loss of emoluments.

### *Dismissal*

- 24 (1) Before making a decision that a person employed to work at the school should have his contract of employment with the governing body terminated or should not have that contract renewed, the governing body shall—
- (a) make arrangements for giving that person an opportunity of making representations as to the action they propose to take (including, if he so wishes, oral representations to such person or persons as the governing body may appoint for the purpose), and
  - (b) have regard to any representations made by him.
- (2) The governing body shall also make arrangements for giving any person in respect of whom they have made such a decision an opportunity of appealing against the decision before they give effect to it.
- (3) Where their decision is that a person should have his contract of employment terminated, then, subject to any such appeal, the governing body shall give effect to their decision by—
- (a) giving the person in question such notice terminating his contract of employment as is required under that contract;
  - (b) terminating that contract without notice if the circumstances are such that they are entitled to do so by reason of his conduct.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph shall be read as referring to a person who—
- (a) is due to cease to work at the school by reason of the termination of his contract of employment by effluxion of time; and



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) has not been continuously employed at the school [<sup>F210</sup>, within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, for a period at least as long as the period for the time being specified in section 108(1) of that Act (unfair dismissal: qualifying period)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F210** Words in Sch. 17 para. 24(4)(b) substituted (25.10.1999) by 1999 c. 26, s. 40(2); S.I. 1999/2830, art. 2(1)(2), Sch. 1 Pt.I

- 25 (1) The head teacher (except where he is the person concerned) and the chief education officer of the local education authority shall be entitled to attend, for the purpose of giving advice, all proceedings of the governing body relating to such a decision as is mentioned in paragraph 24(1).
- (2) The governing body shall consider any advice given by a person who is entitled to attend such proceedings under this paragraph before making any such decision.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (1), so far as relating to the chief education officer, has effect subject to paragraph 2(3) and (4).
- 26 The governing body are not required to comply with paragraph 24 in relation to the making of such a decision as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph in a case where—
- (a) the termination or non-renewal of the contract of employment of the person in question is required by virtue of regulations under section 218 of the <sup>M109</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 or section 19 of the <sup>M110</sup>Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998, or
- (b) the person in question is a teacher who is subject to a conditional registration, suspension or prohibition order made under Schedule 2 to the 1998 Act (disciplinary powers of General Teaching Council).

#### Marginal Citations

**M109** 1988 c. 40.

**M110** 1998 c. 30.

#### *Staff employed by LEA*

- 27 (1) Nothing in paragraph 24 applies in relation to a person employed by the authority to work at the school.
- (2) Paragraphs 25 to 29 of Schedule 16 apply in relation to the dismissal or withdrawal from the school of any member of the staff who is employed by the authority as they apply in relation to the dismissal or withdrawal from a school to which that Schedule applies of a person who is employed to work at the school.
- (3) Any regulations in force under paragraph 30 of that Schedule shall apply to any person who is, or is to be, employed by the authority to work at the school solely in connection with the provision of meals as if it were a school to which that Schedule applies.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I48** Sch. 17 para. 27 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 17 para. 27 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 17 para. 27(1) in force at 1.2.1999 by S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(1), Sch. 1; Sch. 17 para. 27 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

### *Advisory rights for appropriate diocesan authorities*

- 28 (1) This paragraph applies to a voluntary aided or foundation school which is a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school.
- (2) If the school is a voluntary aided school, the appropriate diocesan officer shall have the same advisory rights in relation to the appointment, engagement or dismissal of teachers at the school as are for the time being exercisable by the chief education officer in accordance with paragraph 2(3).
- (3) If the school is a foundation school, the governing body may agree with the appropriate diocesan authority to accord to the appropriate diocesan officer—
- (a) with respect to all teachers at the school, or
  - (b) with respect to any particular description of such teachers,
- the same advisory rights in relation to their appointment, engagement or dismissal as are exercisable by the chief education officer in accordance with paragraph 2(3).
- (4) The agreement of the governing body for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) must be given in writing and may only be withdrawn by notice in writing to the appropriate diocesan authority.
- (5) In paragraphs 18 and 25, as they apply to a school within sub-paragraph (2) or (3) above, references to the chief education officer accordingly include the appropriate diocesan officer, so far as necessary for giving effect to any advisory rights exercisable by him under this paragraph.
- (6) In this paragraph “the appropriate diocesan officer” means such person as the appropriate diocesan authority may nominate.

### *Appointment of head teachers for schools of Roman Catholic religious orders*

- 29 (1) This paragraph applies to a voluntary aided school if the trustees under a trust deed relating to the school are also the trustees of a Roman Catholic religious order.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (6), sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) shall have effect in relation to the filling of a vacancy in the post of head teacher of the school, in place of paragraphs 6 to 8.
- (3) The governing body shall notify the Major Superior of the vacancy in writing.
- (4) The governing body shall—
- (a) interview such persons who are members of the order as are proposed as candidates for appointment to the post by the Major Superior; and
  - (b) appoint to the post one of the persons so interviewed by them unless, by virtue of sub-paragraph (5) or otherwise, they have good reason for not making any such appointment.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) No person shall be appointed under sub-paragraph (4)(b) if he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (6) If no appointment is made by the governing body under sub-paragraph (4)(b), paragraphs 6 to 8 shall have effect in relation to the filling of the vacancy.
- (7) In this paragraph—
  - “the Major Superior” means the Major Superior of the order;
  - “the order” means the order mentioned in sub-paragraph (1);
  - “Roman Catholic religious order” means a Roman Catholic religious institute or society of apostolic life.

*Selection procedures involving whole governing body*

- 30 (1) If the governing body of a voluntary aided school so determine (and paragraph 29 does not apply), sub-paragraphs (2) to (6) below shall apply in relation to the filling of a vacancy in the post of head teacher or deputy head teacher of the school, in place of paragraphs 7 and 8.
- (2) No selection panel need be appointed by the governing body under paragraph 7(1), but the following provisions, namely—
  - (a) paragraph 7(2)(a) and (b),
  - (b) paragraph 7(3), and
  - (c) paragraph 7(6),
 shall apply to the governing body or (as the case may be) to any decision of that body taken by virtue of this paragraph as it applies to a selection panel or (as the case may be) to any decision of such a panel taken under paragraph 7.
- (3) If, within the period of 14 days beginning with the date when they receive a notification under paragraph 7(2)(a) (as it applies in accordance with sub-paragraph (2) above) the local education authority make written representations to the governing body that any of the applicants selected by them is not a suitable person for appointment to the post of head teacher, the governing body shall not appoint that person unless they have—
  - (a) considered those representations, and
  - (b) notified the authority of their response to the representations.
- (4) The governing body shall not appoint any person if he does not meet any staff qualification requirements which are applicable in relation to his appointment.
- (5) If the governing body do not appoint any person interviewed by them, the governing body—
  - (a) may, if they think fit, re-advertise the vacancy in the manner required by paragraph 6, and
  - (b) whether or not they re-advertise the vacancy, may repeat the steps mentioned in paragraph 7(2)(a) and (b) (as they apply in accordance with sub-paragraph (2) above).
- (6) Paragraph 7(7) shall apply for the purposes of this paragraph.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 18

Section 67.

### APPEALS AGAINST EXCLUSION OF PUPILS

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C199** Sch. 18 restricted (18.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 4, **Sch. 6 para. 1**

**C200** Sch. 18: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (24.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 52(8)(9), 216** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**)

**C201** Sch. 18 applied (with modifications) (E.) (4.11.2002) **The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Appeals Against Permanent Exclusion) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2550), reg. 6, Sch.**

#### *Time limits and notices waiving right to appeal*

- 1
- (1) No appeal under section 67(1) against a decision not to reinstate a pupil may be made after the 15th school day after the day on which the relevant person is given notice in writing under section 66(6)(b).
  - (2) Any notice in writing given by the relevant person to the local education authority which states that he does not intend to appeal against a decision not to reinstate the pupil shall be final.

#### *Constitution of appeal panels*

- 2
- (1) An appeal pursuant to arrangements made by a local education authority under section 67(1) shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with this paragraph.
  - (2) An appeal panel shall consist of three or five members appointed by the authority from—
    - (a) persons who are eligible to be lay members; and
    - (b) persons who have experience in education, are acquainted with educational conditions in the area of the authority or are parents of registered pupils at a school.
  - (3) Of the members of an appeal panel—
    - (a) at least one must be a person who is eligible to be a lay member and is appointed as such; and
    - (b) at least one must be a person falling within sub-paragraph (2)(b).
  - (4) For the purposes of this paragraph a person is eligible to be a lay member if he is a person without personal experience in the management of any school or the provision of education in any school (disregarding any such experience as a governor or in any other voluntary capacity).
  - (5) Sufficient persons may be appointed by the authority under this paragraph to enable two or more appeal panels to sit at the same time.
  - (6) No person shall be a member of an appeal panel if he is disqualified by virtue of sub-paragraph (7).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) The following persons are disqualified for membership of an appeal panel—
- (a) any member of the authority or of the governing body of the school in question;
  - (b) any person employed by the authority or the governing body, other than a person employed as a teacher;
  - (c) any person who has, or at any time has had, any connection with—
    - (i) the authority or the school, or with any person within paragraph (b),  
or
    - (ii) the pupil in question or the incident leading to his exclusion,  
of a kind which might reasonably be taken to raise doubts about his ability to act impartially in relation to the authority, the school or the pupil in question.
- (8) A person employed by the authority as a teacher shall not be taken, by reason only of that employment, to have such a connection with the authority as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (7)(c).
- (9) Where, at any time after an appeal panel consisting of five members have begun to consider an appeal, any of the members—
- (a) dies, or
  - (b) becomes unable through illness to continue as a member,
- the panel may continue with their consideration and determination of the appeal so long as the number of the remaining members is not less than three and the requirements of sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.

#### *Allowances for members*

- 3 (1) For the purpose of the payment of financial loss allowance under section 173(4) of the <sup>M111</sup>Local Government Act 1972, that provision shall apply, with any necessary modifications, to any member of an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 as it applies to any member of a parish or community council; and such an appeal panel shall be included in the bodies to which section 174 of that Act (travelling and subsistence allowances) applies.
- (2) In section 174(1) of that Act, in its application to a panel in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), the reference to payments at rates determined by the body in question shall be read as a reference to payments at rates determined by the local education authority.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M111** 1972 c. 70.

#### *Duty to advertise for lay members*

- 4 Regulations may require any local education authority who are required by section 67(1) to make arrangements under that provision—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

*Changes to legislation: School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) to advertise, in such manner and at such times as may be prescribed, for persons eligible to be lay members of any appeal panel required to be constituted for the purposes of such arrangements to apply to the authority for appointment as such members, and
- (b) in appointing persons as such members, to consider any persons eligible to be so appointed who have applied to the authority in response to an advertisement placed in pursuance of sub-paragraph (a) above.

#### *Indemnity*

- 5 Any local education authority required to make arrangements under section 67(1) shall indemnify the members of any appeal panel required to be constituted for the purposes of those arrangements against any reasonable legal costs and expenses reasonably incurred by those members in connection with any decision or action taken by them in good faith in pursuance of their functions as members of that panel.

#### *Procedure on an appeal*

- 6 In the following provisions of this Schedule “appeal” means an appeal under section 67(1).
- 7 An appeal shall be by notice in writing setting out the grounds on which it is made.
- 8 (1) The appeal panel shall meet to consider an appeal on such date as the local education authority may determine.
- (2) [<sup>F211</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (3),]the date so determined must not be later than the closing date for appeals, namely the 15th school day after the day on which the appeal is lodged.
- [<sup>F212</sup>(3) If the relevant person requests the local education authority to do so, they may in exceptional circumstances determine under sub-paragraph (1) a date later than the closing date for appeals.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F211** Words in Sch. 18 para. 8(2) omitted (E.) (7.6.2001) by S.I. 2001/2086, art. 2(2)(a) (with art 3(1))

**F212** Sch. 18 para. 8(3) omitted (E.) (7.6.2001) by S.I. 2001/2086, art. 2(2)(b) (with art. 3(2))

- 9 (1) For the purpose of fixing the time (in accordance with paragraph 8) at which the hearing of an appeal is to take place, the local education authority shall take reasonable steps to ascertain any times falling on or before the closing date for appeals when—
- (a) the relevant person, or
  - (b) any other person who wishes, and would be entitled, to appear and make oral representations in accordance with paragraph 10,

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

would be unable to attend.

- (2) Where in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) the authority have ascertained any such times in the case of any such person, they shall, when fixing the time at which the hearing is to take place, take those times into account with a view to ensuring, so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so, that that person is able to appear and make such representations at the hearing.
- 10 (1) The appeal panel shall give the relevant person an opportunity of appearing and making oral representations, and shall allow him to be represented or to be accompanied by a friend.
- (2) The panel shall also allow—
- (a) the head teacher to make written representations and to appear and make oral representations,
  - (b) the local education authority and the governing body to make written representations,
  - (c) an officer of the authority nominated by the authority, and a governor nominated by the governing body, to appear and make oral representations, and
  - (d) the governing body to be represented.
- [<sup>F213</sup>(3) The appeal panel may from time to time adjourn the hearing.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F213** Sch. 18 para. 10(3) inserted (E.) (7.6.2001) by S.I. 2001/2086, art. 2(3)

- 11 Appeals shall be heard in private except when the local education authority direct otherwise; but—
- (a) if the panel so direct, one member of the local education authority may attend, as an observer, any hearing of an appeal by an appeal panel; and
  - (b) one member of the Council on Tribunals may attend, as an observer, any meeting of an appeal panel at which an appeal is considered.
- 12 Two or more appeals may be combined and dealt with in the same proceedings if the appeal panel consider that it is expedient to do so because the issues raised by the appeals are the same or connected.
- 13 In the event of a disagreement between the members of an appeal panel, the appeal under consideration shall be decided by a simple majority of the votes cast and, in the case of an equality of votes, the chairman of the panel shall have a second or casting vote.
- 14 The decision of an appeal panel and the grounds on which it is made shall—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) be communicated by the panel in writing to the relevant person, the local education authority, the governing body and the head teacher, and
  - (b) be so communicated by the end of the second school day after the conclusion of the hearing of the appeal.
- 15 (1) Subject to paragraphs 7 to 14, all matters relating to the procedure on appeals shall be determined by the local education authority.
- (2) The local education authority shall, in setting any time limits in connection with appeals, have regard to the desirability of securing that appeals are disposed of without delay.

#### *Notices*

- 16 (1) Where in accordance with section 66(6)(b) notice in writing is required to be given to a person, the notice may be given either—
- (a) by delivering it to the person’s last-known address, or
  - (b) by properly addressing, pre-paying and sending by first class post to the person’s last-known address a letter containing the notice.
- (2) For the purposes of calculating the period referred to in paragraph 1(1), a notice shall be taken to have been given—
- (a) where first class post is used, on the second school day after the date of posting, or
  - (b) where the notice is delivered, on the date of delivery,
- unless (in either case) the contrary is shown.

#### *Meaning of “the relevant person”*

- 17 In this Schedule “the relevant person” means—
- (a) in relation to a pupil under the age of 18, a parent of his;
  - (b) in relation to a pupil who has attained that age, the pupil himself.

#### *Power of Secretary of State to make amendments*

- 18 The Secretary of State may by order make such amendments of this Schedule as he considers expedient.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 19

Section 69.

### REQUIRED PROVISION FOR RELIGIOUS EDUCATION

#### *Introductory*

- 1 (1) In this Schedule “the required provision for religious education”, in relation to a school, means the provision for pupils at the school which is required by [<sup>F214</sup>section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002] to be included in the school’s basic curriculum.
- (2) In this Schedule “agreed syllabus” has the meaning given by section 375(2) of [<sup>F215</sup>the Education Act 1996].

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F214** Words in [Sch. 19 para. 1\(1\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes and 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 215\(1\), 216](#), [Sch. 21 para. 117\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#)); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#) [Sch. Pt. I](#); [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

**F215** Words in [Sch. 19 para. 1\(2\)](#) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. and 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 215\(1\), 216](#), [Sch. 21 para. 117\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#)); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#); [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

#### *Community schools and foundation and voluntary schools without a religious character*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies to—
  - (a) any community school; and
  - (b) any foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), the required provision for religious education in the case of pupils at the school is provision for religious education in accordance with an agreed syllabus adopted for the school or for those pupils.
- (3) If the school is a secondary school so situated that arrangements cannot conveniently be made for the withdrawal of pupils from it in accordance with section 71 to receive religious education elsewhere and the local education authority are satisfied—
  - (a) that the parents of any pupils at the school desire them to receive religious education in the school in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination, and
  - (b) that satisfactory arrangements have been made for the provision of such education to those pupils in the school, and for securing that the cost of providing such education to those pupils in the school will not fall to be met from the school’s budget share or otherwise by the authority,the authority shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) provide facilities for the carrying out of those arrangements.
- (4) If immediately before the appointed day the school was a grant-maintained school (within the meaning of the <sup>M112</sup>Education Act 1996), and in relation to the school or any pupils at the school the appropriate agreed syllabus as defined by section 382 of that Act was a syllabus falling within subsection (1)(c) of that section, then until—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the end of such period as the Secretary of State may by order prescribe, or
- (b) such earlier date as the governing body may determine,

the required provision for religious education in the case of the school or (as the case may be) those pupils is provision for religious education in accordance with that syllabus.

- (5) No agreed syllabus shall provide for religious education to be given to pupils at a school to which this paragraph applies by means of any catechism or formulary which is distinctive of a particular religious denomination (but this is not to be taken as prohibiting provision in such a syllabus for the study of such catechisms or formularies).

#### Commencement Information

**I49** Sch. 19 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 19 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 19 para. 2(4) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 19 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

**M112** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Foundation and voluntary controlled schools with a religious character*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies to any foundation or voluntary controlled school which has a religious character.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), the required provision for religious education in the case of pupils at the school is provision for religious education—
- (a) in accordance with any arrangements made under sub-paragraph (3), or
  - (b) subject to any such arrangements, in accordance with an agreed syllabus adopted for the school or for those pupils.
- (3) Where the parents of any pupils at the school request that they may receive religious education—
- (a) in accordance with any provisions of the trust deed relating to the school, or
  - (b) where provision for that purpose is not made by such a deed, in accordance with the tenets of the religion or religious denomination specified in relation to the school under section 69(4),
- the foundation governors shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) make arrangements for securing that such religious education is given to those pupils in the school during not more than two periods in each week.
- (4) If immediately before the appointed day the school was a grant-maintained school (within the meaning of the <sup>M113</sup>Education Act 1996), and in relation to the school or any pupils at the school the appropriate agreed syllabus as defined by section 382 of that Act was a syllabus falling within subsection (1)(c) of that section, then until—
- (a) the end of such period as the Secretary of State may by order prescribe, or
  - (b) such earlier date as the governing body may determine,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

that syllabus shall be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b) as an agreed syllabus adopted for the school or (as the case may be) those pupils.

#### Commencement Information

**I50** Sch. 19 para. 3 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 19 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 145(3); Sch. 19 para. 3(4) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 19 para. 3 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

**M113** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Voluntary aided schools with a religious character*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies to any voluntary aided school which has a religious character.
- (2) The required provision for religious education in the case of pupils at the school is provision for religious education—
- (a) in accordance with any provisions of the trust deed relating to the school, or
  - (b) where provision for that purpose is not made by such a deed, in accordance with the tenets of the religion or religious denomination specified in relation to the school under section 69(4), or
  - (c) in accordance with any arrangements made under sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) Where the parents of any pupils at the school—
- (a) desire them to receive religious education in accordance with any agreed syllabus adopted by the local education authority, and
  - (b) cannot with reasonable convenience cause those pupils to attend a school at which that syllabus is in use,
- the governing body shall (unless they are satisfied that because of any special circumstances it would be unreasonable to do so) make arrangements for religious education in accordance with that syllabus to be given to those pupils in the school.
- (4) Religious education under any such arrangements shall be given during the times set apart for the giving of religious education in the school in accordance with the provision for that purpose included in the school's basic curriculum by virtue of [F216section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002].
- (5) Any arrangements under sub-paragraph (3) shall be made by the governing body, unless the local education authority are satisfied that the governing body are unwilling to make them, in which case they shall be made by the authority.
- (6) Subject to sub-paragraph (3), the religious education given to pupils at the school shall be under the control of the governing body.

#### Textual Amendments

**F216** Words in Sch. 19 para. 4(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for specified purposes and 19.12.2002 for W., 1.3.2003 for E. so far as not already in force) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, Sch. 21

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**para. 117(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with Sch.); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I; S.I. 2003/124, art. 2

## SCHEDULE 20

Section 70.

### COLLECTIVE WORSHIP

#### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule “the required collective worship”, in relation to a school, means the collective worship in that school which is required by section 70.

#### *General provisions as to collective worship*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies to any community, foundation or voluntary school.
- (2) The arrangements for the required collective worship may, in respect of each school day, provide for a single act of worship for all pupils or for separate acts of worship for pupils in different age groups or in different school groups.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) a “school group” is any group in which pupils are taught or take part in other school activities.
- (4) Subject to sub-paragraph (6), the arrangements for the required collective worship shall be made—
- (a) if the school is a community school or a foundation school which does not have a religious character, by the head teacher after consulting the governing body;
  - (b) if the school is a foundation school which has a religious character or a voluntary school, by the governing body after consulting the head teacher.
- (5) Subject to sub-paragraph (6), the required collective worship shall take place on the school premises.
- (6) If the governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school are of the opinion that it is desirable that any act of collective worship in the school required by section 70 should, on a special occasion, take place elsewhere than on the school premises, they may, after consultation with the head teacher, make such arrangements for that purpose as they think appropriate.
- (7) The powers of a governing body under sub-paragraph (6) shall not be exercised so as to derogate from the rule that the required collective worship must normally take place on the school premises.

#### *Nature of collective worship in community schools and foundation schools without a religious character*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) any community school; and
  - (b) any foundation school which does not have a religious character.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Subject to paragraph 4, the required collective worship shall be wholly or mainly of a broadly Christian character.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), collective worship is of a broadly Christian character if it reflects the broad traditions of Christian belief without being distinctive of any particular Christian denomination.
- (4) Not every act of collective worship in the school required by section 70 need comply with sub-paragraph (2) provided that, taking any school term as a whole, most such acts which take place in the school do comply with that sub-paragraph.
- (5) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (4)—
  - (a) the extent to which (if at all) any acts of collective worship required by section 70 which do not comply with sub-paragraph (2) take place in the school,
  - (b) the extent to which any act of collective worship in the school which complies with sub-paragraph (2) reflects the broad traditions of Christian belief, and
  - (c) the ways in which those traditions are reflected in any such act of collective worship,shall be such as may be appropriate having regard to any relevant considerations relating to the pupils concerned which fall to be taken into account in accordance with sub-paragraph (6).
- (6) Those considerations are—
  - (a) any circumstances relating to the family backgrounds of the pupils which are relevant for determining the character of the collective worship which is appropriate in their case, and
  - (b) their ages and aptitudes.
- (7) In this paragraph references to acts of collective worship in the school include such acts which by virtue of paragraph 2(6) take place otherwise than on the school premises.

*Disapplication of requirement under paragraph 3(2)*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies where a standing advisory council on religious education have determined (under section 394 of the <sup>M114</sup>Education Act 1996) that it is not appropriate for the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) to apply in the case of any school to which paragraph 3 applies or in the case of any class or description of pupils at any such school.
- (2) While the determination has effect—
  - (a) paragraph 3 shall not apply in relation to the school or (as the case may be) the pupils in question, and
  - (b) the collective worship required by section 70 in the case of the school or pupils shall not be distinctive of any particular Christian or other religious denomination;but paragraph (b) shall not be taken as preventing that worship from being distinctive of any particular faith.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

M114 1996 c. 56.

*Nature of collective worship in foundation schools  
with a religious character and voluntary schools*

- 5 In the case of a foundation school which has a religious character or a voluntary school, the required collective worship shall be—
- (a) in accordance with any provisions of the trust deed relating to the school, or
  - (b) where—
    - (i) provision for that purpose is not made by such a deed, and
    - (ii) the school has a religious character,
 in accordance with the tenets and practices of the religion or religious denomination specified in relation to the school under section 69(4).

SCHEDULE 21

Section 74.

TRANSFERS OF LAND ON APPOINTED DAY

**PART I**

GENERAL PROVISIONS

*Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule any reference to a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school is a reference to such a school within the meaning of the <sup>M115</sup>Education Act 1996.

**Marginal Citations**

M115 1996 c. 56.

*Effect of transfers under this Schedule*

- 2 (1) Where any land is transferred to and vests in any body in accordance with this Schedule, any rights or liabilities—
- (a) enjoyed or incurred by the transferor in connection with the land, and
  - (b) subsisting immediately before the appointed day,
- shall also be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, that body.
- (2) Any reference in this Schedule, in relation to a school, to land being transferred to, and vesting in, a foundation body is a reference to its being transferred to, and vesting in, that body for the purposes of the schools comprising the group for which that body acts.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) This Schedule is subject to section 198 of the <sup>M116</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (which with Schedule 10 to that Act makes further provision in relation to transfers of property, rights and liabilities), and references in that Schedule as applied by virtue of this sub-paragraph to the transfer date are to the appointed day.

#### Marginal Citations

M116 1988 c. 40.

## PART II

### RULES RELATING TO TRANSFERS

#### *Application of Part II*

- 3 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies to schools which, in accordance with Schedule 2, become community, foundation, voluntary or community special schools on the appointed day.
- (2) This Part has effect subject to Part III of this Schedule.

#### *Transfers for purposes of community schools*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies where a grant-maintained school (an “existing school”) becomes a community school.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) any publicly funded land shall on the appointed day be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the local education authority;
  - (b) any other land which, immediately before that day, is held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school shall be transferred to, and vest in, the authority in accordance with a transfer agreement; and
  - (c) any land which, immediately before that day, is held by any trustees for the purposes of the existing school shall be transferred to, and vest in, the authority in accordance with a transfer agreement.
- (3) In this paragraph “publicly funded land” means land which—
- (a) immediately before the appointed day is held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school, and
  - (b) was acquired from a local authority under a transfer under section 201(1) (a) of the <sup>M117</sup>Education Act 1996 or from the Funding Agency for Schools or was acquired wholly by means of any maintenance, special purpose or capital grant (within the meaning of Chapter VI of Part III of that Act).
- (4) In this paragraph “transfer agreement” means an agreement—
- (a) made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) between the local education authority and the governing body or (as the case may be) trustees mentioned in that sub-paragraph, and
  - (b) providing for the land in question to be transferred to, and vest in, the authority on the appointed day, whether or not in consideration of the

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

payment by the authority of such amount as may be agreed between the parties.

#### Marginal Citations

M117 1996 c. 56.

#### *Transfers for purposes of foundation schools*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) a grant-maintained school (an “existing school”) becomes a foundation school; and
  - (b) as from the appointed day the school (as a foundation school) is a member of the group for which a foundation body acts.
- (2) In such a case, any land which, immediately before the appointed day, was held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school shall on that day be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the foundation body.

#### *Transfers for purposes of voluntary schools*

- 6 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) a grant-maintained school (an “existing school”) becomes a voluntary school; and
  - (b) as from the appointed day the school (as a voluntary school) is a member of the group for which a foundation body acts.
- (2) In such a case, any land which, immediately before the appointed day, was held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school shall on that day be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the foundation body.

#### *Transfers for purposes of community special schools*

- 7 (1) This paragraph applies where a grant-maintained special school (an “existing school”) becomes a community special school.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) any publicly funded land shall on the appointed day be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the local education authority;
  - (b) any other land which, immediately before that day, is held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school shall be transferred to, and vest in, the authority in accordance with a transfer agreement; and
  - (c) any land which, immediately before that day, is held by any trustees for the purposes of the existing school shall be transferred to, and vest in, the authority in accordance with a transfer agreement.
- (3) In this paragraph “publicly funded land” means land which—
- (a) immediately before the appointed day is held by the governing body for the purposes of the existing school, and
  - (b) was acquired from a local authority under a transfer under section 201(1) (a) of the <sup>M118</sup>Education Act 1996 or from the Funding Agency for Schools



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

or was acquired wholly by means of any maintenance, special purpose or capital grant (within the meaning of Chapter VI of Part III of that Act).

- (4) In this paragraph “transfer agreement” means an agreement—
- (a) made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) between the local education authority and the governing body or (as the case may be) the trustees mentioned in that sub-paragraph, and
  - (b) providing for the land in question to be transferred to, and vest in, the authority on the appointed day, whether or not in consideration of the payment by the authority of such amount as may be agreed between the parties.

#### Marginal Citations

M118 1996 c. 56.

#### *Outstanding transfers to existing school*

- 8 Where immediately before the appointed day—
- (a) any land vested in a local authority is by virtue of any statutory provision required to be transferred to the governing body or any trustees of an existing school within the meaning of any of paragraphs 4 to 7, but
  - (b) the land has not yet been so transferred,
- that paragraph shall apply to the school as if it had been so transferred by that time.

#### *Transfer of rights to use land*

- 9 (1) Where paragraph 4, 5, 6 or 7 applies to an existing school and any land held by a person or body other than the governing body of the school was, immediately before the appointed day, used for the purposes of the school, any rights or liabilities—
- (a) enjoyed or incurred by the governing body in connection with the use of the land, and
  - (b) subsisting immediately before the appointed day,
- shall on that day be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, the local education authority (in a case to which paragraph 4 or 7 applies) or the foundation body (in a case to which paragraph 5 or 6 applies).
- (2) Where paragraph 4 or 7 applies to an existing school and any land held by a person or body other than any trustees who hold any land for the purposes of the school was, immediately before the appointed day, used for the purposes of the school, any rights or liabilities—
- (a) enjoyed or incurred by any such trustees in connection with the use of the land, and
  - (b) subsisting immediately before the appointed day,
- shall on that day be transferred to, and vest in, the local education authority in accordance with a transfer agreement.
- (3) Nothing in this paragraph applies in relation to land to which paragraph 4, 5, 6 or 7 applies.
- (4) In this paragraph—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

*Changes to legislation: School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“existing school” has the meaning given by paragraph 4, 5, 6 or 7, as the case may be;

“transfer agreement” means an agreement—

- (a) made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) between the local education authority and the trustees mentioned in that sub-paragraph, and
- (b) providing for the rights or liabilities in question to be transferred to, and vest in, the authority on the appointed day, whether or not in consideration of the payment by the authority of such amount as may be agreed between the parties.

### PART III

#### PROPERTY EXCLUDED FROM TRANSFERS

- 10 (1) Nothing in Part II of this Schedule has the effect of transferring to, or vesting in, any body—
- (a) any land, rights or liabilities excluded under sub-paragraph (2) or (3),
  - (b) any rights or liabilities under a contract of employment,
  - (c) any liability of a governing body in respect of the principal of, or any interest on, any loan,
  - (d) any liability in tort, or
  - (e) any rights or liabilities which are determined in accordance with regulations to be rights or liabilities falling within this paragraph.
- (2) If before the appointed day—
- (a) the prospective transferee and transferor have agreed in writing that any land should be excluded from the operation of Part II of this Schedule, and
  - (b) the Secretary of State has given his written approval of the agreement,
- the land (and any rights or liabilities relating to it) shall be so excluded.
- (3) If in default of agreement under sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) the prospective transferee or transferor have applied to the Secretary of State to exclude any land from the operation of Part II of this Schedule, and
  - (b) the Secretary of State has by order directed its exclusion,
- the land (and any rights or liabilities relating to it) shall be so excluded.
- (4) An agreement under sub-paragraph (2) may provide for the land to be used or held for the purposes of the school (as a school of a new category) on such terms as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the agreement; and directions under sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) may confer any rights or impose any liabilities that could have been conferred or imposed by such an agreement, and
  - (b) shall have effect as if contained in such an agreement.
- (5) In this paragraph—
- “new category” means one of the categories set out in section 20(1);
  - “the prospective transferee”, in relation to any land, means the body to whom, apart from sub-paragraph (2) or (3), the land would fall to be transferred under Part II of this Schedule; and
  - “the prospective transferor” shall be construed accordingly.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 22

Section 76.

## DISPOSALS OF LAND IN CASE OF CERTAIN SCHOOLS AND DISPOSALS ON DISCONTINUANCE

## PART I

## FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS: DISPOSALS OF LAND

*Disposal of land by governing body of foundation, voluntary or foundation special school*

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies to any disposal by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school of—
- (a) any land acquired under a transfer under section 201(1)(a) of the <sup>M119</sup>Education Act 1996, or acquired under paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 16 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 5(4)(c) of this Schedule or under any regulations made under paragraph 5 of Schedule 8;
  - (b) any land acquired from a foundation body;
  - (c) any land acquired from the Funding Agency for Schools;
  - (d) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of any maintenance, special purpose or capital grant (within the meaning of Chapter VI of Part III of the <sup>M120</sup>Education Act 1996);
  - (e) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of expenditure incurred for the purposes of the school and treated by the local education authority as expenditure of a capital nature; or
  - (f) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly with the proceeds of disposal of any land acquired or enhanced in value as mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (e).
- (2) The governing body shall not make any such disposal without the written consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where the governing body apply to the Secretary of State for his consent to any such disposal, he may do one or more of the following, namely—
- (a) require the land or any part of the land to be transferred to such local authority as he may specify, subject to the payment by that authority of such sum by way of consideration (if any) as he determines to be appropriate; and
  - (b) give the governing body, when the land or any part of the land is disposed of—
    - (i) a direction to pay, either to him or to such local authority as he may specify, the whole or any part of the proceeds of disposal; and
    - (ii) a direction as to the use to which the whole or any part of the proceeds of disposal should be put.
- (4) More than one direction may be given under sub-paragraph (3)(b)(i) in relation to a disposal of land within sub-paragraph (1) where it is just to do so, in particular where the disposal involves the creation of a lease.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1)(e) shall not apply in the case of any expenditure incurred on or after the appointed day unless the authority—
- (a) prepared a statement in writing—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) containing details of the amount of the expenditure, the acquisition or works funded (or to be funded) by such expenditure, and the total cost (or estimated total cost) of that acquisition or those works, and
- (ii) indicating that the expenditure was being treated by them as expenditure of a capital nature; and
- (b) sent a copy of the statement to the governing body either before, or no later than 12 months after, the expenditure was incurred.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M119** 1996 c. 56.

**M120** 1996 c. 56.

### *Disposal of land by foundation body*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies to any disposal by a foundation body of—
- (a) any land acquired under paragraph 2, 4 or 9 of Schedule 3, paragraph 16 or 20 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 5 or 6 of Schedule 21 or under any regulations made under paragraph 5 of Schedule 8;
  - (b) any land acquired from the governing body of a maintained school;
  - (c) any land acquired from another foundation body;
  - (d) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of any grant provided by the Secretary of State on or after the appointed day;
  - (e) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of expenditure incurred for the purposes of any of the schools comprising the group for which the body acts and treated by the local education authority as expenditure of a capital nature; or
  - (f) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly with the proceeds of disposal of any land acquired or enhanced in value as mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (e).
- (2) The foundation body shall not make any such disposal without the written consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where the foundation body apply to the Secretary of State for his consent to any such disposal, he may do either or both of the following, namely—
- (a) make any such requirement as is mentioned in paragraph 1(3)(a); and
  - (b) give any such direction to the foundation body as he could give to a governing body under paragraph 1(3)(b).
- (4) More than one direction may be given under sub-paragraph (3)(b) to make a payment in relation to the proceeds of disposal of land within sub-paragraph (1) where it is just to do so, in particular where the disposal involves the creation of a lease.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1)(e) shall not apply in the case of any expenditure incurred on or after the appointed day unless the authority—
- (a) prepared a statement in writing—
    - (i) containing details of the amount of the expenditure, the acquisition or works funded (or to be funded) by such expenditure, and the total cost (or estimated total cost) of that acquisition or those works, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) indicating that the expenditure was being treated by them as expenditure of a capital nature; and
- (b) sent a copy of the statement to the foundation body either before, or no later than 12 months after, the expenditure was incurred.

*Disposal of land by trustees of foundation, voluntary or foundation special school*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies to any disposal by the trustees of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school of—
- (a) any land acquired under section 60, 61 or 70 of the <sup>M121</sup>Education Act 1996, under paragraph 2, 4 or 9 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 16 or 20 of Schedule 6 or under any regulations made under paragraph 5 of Schedule 8;
  - (b) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of expenditure incurred on or after the appointed day for the purposes of the school and treated by the local education authority as expenditure of a capital nature;
  - (c) any land acquired by the governing body of the school—
    - (i) under a transfer under section 201(1)(a) of the <sup>M122</sup>Education Act 1996, or
    - (ii) wholly or partly with the proceeds of disposal of any land so acquired,
 and transferred by the governing body to be held on trust by the trustees;
  - (d) any land acquired from the Funding Agency for Schools;
  - (e) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of—
    - (i) any maintenance, special purpose or capital grant (within the meaning of Chapter VI of Part III of the <sup>M123</sup>Education Act 1996), or
    - (ii) any grant paid under section 216(2) of that Act;
  - (f) any land acquired wholly or partly with the proceeds of disposal of any land acquired or enhanced in value as mentioned in paragraph (d) or (e); or
  - (g) any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of any grant made in pursuance of a special agreement (as defined by section 32(5) of the <sup>M124</sup>Education Act 1996).
- (2) If a voluntary aided school was, immediately before the appointed day, a controlled school within the meaning of the <sup>M125</sup>Education Act 1996, this paragraph also applies to any disposal by the trustees of the school of any land acquired, or enhanced in value, wholly or partly by means of expenditure incurred under section 63 or 64 of that Act.
- (3) Where paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1) or sub-paragraph (2) applies, the trustees shall notify the local education authority that that provision applies to them and they or their successors shall pay to the authority so much of the proceeds of disposal as may be determined to be just, either by agreement between them and the authority or, in default of agreement, by the Secretary of State.
- (4) In making any determination under sub-paragraph (3), the trustees and the authority, or the Secretary of State, as the case may be, shall have regard in particular to—
- (a) the value, as at the date of the determination, of the land acquired from the authority;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) any enhancement in value of the land attributable to expenditure by the local education authority, the trustees or the governing body of the school on school buildings on the land; and
  - (c) any payments already made by the trustees to the authority—
    - (i) in respect of the current school site; or
    - (ii) under section 60(4) of the <sup>M126</sup>Education Act 1996 or under paragraph 2(6) of Schedule 3 or paragraph 16(5) of Schedule 6 to this Act.
- (5) More than one determination may be made under sub-paragraph (3) in relation to a disposal of land within sub-paragraph (1) or (2) where it is just to do so, in particular where the disposal involves the creation of a lease.
- (6) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not apply in the case of any expenditure unless the authority—
- (a) prepared a statement in writing—
    - (i) containing details of the amount of the expenditure, the acquisition or works funded (or to be funded) by such expenditure, and the total cost (or estimated total cost) of that acquisition or those works, and
    - (ii) indicating that the expenditure was being treated by them as expenditure of a capital nature; and
  - (b) sent a copy of the statement to the trustees either before, or no later than 12 months after, the expenditure was incurred.
- (7) Sub-paragraph (3) does not apply in the case of land acquired under section 60 or 61 of the <sup>M127</sup>Education Act 1996 or under paragraph 2 or 4 of Schedule 3 to this Act by the trustees of an institution which is, or has at any time been, within the further education sector (as defined by section 4(3) of the <sup>M128</sup>Education Act 1996).
- (8) Where paragraph (d), (e) or (f) of sub-paragraph (1) applies, the trustees shall notify the local education authority that that paragraph applies to them and they and their successors shall (subject to sub-paragraph (9)) undertake to the authority to use the proceeds of disposal—
- (a) for the purposes of the school, or
  - (b) for the purposes—
    - (i) of any other existing foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, or
    - (ii) of any other proposed foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, whether or not proposals have yet been published under section 28 or 31 in respect of that proposed school.
- (9) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that the trustees have not given a suitable undertaking under sub-paragraph (8), the Secretary of State may direct the trustees to pay to the authority either the whole or any part of the proceeds of disposal as he determines to be just.
- (10) More than one direction may be given under sub-paragraph (9) in relation to a disposal of land within sub-paragraph (1) where it is just to do so, in particular where the disposal involves the creation of a lease.
- (11) Where paragraph (g) of sub-paragraph (1) applies, the governing body of the school shall repay the grant referred to in that paragraph to the local education authority

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

by whom the school is maintained, unless the governing body and the authority otherwise agree.

- (12) Where the trustees of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school wish, in the case of any land held by them for the purposes of the school, to use the land for purposes not connected with the provision of education in maintained schools—
- (a) the preceding provisions of this paragraph shall apply as if any such change of use of the land were a disposal of the land; and
  - (b) the value of the land as at the date of any determination under sub-paragraph (3) or of any direction under sub-paragraph (9) shall be treated as proceeds of the disposal of the land.

#### Marginal Citations

M121 1996 c. 56.

M122 1996 c. 56.

M123 1996 c. 56.

M124 1996 c. 56.

M125 1996 c. 56.

M126 1996 c. 56.

M127 1996 c. 56.

M128 1996 c. 56.

#### *Land required by local education authority for new school*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies where, on an application made by a local education authority, the Secretary of State is satisfied—
- (a) that any relevant land—
    - (i) held, or held on trust, for the purposes of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school by the governing body or the trustees of the school, or
    - (ii) held by a foundation body for the purposes of the group of schools for which it acts,
 is not required for the purposes of the school or (as the case may be) those schools; and
  - (b) that that land is required by the authority as the site for a new maintained school or as the site to which a maintained school is to be transferred.
- (2) In such a case the Secretary of State may by order require the relevant land to be transferred to the authority by the body or trustees holding the land, subject to the payment by the authority of such sum by way of consideration (if any) as he determines to be appropriate.
- (3) In this paragraph “relevant land” means land which was acquired by the governing body of the school, or (as the case may be) one of the schools, mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) under a transfer under section 201(1)(a) of the <sup>M129</sup>Education Act 1996.

#### Marginal Citations

M129 1996 c. 56.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART II

### MAINTAINED SCHOOLS: DISPOSALS ON DISCONTINUANCE

#### *Discontinuance of foundation, voluntary and foundation special schools: land*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) proposals to discontinue a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school under section 29(1) or (2), section 31(1) or (2) [<sup>F217</sup>, paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 to this Act or Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000]—
    - (i) have been approved or adopted under paragraph 3 or 8 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 8, 9 or 14 of Schedule 7, <sup>F218</sup> . . .
    - (ii) have been determined to be implemented under paragraph 4 or 9 of Schedule 6, [<sup>F219</sup> or
    - <sup>F219</sup>(iii) have been approved under Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000,]
  - (b) the Secretary of State has given a direction—
    - (i) under section 19(1) requiring a maintained school to be discontinued, or
    - (ii) under section 32(1) requiring a foundation special school to be discontinued.
- (2) The governing body of the school shall apply to the Secretary of State for him to exercise his powers under sub-paragraph (4) below in relation to any land falling within paragraphs (a) to (f) of paragraph 1(1) which is held by them for the purposes of the school.
- (3) Where the school is a member of the group for which a foundation body acts, the body shall apply to the Secretary of State for him to exercise his powers under sub-paragraph (4) below in relation to any land falling within paragraphs (a) to (f) of paragraph 2(1) which is held by it for the purposes of the schools comprising the group.
- (4) On an application under sub-paragraph (2) or (3), the Secretary of State may do one or more of the following, namely—
- (a) make any such requirement as is mentioned in paragraph 1(3)(a);
  - (b) direct the governing body or the foundation body, as the case may be, to pay, either to him or to such local authority as he may specify, the whole or any part of the value, as at the date of the direction, of the whole or any part of the land referred to in sub-paragraph (2) or (3), as the case may be; and
  - (c) in a case where the discontinuance of the school is connected with proposals under section 28 or 31 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 to establish, or to make a prescribed alteration to, any other school or schools, require the land or any part of the land to be transferred to the governing body of such maintained school or the temporary governing body of such new school as he may specify.
- (5) Where the governing body or foundation body fail to make an application as required by sub-paragraph (2) or (3), as the case may be, the Secretary of State may nevertheless make any such requirement or give any such direction as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (4).



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Where the trustees of the school—
- (a) dispose of any land falling within paragraph 3(1) or (2), or
  - (b) wish to use any such land for purposes not connected with the provision of education in maintained schools,
- paragraph 3 shall apply to them.

#### Textual Amendments

- F217** Words in **Sch. 22 Pt. II para. 5(1)(a)** substituted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 91(a)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F218** Word in **Sch. 22 Pt. II para. 5(1)(a)(i)** repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**
- F219** **Sch. 22 Pt. II para. 5(1)(a)(iii)** inserted (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 91(b)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2, **Sch. Pt. I**

#### *Discontinuance of foundation or voluntary school by notice given by its governing body: land and premises*

- 6 (1) This paragraph applies where the governing body of a foundation or voluntary school apply for the Secretary of State’s consent to serve a notice under section 30(1).
- (2) If the Secretary of State gives such consent, he may impose any requirements in relation to the governing body or, where the school is a member of the group for which a foundation body acts, the foundation body that he thinks just—
- (a) in respect of the repayment of all or part of any expenditure incurred by him as mentioned in section 30(2);
  - (b) in respect of the transfer to the local education authority of any premises used for the purposes of the school which he is satisfied the authority will need for any purpose connected with education;
  - (c) (where any premises are to be so transferred) in respect of the payment by the authority of so much of the value of those premises as is just having regard to the extent to which the premises were provided otherwise than at public expense;
  - (d) (where any premises used for the purposes of the school are not to be so transferred) in respect of the payment by the governing body or the foundation body, as the case may be, to the authority of so much of the value of those premises as is just having regard to the extent to which they were provided at public expense.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) “at public expense” means at the expense of—
- (a) the Funding Agency for Schools, or
  - (b) any local education authority or an authority within section 30(2)(d).
- (4) Where the trustees of the school—
- (a) dispose of any land falling within paragraph 3(1) or (2), or
  - (b) wish to use any such land for purposes not connected with the provision of education in maintained schools,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

paragraph 3 shall apply to them.

*Disposal of property held by governing body of maintained school on their dissolution*

- 7 (1) This paragraph applies in connection with the dissolution of the governing body of a maintained school by virtue of [F220 paragraph 5 of Schedule 1 to the Education Act 2002] .
- (2) Where a governing body are so dissolved—
- (a) all land or other property of the governing body which is used or held for the purposes of the school, and
  - (b) all rights and liabilities (including rights and liabilities in relation to staff) of the governing body subsisting immediately before the date of dissolution which were acquired or incurred for the purposes of the school,
- shall on the date of dissolution be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in—
- (i) the local education authority, or
  - (ii) one or more of the following, namely the governing body of a maintained school and the temporary governing body of a new school, if the Secretary of State so directs before the date of dissolution.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to—
- (a) any land or other property for which provision has been made for transfer or payment under paragraph 5(4) or 6(2),
  - (b) any property of whatever nature which is held by the governing body on trust for the purposes of the school, or
  - (c) unless the Secretary of State otherwise directs by order made before the date of dissolution, any liabilities of the governing body in respect of any loan made to the governing body.
- (4) Subject to sub-paragraph (5), a governing body who are to be dissolved as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) may transfer any land or other property which is held by them on trust for the purposes of the school to any person to hold such land or other property on trust for purposes connected with the provision of education in maintained schools.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (4) does not apply to any land or other property so held by the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school where any other persons also hold any property on trust for the purposes of the school; and any such land or other property shall on the date of dissolution be transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vest in, those persons.
- (6) If any doubt or dispute arises as to the persons to whom any land or other property within sub-paragraph (5) falls to be transferred under that sub-paragraph, it shall be treated as falling to be so transferred to such persons as the Secretary of State thinks proper.

**Textual Amendments**

**F220** Words in Sch. 22 Pt. II para. 7(1) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002](#) (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216, [Sch. 21 para. 118\(6\)](#) (with 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Notice by trustees terminating foundation or voluntary school's occupation of existing site*

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies where trustees have given a notice falling within section 30(10) which is effective to terminate a foundation or voluntary school's occupation of any land ("the relevant premises").
- (2) If any expenditure has been incurred on the relevant premises as mentioned in section 30(2)(a) to (d), the Secretary of State may impose any requirements that he thinks just—
- (a) in respect of the repayment by the trustees of all or part of any such expenditure which was incurred by him;
  - (b) in respect of the transfer by the trustees to the local education authority of the whole or part of the relevant premises where he is satisfied the authority will need them for any purpose connected with education;
  - (c) (to the extent that the relevant premises are to be so transferred) in respect of the payment by the authority to the trustees of so much of the value of those premises as is just having regard to the extent to which the premises were provided otherwise than at public expense;
  - (d) (to the extent that the relevant premises are not to be so transferred) in respect of the payment by the trustees to the authority of so much of the value of those premises as is just having regard to the extent to which they were provided at public expense.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) "at public expense" means at the expense of—
- (a) the Funding Agency for Schools, or
  - (b) any local education authority or an authority within section 30(2)(d).

### PART III

#### GENERAL

- 9 (1) Where a transfer under paragraph 1(3)(a), 2(3)(a), 4(2), 5(4)(a) or (c), 6(2)(b) or 8(2)(b) of this Schedule relates to registered land, it shall be the duty of the transferor—
- (a) to execute any such instrument under the Land Registration Acts 1925 to 1986,
  - (b) to deliver any such certificate under those Acts, and
  - (c) to do such other things under those Acts,
- as he would be required to execute, deliver or do in the case of a transfer by agreement between the transferor and the transferee.
- (2) Paragraphs 6 to 8 of Schedule 10 to the <sup>M130</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (construction of agreements) shall apply in relation to transfers under paragraph 7 of this Schedule as they apply in relation to transfers to which that Schedule applies.

#### Marginal Citations

M130 1988 c. 40.

- 10 (1) In this Schedule—
- (a) "the trustees", in relation to a school, means any person (other than the governing body) holding property on trust for the purposes of the school;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) “disposal” includes—
    - (i) a compulsory disposal; and
    - (ii) in the case of any premises held under a tenancy to which Part II of the <sup>M131</sup>Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 (“the 1954 Act”) applies, the termination of that tenancy under that Part of that Act;
  - (c) references to “proceeds of disposal”, in relation to a disposal of land, are references to—
    - (i) any consideration for the disposal, including rent;
    - (ii) any compensation for the disposal, including any compensation paid by the landlord on the quitting of any premises within paragraph (b) (i) by the governing body, foundation body or trustees (whether or not the compensation is required to be paid by section 37 of the 1954 Act (compensation where order for new tenancy precluded on certain grounds)); and
    - (iii) interest which has accrued in respect of any such consideration or compensation;
  - (d) “new school” has the meaning given by section 72(3).
- (2) In paragraphs (b)(ii) and (c)(ii) of sub-paragraph (1) expressions to which a meaning is given for the purposes of the 1954 Act have the same meaning as in that Act.
- (3) In paragraphs 1(1), 3(1) and 4(3) references, in relation to the governing body or trustees of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school and in relation to a time before the appointed day—
- (a) to any land being acquired in a particular way, or
  - (b) to any grant being provided in a particular way,
- are references to the land being acquired in that way by, or (as the case may be) to the grant being provided in that way to, the governing body or trustees of that school at a time when it was a voluntary, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the <sup>M132</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (4) In paragraphs 1(1) and 3(1) references, in relation to the governing body or trustees of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school and in relation to a time before the appointed day, to any expenditure being incurred for the purposes of the school are references to such expenditure being incurred for the purposes of that school at a time when it was a voluntary, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the <sup>M133</sup>Education Act 1996.
- (5) In paragraph 1(1) references, in relation to the governing body of a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school, to any land being acquired in a particular way include references to the land being acquired in that way by the temporary governing body for the school.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M131** 1954 c. 56.

**M132** 1996 c. 56.

**M133** 1996 c. 56.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## [<sup>F221</sup>PART IV

### DISPOSAL OF LAND OF A VOLUNTARY AIDED SCHOOL BY THE LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITY

#### Textual Amendments

**F221** Sch. 22 Pt. IV inserted (E.) (1.4.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding\) \(England\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/906\)](#), **art. 12** (with art. 13)

- 11 (1) In this paragraph—
- (a) “capital expenditure” has the meaning given by Article 13 of the Regulatory Reform (Voluntary Aided Schools Liabilities and Funding) (England) Order 2002, as it has effect from time to time;
  - (b) “commencement date” means the date on which that Order comes into force;
  - (c) “relevant body” means—
    - (i) the governing body of a voluntary aided school; or
    - (ii) if the school has been discontinued and the governing body dissolved, the trustees;
  - (d) “relevant land” means—
    - (i) any caretaker’s dwelling; or
    - (ii) other buildings which are not school buildings;
 which form part of the premises of a voluntary aided school.
- (2) This paragraph applies to any disposal by the local education authority of relevant land enhanced in value wholly or partly by means of capital expenditure incurred by the governing body after the commencement date.
- (3) But this paragraph shall not apply unless the relevant body gives to the local education authority no later than 12 months after the expenditure is incurred a statement—
- (a) setting out the amount of expenditure; and
  - (b) stating that it is capital expenditure.
- (4) Where this paragraph applies, the local education authority shall notify the relevant body that the provision applies to them and they shall pay to the relevant body so much of the proceeds of disposal as may be determined to be just, either by agreement between them and the relevant body or, in default of agreement, by the Secretary of State.
- (5) In making the determination under sub-paragraph (4), the relevant body and the local education authority, or the Secretary of State, as the case may be, shall have regard in particular to any enhancement in value of the relevant land attributable to expenditure by or on behalf of the governing body.
- (6) If the local education authority permit relevant land to be used for purposes not connected with the school—
- (a) they shall be treated for the purposes of this paragraph as having disposed of the land; and
  - (b) sub-paragraph (4) shall have effect as if the reference to proceeds of disposal were a reference to the value of the land.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

*Changes to legislation: School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F222</sup>SCHEDULE 23]

Section 93.

DETERMINATION, VARIATION AND REVIEW OF STANDARD NUMBERS

**Textual Amendments**

**F222** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C202** Sch. 23 modified (temp.) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, [reg. 9](#).

[<sup>F223</sup>PART I]

DETERMINATION OF STANDARD NUMBERS

**Textual Amendments**

**F223** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

*Standard numbers for admission to maintained schools*

<sup>1</sup> [<sup>F224</sup>(1) This paragraph applies to any maintained school which immediately before the appointed day was a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school (within the meaning of the <sup>M134</sup>Education Act 1996).

- (2) Subject to paragraph 2(1), the standard number applying to a school for any relevant age group in any school year beginning on or after the appointed day shall be—
- (a) in the case of a school which immediately before that day was a county or voluntary school, the standard number applying to the school under sections 417 to 420 of the <sup>M135</sup>Education Act 1996 for that age group in the last school year beginning before that day, or
  - (b) in the case of a school which immediately before that day was a grant-maintained school, the approved admission number applying to the school under sections 426 to 428 of that Act for that age group in the school year mentioned in paragraph (a).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F224** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Marginal Citations**

**M134** 1996 c. 56.

**M135** 1996 c. 56.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Standard numbers on establishment or alteration of school*

- 2
- [<sup>F225</sup>(1) If proposals under section 28 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 have fallen to be implemented in relation to a maintained school—
- (a) any number stated in the proposals as the number of pupils which it is intended to admit to the school in any relevant age group shall constitute the standard number applying to the school for that age group in any school year in relation to which the proposals have been implemented; and
  - (b) in the case of any such proposals which provide for their implementation in stages, any number stated in the proposals as the number of pupils which it is intended to admit to the school in any relevant age group at any particular stage of implementation of the proposals shall constitute the standard number applying to the school for that age group in any school year in relation to which that stage of the proposals has been implemented.
- (2) Any standard number applying under sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the application under that sub-paragraph of a new standard number if further proposals under section 28 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 fall to be implemented.
- (3) References in this paragraph to proposals under section 28 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 are to the proposals with any modifications made—
- (a) where the school is in England, by the school organisation committee or the adjudicator under paragraph 3 or 5 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 8 or 9 of Schedule 7, or
  - (b) where the school is in Wales, by the Secretary of State under paragraph 8 or 10 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 14 of Schedule 7.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F225** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C203** Sch. 23 Pt. 1 para. 2 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2666](#), reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(d), 2-8.

Sch. 23 Pt. 1 para. 2 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2800](#), reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

## [<sup>F226</sup>PART II]

### VARIATION OF STANDARD NUMBERS: ENGLAND

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F226** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

### *Application of Part II*

3

[<sup>F227</sup>This Part of this Schedule applies to schools in England.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### *Variation of standard numbers*

- 4 [F228(1) The Secretary of State may by order applying to maintained schools of any class or description vary any standard number that would otherwise apply by virtue of paragraph 1 or 2.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraphs (3) to (5), the school organisation committee or the adjudicator may make a decision varying any standard number that would otherwise apply to an individual school by virtue of paragraph 1 or 2 or by virtue of any order made under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) increasing a standard number may be made on the application of the admission authority for the school or on an application made by the governing body or local education authority in accordance with section 93(7).
- (4) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) reducing a standard number may only be made on the application of the admission authority for the school.
- (5) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) is subject to the procedure provided for in paragraphs 5 and 6.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### *Procedure for application to vary standard number*

- 5 [F229(1) Where the local education authority or the governing body intend to apply for a variation under paragraph 4(2) of any standard number applying to a school under paragraph 1, 2 or 4 for any age group in any year—
- (a) they shall publish their proposals relating to the variation in such manner, and containing such information, as may be prescribed, and
- (b) they shall send—
- (i) their application,
- (ii) a copy of the published proposals, and
- (iii) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed,
- to the school organisation committee.
- (2) Before making such an application, the local education authority or the governing body shall consult the governing body or the local education authority, as the case may be.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) shall not apply in relation to any application made by the local education authority or the governing body in accordance with section 93(7).
- (4) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under sub-paragraph (1).
- (5) Objections under sub-paragraph (4) shall be sent to the school organisation committee within such period as may be prescribed.
- (6) Where any proposals published under this paragraph relate to a school which is situated in an area other than that of the local education authority who maintain the school, the provisions of this paragraph and paragraph 6 shall have effect in relation to the proposals with such modifications as may be prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F229** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C204** Sch. 23 para. 5 modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2213, [reg. 15\(4\)](#), [Sch. 5 Pt. II para. 4](#).

#### Commencement Information

**I51** Sch. 23 para. 5 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 23 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 23 para. 5(1)(5)(6) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#); Sch. 23 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

#### *Decision on application to vary standard number*

- <sup>6</sup> [F230 (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, on an application for a decision under paragraph 4(2), the school organisation committee may—
- (a) make a decision under that provision varying the standard number to the number proposed;
  - (b) where the application is for an increase in the standard number, make a decision under that provision increasing the standard number to such number (less than the number proposed) as they think desirable;
  - (c) where the application is for a reduction of the standard number, make a decision under that provision reducing the standard number to such number (greater than the number proposed) as they think desirable; or
  - (d) decide not to vary the standard number.
- (2) Before making any decision in accordance with paragraph (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1), the committee shall consult the local education authority and the governing body of the school.
- (3) When making any decision in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), the committee shall have regard to—
- (a) any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) the school organisation plan for the area in which the school is situated, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) where the application is for the reduction of a standard number at a primary school, any limit imposed under section 1 which applies to that school and to any other school which is likely to be affected if any reduction of that number were to be made.
- (4) Subject to sub-paragraph (5), the committee shall not make a decision reducing a standard number unless they are satisfied that the reduction is necessary, having regard to the school's capacity to accommodate pupils.
- (5) Where—
- (a) an application is for a reduction of any standard number applicable to admissions to an infant class (as defined by section 4); and
  - (b) the committee are satisfied that the admission to the school in any school year of a number of children in any relevant age group equal to the relevant standard number would cause prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section,
- the committee shall make a decision under paragraph 4(2) reducing the standard number by the smallest number which they consider sufficient to avoid such prejudice arising.
- (6) Where the school organisation committee make a decision in accordance with paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1), then subject to sub-paragraph (2) the committee may decide that the standard number shall be varied with effect from a date other than that specified in the application.
- (7) If—
- (a) by the end of such period as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations, the committee have not voted on the question whether to vary the standard number under sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) the body by whom the application was made request the committee to refer the application to the adjudicator,
- they shall refer the application to the adjudicator.
- (8) If the committee—
- (a) have voted on any matter which (in accordance with regulations under paragraph 5 of Schedule 4) falls to be decided by them under sub-paragraph (1) by a unanimous decision, but
  - (b) have failed to reach such a decision on that matter,
- they shall refer the application to the adjudicator.
- (9) Where any application is referred to the adjudicator under sub-paragraph (7) or (8)—
- (a) he shall consider the application afresh; and
  - (b) sub-paragraphs (1) to (6) shall apply to him in connection with his decision on the application as they apply to the committee.
- (10) Regulations may make provision for enabling the school organisation committee or the adjudicator—
- (a) to review any decision of theirs made in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) (if appropriate) to revoke or vary any such decision,
- in such circumstances as may be prescribed.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (11) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) a school’s capacity to accommodate pupils shall be calculated having regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F230** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Commencement Information

**I52** Sch. 23 para. 6 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 23 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 23 para. 6(7) and (10) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1](#); Sch. 23 para. 6 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### [<sup>F231</sup>PART III]

#### VARIATION OF STANDARD NUMBERS: WALES

#### Textual Amendments

**F231** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### *Application of Part III*

7

[<sup>F232</sup>This Part of this Schedule applies to schools in Wales.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F232** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### *Variation of standard numbers*

8

[<sup>F233</sup>(1) The Secretary of State may by order applying to maintained schools of any class or description vary any standard number that would otherwise apply by virtue of paragraph 1 or 2.

(2) Subject to sub-paragraphs (3) to (5), the Secretary of State may make a decision varying any standard number that would otherwise apply to an individual school by virtue of paragraph 1 or 2 or by virtue of any order made under sub-paragraph (1).

(3) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) increasing a standard number may be made on the application of the admission authority for the school or on an application made by the governing body or local education authority in accordance with section 93(7).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) reducing a standard number may only be made on the application of the admission authority for the school.
- (5) A decision under sub-paragraph (2) is subject to the procedure provided for in paragraphs 9 and 10.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F233** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### *Procedure for application to vary standard number*

- 9 [F234(1) Where the local education authority or the governing body intend to apply for a variation under paragraph 8(2) of any standard number applying to a school under paragraph 1, 2 or 8 for any age group in any year—
- (a) they shall publish their proposals relating to the variation in such manner, and containing such information, as may be prescribed, and
  - (b) they shall send—
    - (i) their application,
    - (ii) a copy of the published proposals, and
    - (iii) such information in connection with those proposals as may be prescribed,
 to the Secretary of State.
  - (2) Before making such an application, the local education authority or the governing body shall consult the governing body or the local education authority, as the case may be.
  - (3) In making such an application, the local education authority or the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State (including any such guidance as to the manner in which a school's capacity to accommodate pupils should be calculated).
  - (4) Sub-paragraph (2) shall not apply in relation to any application made by the local education authority or the governing body in accordance with section 93(7).
  - (5) Any person may make objections to any proposals published under sub-paragraph (1).
  - (6) Objections under sub-paragraph (5) shall be sent to the Secretary of State within such period as may be prescribed.
  - (7) Where any proposals published under this paragraph relate to a school which is situated in an area other than that of the local education authority who maintain the school, the provisions of this paragraph and paragraph 10 shall have effect in relation to the proposals with such modifications as may be prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F234** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

- I53** Sch. 23 para. 9 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 23 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 23 para. 9(1), (6) and (7) in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. 1; Sch. 23 para. 9 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

### *Decision on application to vary standard number*

- <sup>10</sup> [F235] (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, on an application for a decision under paragraph 8(2), the Secretary of State may—
- (a) make a decision under that provision varying the standard number to the number proposed;
  - (b) where the application is for an increase in the standard number, make a decision under that provision increasing the standard number to such number (less than the number proposed) as he thinks desirable;
  - (c) where the application is for a reduction of the standard number, make a decision under that provision reducing the standard number to such number (greater than the number proposed) as he thinks desirable; or
  - (d) decide not to vary the standard number.
- (2) Before making any decision in accordance with paragraph (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1), the Secretary of State shall consult the local education authority and the governing body of the school.
- (3) When making any decision in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), the Secretary of State shall have regard to—
- (a) the school organisation plan for the area in which the school is situated, and
  - (b) where the application is for the reduction of a standard number at a primary school, any limit imposed under section 1 which applies to that school and to any other school which is likely to be affected if any reduction of that number were to be made.
- (4) Subject to sub-paragraph (5), the Secretary of State shall not make a decision reducing a standard number unless he is satisfied that the reduction is necessary, having regard to the school's capacity to accommodate pupils.
- (5) Where—
- (a) an application is for a reduction of any standard number applicable to admissions to an infant class (as defined by section 4); and
  - (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that the admission to the school in any school year of a number of children in any relevant age group equal to the relevant standard number would cause prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section,
- the Secretary of State shall make a decision under paragraph 8(2) reducing the standard number by the smallest number which he considers sufficient to avoid such prejudice arising.
- (6) Where the Secretary of State makes a decision in accordance with paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1), then subject to sub-paragraph (2) he may decide that the

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

standard number shall be varied with effect from a date other than that specified in the application.

- (7) Regulations may make provision for enabling the Secretary of State—
- (a) to review any decision of his made in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) (if appropriate) to revoke or vary any such decision,
- in such circumstances as may be prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F235** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I54** Sch. 23 para. 10 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 23 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 23 para. 10(7) in force at 1.10.1998 for certain purposes by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#); Sch. 23 para. 10 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)).

## [<sup>F236</sup>PART IV]

### REVIEW OF STANDARD NUMBERS

#### Textual Amendments

**F236** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

- <sup>11</sup> [<sup>F237</sup>(1) The admission authority for a maintained school shall keep under review any standard numbers applying to the school under paragraph 1, 2, 4 or 8, as the case may be, having regard to—
- (a) the school's capacity to accommodate pupils, and
  - (b) in the case of any standard number applicable to admissions to an infant class (as defined by section 4), the need to secure that the admission to the school in any school year of a number of children in any relevant age group equal to the relevant standard number would not cause prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section.
- (2) The admission authority for a maintained school containing any infant class (as defined by section 4) shall in particular carry out a review under sub-paragraph (1) as soon as reasonably practicable following the coming into force of regulations under section 1 by virtue of which any limit on class sizes is to apply, or be varied, in relation to any such class at the school.
- (3) Where, as a result of a review under sub-paragraph (1), the authority consider that any standard number at the school should be varied in order to enable the objective referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(b) to be achieved, they shall make an application for a decision under paragraph 4(2) or 8(2) (as the case may be) varying the standard number.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) a school’s capacity to accommodate pupils shall be calculated having regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F237** Sch. 23 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

## SCHEDULE 24

Section 94.

### ADMISSION APPEALS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C205** Sch. 24 modified (temp.) (22.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/1064, [reg. 10](#).

Sch. 24 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, [art. 6](#), Sch. 4 paras. 1, [8](#)

Sch. 24 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, [reg. 1](#), Sch. paras. 1, [2-8](#).

Sch. 24 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, [reg. 8](#), Sch. paras. 1(d), [2-8](#).

## PART I

### CONSTITUTION OF APPEAL PANELS

#### *Appeal arrangements made by local education authorities*

- 1 (1) An appeal pursuant to arrangements made by a local education authority under section 94(1) shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) An appeal panel shall consist of three or five members appointed by the authority from—
- (a) persons who are eligible to be lay members; and
  - (b) persons who have experience in education, are acquainted with educational conditions in the area of the authority or are parents of registered pupils at a school.
- (3) Of the members of an appeal panel—
- (a) at least one must be a person who is eligible to be a lay member and is appointed as such; and
  - (b) at least one must be a person falling within sub-paragraph (2)(b).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph a person is eligible to be a lay member if he is a person without personal experience in the management of any school or the provision of education in any school (disregarding any such experience as a governor or in any other voluntary capacity).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) Sufficient persons may be appointed by the authority under this paragraph to enable two or more appeal panels to sit at the same time.
- (6) No person shall be a member of an appeal panel if he is disqualified by virtue of sub-paragraph (7).
- (7) The following persons are disqualified for membership of an appeal panel—
  - (a) any member of the authority or of the governing body of the school in question;
  - (b) any person employed by the authority or the governing body, other than a person employed as a teacher;
  - (c) any person who has, or at any time has had, any connection with the authority or the school, or with any person within paragraph (b), of a kind which might reasonably be taken to raise doubts about his ability to act impartially in relation to the authority or the school.
- (8) A person employed as a teacher by the authority shall not be taken, by reason only of that employment, to have such a connection with the authority as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (7)(c).
- (9) A person shall not be a member of an appeal panel for the consideration of an appeal against a decision if he was among those who made the decision or took part in discussions as to whether the decision should be made.
- (10) A person who is a teacher at a school shall not be a member of an appeal panel for the consideration of an appeal involving a question whether a child is to be admitted to that school.
- (11) Where, at any time after an appeal panel consisting of five members have begun to consider an appeal, any of the members—
  - (a) dies, or
  - (b) becomes unable through illness to continue as a member,
 the panel may continue with their consideration and determination of the appeal so long as the number of the remaining members is not less than three and the requirements of sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.

*Appeal arrangements made by governing bodies*

- 2 (1) An appeal pursuant to arrangements made by the governing body of a foundation or voluntary aided school under section 94(2) shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) An appeal panel shall consist of three or five members appointed by the governing body from—
  - (a) persons who are eligible to be lay members; and
  - (b) persons who have experience in education, are acquainted with educational conditions in the area of the school or are parents of registered pupils at a school.
- (3) Of the members of an appeal panel—
  - (a) at least one must be a person who is eligible to be a lay member and is appointed as such; and



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) at least one must be a person falling within sub-paragraph (2)(b).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph a person is eligible to be a lay member if he is a person without personal experience in the management of any school or the provision of education in any school (disregarding any such experience as a governor or in any other voluntary capacity).
- (5) Sufficient persons may be appointed by the governing body under this paragraph to enable two or more appeal panels to sit at the same time.
- (6) No person shall be a member of an appeal panel if he is disqualified by virtue of sub-paragraph (7).
- (7) The following persons are disqualified for membership of an appeal panel—
- (a) any member of the local education authority by whom the school is maintained or of the governing body;
  - (b) any person employed by the authority or the governing body, other than a person employed as a teacher;
  - (c) any person who has, or at any time has had, any connection with the authority or the school, or with any person within paragraph (b), of a kind which might reasonably be taken to raise doubts about his ability to act impartially in relation to the authority or the school.
- (8) A person employed as a teacher by the authority shall not be taken, by reason only of that employment, to have such a connection with the authority as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (7)(c).
- (9) A person who is a teacher at a school shall not be a member of an appeal panel for the consideration of an appeal involving a question whether a child is to be admitted to that school.
- (10) Where, at any time after an appeal panel consisting of five members have begun to consider an appeal, any of the members—
- (a) dies, or
  - (b) becomes unable through illness to continue as a member,
- the panel may continue with their consideration and determination of the appeal so long as the number of the remaining members is not less than three and the requirements of sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.
- 3 (1) Where (by virtue of section 94(3)) joint arrangements are made under section 94(2) by the governing bodies of two or more schools, paragraph 2 shall apply as if—
- (a) (except in sub-paragraph (7)) any reference to the governing body were a reference to the governing bodies of both or all the schools; and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (7), any reference to the governing body of the school in question or to that school were a reference to any of those governing bodies or to any of those schools (as the case may be).
- (2) An appeal pursuant to such joint arrangements shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 as it so applies.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Joint arrangements by local education authorities and governing bodies*

- 4 (1) Where (by virtue of section 94(4)) joint arrangements are made by a local education authority and the governing body or bodies of one or more schools, paragraph 1 shall apply in relation to those arrangements as it applies in relation to arrangements made by a local education authority under section 94(1), but as if in sub-paragraph (7) any reference to the governing body of the school in question or to that school were a reference to the governing body of any school to which the arrangements relate or to any such school (as the case may be).
- (2) An appeal pursuant to such joint arrangements shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 as it so applies.

*Allowances for members*

- 5 (1) For the purpose of the payment of financial loss allowance under section 173(4) of the <sup>M136</sup>Local Government Act 1972, that provision shall apply, with any necessary modifications, to any member of an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 or 2 (or in accordance with either of those paragraphs as it applies by virtue of paragraph 3 or 4) as it applies to any member of a parish or community council; and such an appeal panel shall be included in the bodies to which section 174 of that Act (travelling and subsistence allowances) applies.
- (2) In section 174(1) of that Act, in its application to a panel in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), the reference to payments at rates determined by the body in question shall be read as a reference to payments at rates determined—
- (a) by the authority, if the panel is constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 (or in accordance with that paragraph as it applies by virtue of paragraph 4); and
  - (b) otherwise by the governing body or bodies of the school or schools in question.

**Marginal Citations**

M136 1972 c. 70.

*Duty to advertise for lay members*

- 6 The Secretary of State may by regulations require any local education authority or governing body who are required by section 94(1) or (2) to make arrangements under that provision—
- (a) to advertise, in such manner and at such times as may be prescribed, for persons eligible to be lay members of any appeal panel required to be constituted for the purposes of such arrangements to apply to the authority or body for appointment as such members, and
  - (b) in appointing persons as such members, to consider any persons eligible to be so appointed who have applied to the authority or body in response to an advertisement placed in pursuance of sub-paragraph (a) above.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Indemnity

- 7 (1) Any local education authority or governing body required to make arrangements under section 94(1) or (2) shall indemnify the members of any appeal panel required to be constituted for the purposes of those arrangements against any reasonable legal costs and expenses reasonably incurred by those members in connection with any decision or action taken by them in good faith in pursuance of their functions as members of that panel.
- (2) Where any such panel is constituted in accordance with—
- (a) paragraph 1 as it applies by virtue of paragraph 4, or
  - (b) paragraph 2 as it applies by virtue of paragraph 3,
- any liability arising under sub-paragraph (1) above shall be a joint and several liability of the bodies by whom the joint arrangements are made unless otherwise previously agreed in writing between those bodies.

## PART II

### PROCEDURE

- 8 In this Part of this Schedule “appeal” means an appeal pursuant to any arrangements made under section 94.
- 9 An appeal shall be by notice in writing setting out the grounds on which it is made.
- 10 An appeal panel shall give the appellant an opportunity of appearing and making oral representations, and may allow him to be accompanied by a friend or to be represented.
- 11 The matters to be taken into account by an appeal panel in considering an appeal shall include—
- (a) any preference expressed by the appellant in respect of the child as mentioned in section 86, and
  - (b) the arrangements for the admission of pupils published by the local education authority or the governing body under section 92.
- 12 Where the decision under appeal was made on the ground that prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) would arise as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section, an appeal panel shall determine that a place is to be offered to the child only if they are satisfied—
- (a) that the decision was not one which a reasonable admission authority would make in the circumstances of the case; or
  - (b) that the child would have been offered a place if the admission arrangements (as published under section 92) had been properly implemented.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 13 (1) Appeals shall be heard in private except when the body or bodies by whom the arrangements under section 94 are made direct otherwise; but—
- (a) if the panel so direct, one member of the local education authority may attend, as an observer, any hearing of an appeal by an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1;
  - (b) if the panel so direct, one member of the governing body of the school in question may attend, as an observer, any hearing of an appeal by an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 or 2 (or in accordance with paragraph 2 as it applies by virtue of paragraph 3); and
  - (c) one member of the Council on Tribunals may attend, as an observer, any meeting of any appeal panel at which an appeal is considered.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 as it applies by virtue of paragraph 4 shall be treated—
- (a) as an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 if it relates to a community or voluntary controlled school; and
  - (b) as an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 if it relates to a foundation or voluntary aided school.
- 14 In the event of a disagreement between the members of an appeal panel, the appeal under consideration shall be decided by a simple majority of the votes cast and, in the case of an equality of votes, the chairman of the panel shall have a second or casting vote.
- 15 (1) The decision of an appeal panel and the grounds on which it is made shall be communicated by the panel in writing to—
- (a) the appellants and the local education authority, and
  - (b) in the case of an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2 (or in accordance with that paragraph as it applies by virtue of paragraph 3), to the governing body by whom or on whose behalf the decision appealed against was made.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 as it applies by virtue of paragraph 4 shall be treated as an appeal to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with paragraph 2, if it relates to a foundation or voluntary aided school.
- 16 Subject to paragraphs 9 to 15, all matters relating to the procedure on appeals, including the time within which they are to be brought, shall be determined by the body or bodies by whom the arrangements under section 94 are made.

*Power of Secretary of State to make amendments*

- 17 The Secretary of State may by order make such amendments of this Schedule as he considers expedient.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 25

Section 95.

## CHILDREN TO WHOM SECTION 87 APPLIES: APPEALS BY GOVERNING BODIES 12.10.01

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C206** Sch. 25 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(d), 2-8.  
 Sch. 25 restricted (29.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 1, 8  
 Sch. 25 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8.

*Duty to notify governing body of decision to admit child*

- 1 Where any such decision as is mentioned in section 95(2) is made by or on behalf of a local education authority, the authority shall give the governing body of the school notice in writing—
- (a) of that decision; and
  - (b) of the governing body's right to appeal against the decision in accordance with paragraph 2.

*Time limit on appealing*

- 2 An appeal by the governing body against any such decision must be made not later than the 15th school day after the day on which they are given the notice under paragraph 1.

*Appeal panels*

- 3 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) below, paragraphs 1, 5, 6 and 7 of Schedule 24 (school admission appeals) shall have effect in relation to appeals under section 95(2) as they have effect in relation to appeals under section 94(1).
- (2) A person shall not be a member of an appeal panel for the consideration of an appeal under section 95(2) if he has to any extent been involved in any previous consideration of the question whether the child in question should or should not be reinstated at any school from which he has at any time been permanently excluded, or in any previous appeal relating to the child under section 95(2).
- (3) In this paragraph "appeal panel" means an appeal panel constituted in accordance with Part I of Schedule 24, as it applies in accordance with this paragraph.

*Procedure on an appeal*

- 4 In the following provisions of this Schedule—
- "appeal" means an appeal under section 95(2); and
- "appeal panel" means such an appeal panel as is mentioned in paragraph 3(3) above.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 5 An appeal shall be by notice in writing setting out the grounds on which it is made.
- 6 (1) The appeal panel shall meet to consider an appeal on such date as the local education authority may determine.
- (2) The date so determined must not be later than the 15th school day after the day on which the appeal is lodged.
- 7 On an appeal the panel shall allow—
- (a) the local education authority and the governing body to make written representations;
  - (b) an officer of the authority nominated by the authority, and a governor nominated by the governing body, to appear and make oral representations; and
  - (c) the governing body to be represented.
- 8 In considering an appeal the appeal panel shall have regard to—
- (a) the reasons for the local education authority's decision that the child in question should be admitted; and
  - (b) any reasons put forward by the governing body as to why the child's admission would be inappropriate.
- 9 Appeals shall be heard in private except when the local education authority direct otherwise; but—
- (a) if the panel so direct, one member of the local education authority may attend, as an observer, any hearing of an appeal by an appeal panel; and
  - (b) one member of the Council on Tribunals may attend, as an observer, any meeting of an appeal panel at which an appeal is considered.
- 10 Two or more appeals may be combined and dealt with in the same proceedings if the appeal panel consider that it is expedient to do so because the issues raised by the appeals are the same or connected.
- 11 In the event of a disagreement between the members of an appeal panel, the appeal under consideration shall be decided by a simple majority of the votes cast and, in the case of an equality of votes, the chairman of the panel shall have a second or casting vote.
- 12 The decision of an appeal panel and the grounds on which it is made shall—
- (a) be communicated by the panel in writing to the local education authority and the governing body, and
  - (b) be so communicated by the end of the second school day after the conclusion of the hearing of the appeal.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 13 Subject to paragraphs 5 to 12, all matters relating to the procedure on appeals shall be determined by the local education authority.

*Power of Secretary of State to make amendments*

- 14 The Secretary of State may by order make such amendments of this Schedule as he considers expedient.

SCHEDULE 26

Section 122.

INSPECTION OF NURSERY EDUCATION

*Introductory*

- 1 (1) In this Schedule “relevant nursery education” means—
- (a) nursery education which is provided by a local education authority;
  - (b) nursery education which is provided by any other person who is (or is to be) in receipt of financial assistance given by such an authority and whose provision of nursery education is taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a); or
  - (c) nursery education in respect of which grants are (or are to be) made under arrangements under section 1 of the <sup>M137</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.
- (2) In this Schedule “nursery education under consideration for funding” means nursery education provided by a person to whom a local education authority are considering giving financial assistance and whose provision of nursery education would fall to be taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a).
- (3) Where—
- (a) any education is for the time being provided at any premises for children who have not attained the age prescribed for the purposes of section 118(1)(b), and
  - (b) that education is provided by a person—
    - (i) who proposes to provide nursery education at those premises, and
    - (ii) to whom a local education authority are considering giving financial assistance in the event of his providing that nursery education, and
    - (iii) whose provision of that nursery education would fall to be taken into account by the authority in formulating proposals for the purposes of section 120(2)(a),

this Schedule shall apply in relation to the education for the time being provided for the children mentioned in paragraph (a) above as it applies in relation to nursery education under consideration for funding.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M137 1996 c. 50.

- 2 (1) In this Schedule “the Chief Inspector” means—
- (a) as respects nursery education provided in England, Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Schools in England, and
  - (b) as respects nursery education provided in Wales, [<sup>F238</sup>Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales or Prif Arolygydd Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru].
- (2) In this Schedule references to registered nursery education inspectors are to persons registered under paragraph 8.
- (3) In this Schedule “members of the Inspectorate” means—
- (a) the Chief Inspector,
  - (b) Her Majesty’s Inspectors, and
  - (c) additional inspectors with whom the Chief Inspector has made arrangements to give him assistance under paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M138</sup>School Inspections Act 1996.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3)(b) “Her Majesty’s Inspectors” means—
- (a) as respects nursery education provided in England, Her Majesty’s Inspectors of Schools in England, and
  - (b) as respects nursery education provided in Wales, [<sup>F239</sup>Her Majesty’s Inspectors of Education and Training in Wales or Arolgwyr Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru].

### Textual Amendments

**F238** Words in Sch. 26 para. 2(1)(b) substituted (W.) (1.1.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 73(3)(a); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

**F239** Words in Sch. 26 para. 2(4)(b) substituted (W.) (1.1.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 73(3)(b); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

### Marginal Citations

M138 1996 c. 57.

### *General functions of the Chief Inspector*

- 3 The Chief Inspector has the general duty of keeping the Secretary of State informed about—
- (a) the quality and standards of relevant nursery education, and
  - (b) the spiritual, moral, social and cultural development of children for whom relevant nursery education is provided.
- 4 When asked to do so by the Secretary of State, the Chief Inspector shall give advice to the Secretary of State on such matters relating to relevant nursery education as may be specified in the Secretary of State’s request.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 5 The Chief Inspector may at any time give advice to the Secretary of State on any matter connected with—
- (a) relevant nursery education generally, or
  - (b) relevant nursery education, or nursery education under consideration for funding, provided at particular premises.

### *Inspections*

- 6 (1) The Chief Inspector—
- (a) shall secure that relevant nursery education provided at any premises is inspected by [<sup>F240</sup>a member of the Inspectorate or] a registered nursery education inspector at such intervals as may be prescribed,
  - (b) shall secure that relevant nursery education, or nursery education under consideration for funding, provided at any premises is inspected by [<sup>F241</sup>a member of the Inspectorate or] a registered nursery education inspector at any time when the Secretary of State requires the Chief Inspector to secure its inspection, and
  - (c) may secure that relevant nursery education, or nursery education under consideration for funding, provided at any premises is inspected by [<sup>F242</sup>a member of the Inspectorate or] a registered nursery education inspector at any other time when the Chief Inspector considers that it would be appropriate for it to be inspected.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(a) does not apply to nursery education provided at a school to which section 10 of the <sup>M139</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 (inspections of certain schools by inspectors registered under that Act) applies.
- (3) The Chief Inspector may comply with sub-paragraph (1) either by organising inspections or by making arrangements with others for them to organise inspections.
- (4) Where an inspection under this paragraph is to be undertaken of nursery education provided at premises which are also liable to inspection under section 76 of the <sup>M140</sup>Children Act 1989 (inspection by person authorised by local authority of premises on which child minding is being carried on or day care is being provided for children), the person organising the inspection under this paragraph shall, before that inspection is undertaken, consult the local authority with power to authorise an inspection of the premises under that section.
- (5) In prescribing the intervals mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) the Secretary of State may make provision as to the period within which the first inspection of education provided at any premises is to take place under this Schedule.
- (6) A requirement such as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) may be imposed in relation to particular premises or a class of premises.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F240** Words in Sch. 26 para. 6(1)(a) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 1 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

**F241** Words in Sch. 26 para. 6(1)(b) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 1 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

**F242** Words in Sch. 26 para. 6(1)(c) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 1 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

**M139** 1996 c. 57.

**M140** 1989 c. 41.

- 7 A person conducting an inspection under paragraph 6 shall report on the quality and standards of the nursery education provided and, so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so, on the spiritual, moral, social and cultural development of the children for whom the education is provided.

### *Registration of nursery education inspectors*

- 8 (1) Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Schools in England shall establish and maintain a register of nursery education inspectors for England and [<sup>F243</sup>Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales or Prif Arolygydd Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru] shall establish and maintain a register of nursery education inspectors for Wales.
- (2) The Chief Inspector—
- (a) shall give guidance to registered nursery education inspectors and such other persons as he considers appropriate in connection with inspections under paragraph 6 and the making of reports of such inspections, and
  - (b) shall keep under review the system of inspections under paragraph 6 and, in particular, the standard of such inspections and of the reports made of them.
- (3) The Chief Inspector shall not register a person under this paragraph unless, having regard to any conditions that he proposes to impose under sub-paragraph [<sup>F244</sup>(5B)] , it appears to him that the person—
- (a) is a fit and proper person for discharging the functions of a registered nursery education inspector, and
  - (b) will be capable of conducting inspections under paragraph 6 competently and effectively and no person shall be so registered if he falls within a category of persons prescribed for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.
- [<sup>F245</sup>(4) Subject to that, the Chief Inspector shall register such persons as he considers appropriate.
- (5) The factors which the Chief Inspector may take into account for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) include the extent to which there is a need for registered inspectors in any part of England and Wales.
- (5A) The Chief Inspector may require payment of a fee before registering a person under sub-paragraph (4).
- (5B) Registration under sub-paragraph (4) may be subject to such conditions as the Chief Inspector considers it appropriate to impose.]
- (6) Conditions imposed under sub-paragraph [<sup>F246</sup>(5B)] may be conditions applying generally in relation to all cases, or particular classes of case, or such conditions together with specific conditions applying in the particular case.
- (7) Where a person is registered subject to conditions imposed under sub-paragraph [<sup>F247</sup>(5B)] , he shall be taken to be authorised to act as a registered nursery education inspector only so far as those conditions permit.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) The period for which any registration is to have effect shall be determined by the Chief Inspector and shall be entered in the register kept by him.
- (9) <sup>F248</sup>Nothing in sub-paragraph (8) is to be taken as preventing a registered nursery education inspector from applying for a fresh registration to take effect immediately on the expiry of his current registration.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F243** Words in Sch. 26 para. 8(1) substituted (W.) (1.1.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 73(3)(a); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.
- F244** Words in Sch. 26 para. 8(3) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 2(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4
- F245** Sch. 26 para. 8(4)-(5B) substituted for para. 8(4)(5) (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 2(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4
- F246** Words in Sch. 26 para. 8(6) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 2(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4
- F247** Words in Sch. 26 para. 8(7) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 2(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4
- F248** Sch. 26 para. 8(9) shall cease to have effect (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) and repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 215(2), 216, Sch. 14 para. 2(5), Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C207** Sch. 26 para. 8(2)-(9) applied (with modifications) (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 1989 c. 41, s. 79P(3) (as inserted (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 79(1), 122); S.I. 2001/1210, art. 2(a); S.I. 2001/2190, art. 2(1), Sch.; S.I. 2002/920, arts. 2, 3 (subject to Schs. 1-3); S.I. 2002/2215, arts. 2, 3

- 9 (1) If the Chief Inspector is satisfied that any of the conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) is satisfied with respect to a nursery education inspector registered in his register, he may remove the name of that inspector from that register.
- (2) The conditions are that—
- he is no longer a fit and proper person for discharging the functions of a registered nursery education inspector under paragraph 6,
  - he is no longer capable of conducting inspections under that paragraph competently and effectively,
  - there has been a significant failure on his part to comply with any condition imposed under <sup>F249</sup>paragraph 8(5B)] subject to which his registration has effect,
  - he has, without reasonable explanation, produced a report of an inspection under paragraph 6 which is, in whole or in part, seriously misleading.
- (3) The Chief Inspector may vary any condition subject to which the registration of an inspector has effect, or vary the registration of an inspector by imposing a condition subject to which it will have effect, if he is satisfied—
- that he is authorised by sub-paragraph (1) to remove the name of the inspector from his register, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) that it would otherwise be in the public interest for him to do so.

(4) References in this Schedule to a condition imposed under [F250] paragraph 8(5B) include a condition imposed under sub-paragraph (3).

(5) Either Chief Inspector may, in exercising his functions under this paragraph with respect to a registered nursery education inspector, have regard to any action taken by the other Chief Inspector with respect to that inspector.

#### Textual Amendments

**F249** Words in Sch. 26 para. 9(2)(c) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

**F250** Words in Sch. 26 para. 9(4) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C208** Sch. 26 para. 9(1)-(4) applied (with modifications) (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 1989 c. 41, s. 79P(3) (as inserted (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 79(1), 122); S.I. 2001/1210, art. 2(a); S.I. 2001/2190, art. 2(1), Sch.; S.I. 2002/920, arts. 2, 3 (subject to Schs. 1-3); S.I. 2002/2215, arts. 2, 3

- 10 (1) Any person who is aggrieved by—
- (a) the refusal of the Chief Inspector to renew his registration under paragraph 8,
  - (b) the imposition or variation of any condition subject to which he is registered under that paragraph, or
  - (c) the removal of his name from the register under paragraph 9,
- may appeal against the Chief Inspector's decision.

[F251(1A) An appeal under sub-paragraph (1) against a decision of Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Schools in England shall be made to the Tribunal established under section 9 of the Protection of Children Act 1999.]

(2) An appeal under sub-paragraph (1) [F252] against a decision of Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales] shall be made to a tribunal with the same constitution as a tribunal to hear an appeal under section 9 of the M141 School Inspections Act 1996; and paragraph 2 (procedure) and paragraph 3 (staff) of Schedule 2 to that Act apply to tribunals to hear appeals under sub-paragraph (1) as they apply to tribunals to hear appeals under that section.

(3) No decision against which an appeal may be made under sub-paragraph (1) shall have effect until—

- (a) any appeal against it which is duly made is disposed of, or
- (b) the period within which an appeal may be made expires without an appeal being made.

(4) Sub-paragraph (3) shall not apply where the Chief Inspector—

- (a) is satisfied that the circumstances of the case justify the decision in question taking effect immediately or earlier than would otherwise be the case, and
- (b) notifies the person concerned to that effect.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) On determining any appeal under this paragraph, the tribunal may—
- (a) confirm, reverse or vary the decision appealed against, or
  - (b) remit the case to the Chief Inspector with directions as to the action to be taken by him.

#### Textual Amendments

**F251** Sch. 26 para. 10(1A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 5(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), Sch. 14 para. 7 and with savings (23.12.2002) in S.I. 2002/2953, reg. 6); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

**F252** Words in Sch. 26 para. 10(2) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 155, 216, Sch. 14 para. 5(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), Sch. 14 para. 7 and with savings (23.12.2002) in S.I. 2002/2953, reg. 6); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C209** Sch. 26 para. 10 applied (with modifications) (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 1989 c. 41, s. 79P(3) (as inserted (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 79(1), 122); S.I. 2001/1210, art. 2(a); S.I. 2001/2190, art. 2(1), Sch.; S.I. 2002/920, arts. 2, 3 (subject to Schs. 1-3); S.I. 2002/2215, arts. 2, 3

#### Marginal Citations

M141 1996 c. 57.

### Training

- 11 (1) A registered nursery education inspector shall not conduct an inspection under paragraph 6 unless he has, in the opinion of the Chief Inspector, satisfactorily completed a course of training provided by, or complying with arrangements approved by, the Chief Inspector.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) shall not apply in such circumstances as may be specified, either generally or in relation to a particular case or class of case, by the Chief Inspector.
- (3) Where the Chief Inspector provides such training he may charge such fees as are reasonable for the purpose of recovering the whole, or part, of the cost of providing it.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C210** Sch. 26 para. 11 applied (with modifications) (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 1989 c. 41, s. 79P(3) (as inserted (in force at 16.3.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 2.9.2002 for E., 1.7.2001 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 79(1), 122); S.I. 2001/1210, art. 2(a); S.I. 2001/2190, art. 2(1), Sch.; S.I. 2002/920, arts. 2, 3 (subject to Schs. 1-3); S.I. 2002/2215, arts. {2}, 3

### Impartiality

- 12 A person shall not undertake an inspection under paragraph 6 of nursery education provided by a person at any premises, or accompany a person undertaking such an inspection, if he has, or has at any time had, any connection with—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the person by whom the education is provided (or, where it is provided by a body, any member of the body), or
  - (b) any person employed by that person (whether or not at the premises),
- of a kind which might reasonably be taken to raise doubts about his ability to act impartially.

#### *Reports of inspections*

- 13 (1) Where a person has conducted an inspection under paragraph 6 he shall make his report in writing to the Chief Inspector within such period as may be prescribed, subject to any extension not exceeding three months which the Chief Inspector may consider necessary.
- (2) Once the report of an inspection has been made to the Chief Inspector under sub-paragraph (1) he shall without delay send a copy of it to such authorities and persons as may be prescribed.
- (3) Section 42A(2) and (3) of the <sup>M142</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 shall apply in relation to the publication of any such report as they apply in relation to the publication of a report under any of the provisions mentioned in section 42A(2).

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M142** 1996 c. 57.

#### *Annual reports of the Chief Inspector*

- 14 The annual reports of the Chief Inspector required by subsection (7)(a) of sections 2 and 5 of the <sup>M143</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 to be made to the Secretary of State shall include an account of the exercise of the functions imposed or conferred on him by this Schedule; and the power conferred by subsection (7)(b) of those sections to make other reports to the Secretary of State includes a power to make reports with respect to matters which fall within the scope of his functions by virtue of this Schedule.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M143** 1996 c. 57.

#### *Reserve powers of the Chief Inspector*

- 15 [F253]The Chief Inspector may, in any case where it appears to him to be appropriate to do so, secure that any inspection under paragraph 6 is conducted not by a registered nursery education inspector but by one or more members of the Inspectorate.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F253** Sch. 26 para. 15 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

- 16 If the Chief Inspector elects in the case of an inspection within paragraph (b) or (c) of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 6 that the inspection shall be treated as if it were an inspection within paragraph (a) of that sub-paragraph, the inspection shall be so treated.
- 17 Where an inspection is being conducted by a registered nursery education inspector under paragraph 6, the Chief Inspector may arrange for the inspection to be monitored by one or more members of the Inspectorate.

### *Rights of entry*

- 18 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) a registered nursery education inspector or member of the Inspectorate conducting an inspection under paragraph 6, or
  - (b) a member of the Inspectorate monitoring such an inspection under paragraph 17.
- (2) A person to whom this paragraph applies shall have at all reasonable times—
- (a) a right of entry to the premises at which the relevant nursery education concerned is provided; and
  - (b) a right to inspect, and take copies of—
    - (i) any records kept by the person providing that education, and
    - (ii) any other documents containing information relating to the provision of that education,which he requires for the purposes of conducting or (as the case may be) monitoring the inspection.
- (3) Section 42 of the <sup>M144</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 (inspection of computer records for purposes of Part I of that Act) shall apply for the purposes of this paragraph as it applies for the purposes of Part I of that Act.
- (4) It shall be an offence wilfully to obstruct a member of the Inspectorate or a registered nursery education inspector in the exercise of his functions in relation to an inspection under paragraph 6.
- (5) Any person guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (4) shall be liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (6) In this paragraph “documents” and “records” each include information recorded in any form.

### Marginal Citations

**M144** 1996 c. 57.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## [<sup>F254</sup>SCHEDULE 27

Section 125.

### FURTHER PROVISION ABOUT PARTNERSHIP ARRANGEMENTS IN WALES

#### Textual Amendments

**F254** Sch. 27 repealed (28.7.2000 in so far as consequential on ss. 130, 131, Sch. 8, 1.1.2001 (W.) otherwise) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, Sch. 11; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I55** Sch. 27 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 27 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 27 in force at 1.4.1999 for specified purposes by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. IV; Sch. 27 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

### “SCHEDULE 5A

#### FURTHER PROVISION ABOUT PARTNERSHIP ARRANGEMENTS IN WALES

##### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule—
- “the participating bodies”, in relation to an arrangement, means—
- (i) the parties to the arrangement,
  - (ii) the Further Education Funding Council for Wales, and
  - (iii) each governing body of a school which has consented to the arrangement;
- and
- “the parties”, in relation to an arrangement, means—
- (i) each local education authority, and
  - (ii) each governing body of an institution (or institutions) within the further education sector,
- which is a party to the arrangement.

##### *Approval by the Secretary of State*

- 2 (1) An application for approval of an arrangement by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 60A of this Act (“an application”) shall be made jointly by the parties to the arrangement.
- (2) An application shall be in such form and contain such information as may be prescribed by regulations.
- (3) In addition, the participating bodies shall provide the Secretary of State with such further information as he may require for the purpose of deciding whether or not to grant the approval.

##### *Termination of arrangement etc*

- 3 (1) Subject to any provision of the arrangement to the contrary and to sub-paragraph (2) below, a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of this Act applies shall continue in force indefinitely.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The Secretary of State may withdraw approval of a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of this Act applies.
- (3) The Secretary of State shall exercise his powers under sub-paragraph (2) in accordance with the provisions of the arrangement.

#### *Variation of arrangement*

- 4 (1) The parties to a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of this Act applies shall not make any change to the arrangement except—
  - (a) with the consent of the other participating bodies, and
  - (b) if the change amounts to a significant change to the arrangement, with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (2) If a question arises whether a change to an arrangement would be a significant change, that question shall be determined by the Secretary of State.

#### *Interpretation of existing enactments*

- 5 (1) Regulations may provide—
  - (a) for any reference in an enactment to secondary education to be construed as including further education provided under a partnership arrangement to which section 60A of this Act applies, and
  - (b) for any enactment containing such a reference to apply in relation to such further education with such modifications (if any) as may be specified in the regulations.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1), enactment includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the <sup>M145</sup>Interpretation Act 1978).”]

#### **Marginal Citations**

M145 1978 c. 30.

## SCHEDULE 28

Section 135.

### AMENDMENTS RELATING TO SCHOOL AND NURSERY INSPECTIONS

#### PART I

#### SCHOOL INSPECTIONS

#### **Commencement Information**

**I56** Sch. 28 Pt. I partly in force; Sch. 28 Pt. I not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 28 Pt. I except para. 4(1) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Part of this Schedule “the 1996 Act” means the <sup>M146</sup>School Inspections Act 1996.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M146** 1996 c. 57.

### *Persons who may be registered inspectors*

- 2 In section 7(3) of the 1996 Act (registration of inspectors), at the end there shall be added—

“and no person shall be so registered if he falls within a category of persons prescribed for the purposes of this subsection.”

### *Decisions of Chief Inspector having immediate effect*

- 3 In section 9(3)(a) of the 1996 Act (circumstances where Chief Inspector’s decision to revoke registration may take immediate effect), the words “are exceptional and” shall be omitted.

### *Enrolment of persons to act as team members*

- 4 (1) <sup>F255</sup>For paragraph 3(1) of Schedule 3 to the 1996 Act (inspection teams) there shall be substituted—

“(1) Every inspection shall be conducted by a registered inspector with the assistance of a team (an “inspection team”) consisting of persons who are enrolled in the list kept by the Chief Inspector under paragraph 3A.”]

- (2) After paragraph 3 of that Schedule there shall be inserted—

#### *“ Enrolment of persons to act as team members*

- 3A (1) The Chief Inspector shall keep a list of persons who may act as members of an inspection team (“the list”); and no person shall act as a member of an inspection team unless he is enrolled in the list.
- (2) The Chief Inspector shall not enrol any person in the list unless, having regard to any conditions that he proposes to impose under section 7(5) (c) (as it applies in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) below), it appears to him that that person—
- (a) is a fit and proper person for carrying out an inspection, and
  - (b) will be capable of assisting in an inspection competently and effectively.
- (3) An application for enrolment in the list shall (except in such circumstances as may be prescribed) be accompanied by the prescribed fee.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (9) of section 7 shall apply in relation to the enrolment of a person in the list and to acting as a member of an inspection team as

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- they apply in relation to the registration of a person under subsection (1) or (2) of that section and to acting as a registered inspector.
- (5) Sections 8 and 9 and Schedule 2 shall (with any necessary modifications) apply in relation to enrolment in the list and to a person so enrolled as they apply in relation to registration under section 7(1) or (2) and to a person so registered.
- (6) In its application to an enrolled person in accordance with sub-paragraph (5) above, section 8 shall have effect as if the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) of that section were that—
- (a) that person is no longer a fit and proper person to act as a member of an inspection team;
  - (b) he is no longer capable of assisting in an inspection competently and effectively;
  - (c) there has been a significant failure on his part to comply with any condition imposed under section 7(5)(c) (as it applies in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) above).
- (7) Without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 2, regulations under that provision may provide that, where a person is appealing simultaneously—
- (a) against a decision of the Chief Inspector relating to that person’s registration, and
  - (b) against a decision of the Chief Inspector relating to that person’s enrolment in the list,
- both appeals are to be heard at the same time.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F255** Sch. 28 Pt. I para. 4(1) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with Sch.)

#### Commencement Information

**I57** Sch. 28 Pt. I para. 4 partly in force; Sch. 28 Pt. I para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 28 Pt. I except para. 4(1) in force at 1.10.1998 by [S.I. 1998/2212](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#); Sch. 28 Pt. I para. 4(1) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2000 by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)); Sch. 28 Pt. I para. 4(1) in force for certain purposes at 1.8.2000 by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#), [Sch. 4](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

PROSPECTIVE

### *Replacement of inspectors*

F2565

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F256** Sch. 28 Pt. 1 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4; S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

## PART II

### NURSERY INSPECTIONS

#### *Persons who may be registered nursery education inspectors*

- 6 In paragraph 8(3) of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M147</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (registration of nursery education inspectors), at the end there shall be added—
- “and no person shall be so registered if he falls within a category of persons prescribed for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.”

#### Marginal Citations

[M147 1996 c. 50.](#)

#### *Decisions of Chief Inspector having immediate effect*

- 7 In paragraph 10(4)(a) of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M148</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (circumstances where Chief Inspector’s decision to revoke registration may take immediate effect), the words “are exceptional and” shall be omitted.

#### Marginal Citations

[M148 1996 c. 50.](#)

#### *Powers of entry of registered nursery education inspectors*

- 8 After paragraph 17 of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M149</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 there shall be added—

#### *“ Rights of entry*

- 18 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) a registered nursery education inspector or member of the Inspectorate conducting an inspection under paragraph 6, or
  - (b) a member of the Inspectorate monitoring such an inspection under paragraph 17.
- (2) A person to whom this paragraph applies shall have at all reasonable times—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a right of entry to the premises at which the funded nursery education concerned is provided; and
  - (b) a right to inspect, and take copies of—
    - (i) any records kept by the person providing that education, and
    - (ii) any other documents containing information relating to the provision of that education,
 which he requires for the purpose of conducting or (as the case may be) monitoring the inspection.
- (3) Section 42 of the <sup>M150</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 (inspection of computer records for purposes of Part I of that Act) shall apply for the purposes of this paragraph as it applies for the purposes of Part I of that Act.
- (4) It shall be an offence wilfully to obstruct a member of the Inspectorate or a registered nursery education inspector in the exercise of his functions in relation to an inspection under paragraph 6.
- (5) Any person guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (4) shall be liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (6) In this paragraph “documents” and “records” each include information recorded in any form.”

#### Marginal Citations

M149 1996 c. 50.

M150 1996 c. 57.

## SCHEDULE 29

Section 137.

### AMENDMENTS RELATING TO FUNCTIONS OF EDUCATION TRANSFER COUNCIL

#### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule “the 1988 Act” means the <sup>M151</sup>Education Reform Act 1988.

#### Marginal Citations

M151 1988 c. 40.

#### *General provisions as to transfers*

- 2 (1) Section 198 of the 1988 Act (transfers under Parts I and II of that Act) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) to (4) substitute—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- “(1) This section applies to any transfer under any of the following provisions, namely—
- (a) section 126 or 130 of this Act,
  - (b) Schedule 21 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (“the 1998 Act”), or
  - (c) any regulations made—
    - (i) under section 21(5) or (9) of that Act, or
    - (ii) under paragraph 10 of Schedule 2 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 8 to that Act;
- and those provisions, so far as relating to transfers under them, shall in each case have effect subject to Schedule 10 to this Act.
- (1A) However, nothing in—
- (a) the provisions of that Schedule other than paragraph 2(4), or
  - (b) subsection (3) below,
- applies in relation to any transfer agreement falling to be made under paragraph 4 or 7 of Schedule 21 to the 1998 Act or any corresponding provision of regulations under that Act.
- (2) Schedule 10 to this Act has effect for the purpose of—
- (a) dividing and apportioning property, rights and liabilities which fall to be transferred under any transfer to which this section applies by a transferor authority or body where that property has been used or held, or the rights or liabilities have been acquired or incurred, for the purposes of more than one school or other educational institution;
  - (b) excluding from transfer in certain circumstances property, rights and liabilities which would otherwise fall to be transferred under any such transfer;
  - (c) providing for identifying and defining the property, rights and liabilities which fall to be transferred under a transfer to which this section applies; and
  - (d) making supplementary and consequential provisions in relation to such transfers.
- (3) In carrying out the functions conferred or imposed on them by that Schedule—
- (a) the Education Transfer Council—
    - (i) shall, subject to subsection (4) below, not act on behalf of the transferor, the transferee or any other interested person, but
    - (ii) shall seek to ensure that all such persons’ interests are protected; and
  - (b) it shall be the duty of the Council, so far as it is reasonably practicable for them to do so, to secure that each transfer to which this section applies is, so far as possible, fully effective on the date on which it takes effect under this Act or under or by virtue of the 1998 Act.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(4) Where the transferor under any such transfer is a local authority and in accordance with that Schedule anything falls to be or may be done by the Council for the purposes of or in connection with that transfer—

- (a) it may not be done by the transferee; and
- (b) in doing it the Council shall be regarded as acting on behalf and in the name of the transferee;

and in a case where the transferee is a body corporate established under this Act or the 1998 Act paragraph (b) above applies both in relation to things done before and in relation to things done after that body is established under this Act or the 1998 Act.”

(3) For “the Board”, wherever occurring in subsections (5) and (6) of section 198, there is substituted (in accordance with section 136(2) of this Act) “the Council”.

*Division and apportionment of property etc.*

3 For paragraph 1 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act (supplementary provisions with respect to transfers) substitute—

*“ Division and apportionment of property etc.*

1 (1) Any property, rights and liabilities of a transferor authority held or used or subsisting—

- (a) for the purposes of more than one relevant institution; or
- (b) partly for the purposes of one or more relevant institutions and partly for other purposes of the transferor authority;

shall, where the nature of the property, right or liability permits, be divided or apportioned between the transferees, or (as the case may be) between the transferor authority and the transferee or transferees, in such proportions as may be appropriate.

(2) Any property, rights or liabilities of a transferor body shall, where the nature of the property, right or liability permits, be divided or apportioned between the transferees, or (as the case may be) between the transferor body and the transferee or transferees, in such proportions as may be appropriate.

(3) Where any estate or interest in land falls to be divided in accordance with either sub-paragraph (1) or sub-paragraph (2) above—

- (a) any rent payable under a lease in respect of that estate or interest; and
- (b) any rent charged on that estate or interest;

shall be correspondingly divided or apportioned so that each part is payable in respect of, or charged on, only one part of the estate or interest and the other part or parts are payable in respect of, or charged on, only the other part or parts of the estate or interest.

(4) Any such property, right or liability as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above the nature of which does not permit its division or apportionment as so mentioned shall be transferred to the transferee (or to one or other of the transferees) or retained by the transferor authority or body according to—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in the case of an estate or interest in land, whether on the transfer date the transferor authority or body or the transferee (or one or other of the transferees) appears to be in greater need of the security afforded by that estate or interest or, where none of them appears to be in greater need of that security, which of them appears on that date to be likely to make use of the land to the greater extent; or
- (b) in the case of any other property or any right or liability, which of them appears on the transfer date to be likely to make use of the property or (as the case may be) to be affected by the right or liability to the greater extent;

subject (in either case) to such arrangements for the protection of the other person or persons concerned as may be agreed between the transferor authority or body and the relevant person or determined by the Secretary of State under paragraph 3 below.

(5) In this paragraph—

- (a) “relevant institution” means—
  - (i) any institution which a body corporate is established under this Act to conduct;
  - (ii) any institution to which section 130 of this Act applies; and
  - (iii) any maintained school;
- (b) “the relevant person” means—
  - (i) in a case where the transferor is a transferor authority, the Education Transfer Council;
  - (ii) in a case where the transferor is a transferor body, the transferee;
- (c) references to a transferor authority are references to a local authority who are the transferor for the purposes of any transfer to which this Schedule applies;
- (d) references to a transferor body are references to any foundation body who are the transferor for the purposes of any transfer to which this Schedule applies;

and for the purposes of this sub-paragraph references to a maintained school or a foundation body have the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

*Identification of property, rights and liabilities*

4 For paragraph 2 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act substitute—

*“ Identification of property, rights and liabilities*

- 2 (1) It shall be the duty of the transferor and the relevant person, whether before or after the transfer date, so far as practicable to arrive at such written agreements, and to execute such other instruments, as are necessary or expedient to identify or define the property, rights and liabilities transferred to the transferee or retained by the transferor or for making any such arrangements as are mentioned in paragraph 1(4) above and as will—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) afford to the transferor and the transferee as against one another such rights and safeguards as they may require for the proper discharge of their respective functions; and
  - (b) make as from such date, not being earlier than the transfer date, as may be specified in the agreement or instrument such clarifications and modifications of the effect of the provision of this Act or of the 1998 Act (or any regulations made under it) under which the transfer is required on the property, rights and liabilities of the transferor as will best serve the proper discharge of the respective functions of the transferor and the transferee.
- (2) Any such agreement shall provide so far as it is expedient—
- (a) for the granting of leases and for the creation of other liabilities and rights over land whether amounting in law to interests in land or not, and whether involving the surrender of any existing interest or the creation of a new interest or not;
  - (b) for the granting of indemnities in connection with the severance of leases and other matters;
  - (c) for responsibility for registration of any matter in any description of statutory register.
- (3) Except in a case where the transferor is a local authority, the Education Transfer Council shall—
- (a) assist the transferor, the transferee and any other interested person in identifying or defining the property, rights and liabilities transferred to the transferee or retained by the transferor;
  - (b) advise such persons as to the terms of any agreement or instrument falling to be made under sub-paragraph (1) above;
  - (c) assist such persons to negotiate any such agreement or instrument and mediate in any such negotiations;
  - (d) prepare drafts of any such agreement or instrument; and
  - (e) assist the parties in executing and giving effect to any such agreement or instrument.
- (4) If and to the extent that they are requested to do so by any person falling to make a transfer agreement under paragraph 4 or 7 of Schedule 21 to the 1998 Act or any corresponding provision of regulations under that Act, the Education Transfer Council shall exercise any one or more functions falling within sub-paragraph (3) above in relation to such an agreement, or an instrument made pursuant to such an agreement, as if it were an agreement or instrument falling to be made under sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (5) Any transfer of any estate or interest in land under this paragraph or under paragraph 1 above (whether by virtue of an agreement or instrument entered into before or after the transfer date) shall be regarded as having taken place on the transfer date.
- (6) In this paragraph—
- “the 1998 Act” means the School Standards and Framework Act 1998; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“the relevant person” means—

- (a) in a case where the transferor is a local authority, the Education Transfer Council;
- (b) in a case where the transferor is not a local authority, the transferee.”

*Resolution of disputes*

5 For paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act substitute—

*“ Resolution of disputes*

- 3 (1) The Education Transfer Council shall notify the Secretary of State if it appears to them that it is unlikely in the case of any matter on which agreement is required to be reached under paragraph 2(1) above that such an agreement will be reached.
- (2) Where the Secretary of State has received a notification from the Council under sub-paragraph (1) above, he may, whether before or after the transfer date, give a direction determining that matter, and may include in the direction any provision which might have been included in an agreement under paragraph 2(1) above.
- (3) Any property, rights or liabilities required by a direction under this paragraph to be transferred to the transferee shall be regarded as having been transferred to, and by virtue of this Act vested in, the transferee on the transfer date.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall consult the transferor, the transferee and any other interested person before giving a direction under this paragraph.
- (5) The Education Transfer Council shall give the Secretary of State such assistance and advice as he may require for the purpose of determining any matter under this paragraph.”

*Proof of title by certificate*

6 In paragraph 5 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act, for “or of the Education Act 1996” substitute “ or of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.

*Construction of agreements etc.*

7 In paragraph 7 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act, for “or of the Education Act 1996”, in both places, substitute “ or of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.

*Third parties affected by vesting provisions*

8 In paragraph 9 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (6)(a), after “Board” insert “ or (as the case may be) the transferee ”;
- (b) in sub-paragraph (6)(b), for “or of the Education Act 1996” substitute “ or of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (or any regulations made under it) ”; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in sub-paragraph (9), after “Board” insert “ or (as the case may be) the transferee ”.

*Delivery of documents to transferee*

- 9 In paragraph 10 of Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act, after “transfer” insert “ under which the transferor is a local authority ”.

*Amendment of references to Education Assets Board*

- 10 For “the Education Assets Board” or “the Board”, wherever occurring in Schedule 10 to the 1988 Act, there is substituted (in accordance with section 136(2) of this Act) “ the Education Transfer Council ” or “ the Council ” respectively.

SCHEDULE 30

Section 140(1).

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c.12)*

- 1 In section 1(7) of the <sup>M152</sup>Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (saving for right of parents etc. to administer corporal punishment), for “teacher, or other person” substitute “ or (subject to section 548 of the Education Act 1996) any other person, ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M152 1996 c. 56.

*Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970 (c.39)*

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), in the Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970 (supply of goods and services by local authorities to public bodies) “public body” shall include any Education Action Forum established in an education action zone.
- (2) The provision in sub-paragraph (1) shall have effect as if made by an order under section 1(5) of that Act (power to provide that a person shall be a public body for the purposes of the Act).
- (3) An order under section 1(5) may accordingly vary or revoke the provisions of sub-paragraph (1) above as they apply to an Education Action Forum specified in the order.

*Local Government Act 1972 (c.70)*

- 3 (1) Section 177 of the Local Government Act 1972 (provisions supplementary to sections 173 to 176) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit the words from the beginning to “committees),”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) After subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) Subsection (1) above has effect without prejudice to the operation of the following provisions of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, namely—

- (a) paragraph 3 of Schedule 4 (allowances for school organisation committees);
- (b) paragraph 3 of Schedule 18 (allowances for exclusion appeals panels); and
- (c) paragraph 5 of Schedule 24 (allowances for admission appeals panels).”

*Local Government Act 1974 (c.7)*

4 (1) The Local Government Act 1974 shall be amended as follows.

(2) For section 25(5) (authorities subject to investigation by Local Commissioner) substitute—

“(5) Any reference to an authority to which this Part of this Act applies also includes a reference to—

- (a) a school organisation committee constituted in accordance with section 24 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998,
- (b) an exclusion appeals panel constituted in accordance with Schedule 18 to that Act,
- (c) an admission appeals panel constituted in accordance with Schedule 24 or paragraph 3 of Schedule 25 to that Act, and
- (d) the governing body of any community, foundation or voluntary school so far as acting in connection with the admission of pupils to the school or otherwise performing any of their functions under Chapter I of Part III of that Act.”

**Commencement Information**

**I58** Sch. 30 para. 4 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 4 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 4 in force at 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c.65)*

5 In section 22 of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (discrimination by bodies in charge of educational establishments), in the Table, in paragraph 1, for “governors” substitute “governing body”.

6 In section 27 of that Act (exception for single-sex establishments turning co-educational), after subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) Without prejudice to subsection (1), a transitional exemption order may be made in accordance with paragraph 21 or 22 of Schedule 6 or paragraph 16 or 17 of Schedule 7 to the <sup>M153</sup>School Standards and Framework Act 1998

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(transitional exemption orders for purposes of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975: England and Wales).”

#### Marginal Citations

M153 1975 c. 65.

#### *Race Relations Act 1976 (c.74)*

- 7 In section 17 of the Race Relations Act 1976 (discrimination by bodies in charge of educational establishments), in the Table, in paragraph 1, for “governors” substitute “governing body”.

#### *National Health Service Act 1977 (c.49)*

- 8 In Schedule 1 to the National Health Service Act 1977 (additional provisions as to the medical inspection of pupils, etc.)—
- (a) in paragraph 3, for the words from “by which” to “grant-maintained schools” substitute “in respect of the schools (other than foundation, voluntary or foundation special schools) which they maintain or the governing bodies of foundation, voluntary or foundation special schools in respect of those schools”; and
  - (b) in paragraph 4, after “1996” insert “or (as the case may be) the School Standards and Framework Act 1998”.

#### *Representation of the People Act 1983 (c.2)*

- 9 The Representation of the People Act 1983 shall be amended as follows.
- 10 In section 95(2)(a) (schools and rooms for parliamentary election meetings), for “county schools voluntary schools and grant-maintained schools” substitute “community, foundation and voluntary schools”.
- 11 In section 96(2)(a) (schools and rooms for local election meetings), for “county voluntary or grant-maintained school” substitute “community, foundation or voluntary school”.
- 12 In Schedule 5 (use for parliamentary election meetings of rooms in school premises and meeting rooms), in paragraph 1(1), for “a grant-maintained school” substitute “a foundation or voluntary aided school”.

#### *Local Government Act 1986 (c.10)*

- 13 In section 2A(4)(a) of the Local Government Act 1986 (prohibition on promoting homosexuality by teaching or publishing material), for the words from “a county” to the end substitute “a maintained school or maintained nursery school, within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;”.

#### *Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (c.61)*

- 14 [F257]In section 49(3) of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (appraisal of performance of teachers)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) for paragraph (b) substitute—
  - “(b) at any special school which is not so maintained but is for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 342 of the <sup>M154</sup>Education Act 1996 (approval of special schools);”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (ba).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F257** Sch. 30 para. 14 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216, [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### Marginal Citations

**M154** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Local Government Act 1988 (c.9)*

- 15 In Schedule 1 to the Local Government Act 1988 (defined activities open to competition), in paragraph 8(5), for the words from “county or” to “education authority;” substitute “ community, foundation or voluntary schools or community or foundation special schools; ”.

#### *Education Reform Act 1988 (c.40)*

- 16 The Education Reform Act 1988 shall be amended as follows.
- 17 In section 218 (school and further and higher education regulations), for subsection (12) substitute—
- “(12) In this section (except in subsection (6)(d) or (6A) above) “school” means any school maintained by a local education authority or any special school not so maintained.”
- 18 In section 221(1)(b) (avoidance of certain contractual terms), for “an aided or grant-maintained school;” substitute “ a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school; ”.
- 19 In section 226(4) (services to schools in member States providing education to British children), for the words from “any county” to the end substitute “ any community, foundation or voluntary school. ”
- 20 In Schedule 8 (provisions relating to the body to be known as the Education Transfer Council)—
- (a) omit paragraph 6(3); and
  - (b) in paragraph 8—
    - (i) in sub-paragraph (4), omit “given with the consent of the Treasury”; and
    - (ii) in sub-paragraph (7), for “Treasury” substitute “ Secretary of State ”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Children Act 1989 (c.41)*

21 In Schedule 9 to the Children Act 1989 (child minding and day care for young children), in paragraph 3(3), for the definitions of “assisted” and “maintained” substitute—

““assisted” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M155</sup>Education Act 1996;

“maintained” has the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998; and”.

**Marginal Citations**

M155 1996 c. 56.

*Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c.42)*

22 In section 13(5) of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (voting rights of certain members of committees)—

(a) after “is required” insert “ either ”; and

(b) at the end insert “ or pursuant to regulations under subsection (6) of that section. ”

*Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c.43)*

23 In section 98(2) of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (definitions), for paragraphs (f) and (g) substitute—

“(f) any community, foundation or voluntary school;

(g) any community or foundation special school.”

*School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (c.49)*

24 The School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991 shall be amended as follows.

25 <sup>F258</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F258** Sch. 30 para. 25 repealed (1.10.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 2 (with Sch.)

26 In section 2 (orders relating to statutory conditions of employment)—

(a) in subsection (1)(b), for the words from “governors of” to “grant-maintained schools” substitute “governing bodies of foundation, voluntary and foundation special schools”;

(b) omit subsection (2);

(c) in subsection (3), for “by Her Majesty’s Stationery Office” substitute “ in accordance with the order ”;

(d) in subsection (4)—

(i) in paragraph (a), omit “, in the case of a grant-maintained school,” and the words from “and provide” to the end,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) in paragraph (g), after “authorities” insert “ or governing bodies of schools ”, and
- (iii) omit paragraph (h);
- (e) in subsection (5), omit the words from “and, where” to “(2) above”; and
- (f) in subsection (6)(a), omit the words from “or, in” to “such schools,”.

#### Commencement Information

**I59** Sch. 30 para. 26 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 26 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 26(c) and (d) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 26 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 27 In section 3A (special provisions for teachers on transfer of employment)—
- (a) for subsection (1) substitute—
    - “(1) This section applies where—
    - (a) a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school is established in place of an independent school in pursuance of proposals published under section 28 or 31 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, and
    - (b) a school teacher employed to teach at that independent school becomes employed by the local education authority or (as the case may be) the governing body in accordance with the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 1981.”; and
    - (b) in subsection (3), for “an aided school” substitute “ a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school ”.
- 28 (1) Section 5 (interpretation, etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in the definition of “school teacher”, for “voluntary or grant-maintained” substitute “ foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special ”;
  - <sup>F259</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) for the words from “other expressions” to the end substitute “ where any other expression used in this Act is defined for the purposes of the <sup>M156</sup>Education Act 1996 or the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, it shall have the same meaning in this Act as in that Act. ”
- (3) For the sidenote substitute “ Interpretation, orders and application of provisions of Education Acts. ”

#### Textual Amendments

**F259** Sch. 30 para. 28(2)(b) repealed (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, reg. 10.

#### Commencement Information

**I60** Sch. 30 para. 28 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 28 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 28(1)(2)(a)(c) in force for certain purposes at 1.6.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(2), Sch.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

2 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 28 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### Marginal Citations

M156 1996 c. 56.

#### *Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 (1991 No.2)*

- 29 The Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 shall be amended as follows.
- 30 In section 3 (transactions for which advice or consent of Board is required)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for the words from “before making” to the end substitute “before—
    - (a) publishing proposals for any prescribed alteration to the school under section 28(2)(b) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
    - (b) publishing proposals for the discontinuance of the school under section 29(2) of that Act;
    - (c) serving notice of an intention to discontinue the school under section 30(1) of that Act;
    - (d) publishing proposals for changing the category of the school under paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 8 to that Act; or
    - (e) making any application to, or entering into any agreement with, any body or person for or in connection with any disposal (whether by sale or otherwise) of the premises of the school or any part of them.”;
  - (b) in subsection (2), for “an aided or special agreement school” substitute “a voluntary aided school”;
  - (c) omit subsections (4) and (5); and
  - (d) in subsection (6)—
    - (i) omit “or (5)”, and
    - (ii) for “the secretary of the governing body” substitute “the clerk to the governing body”.
- 31 In section 7 (powers of Board to give directions to governing bodies)—
- (a) for subsection (1) substitute—
    - “(1) Where the Board is satisfied that the governing body of a voluntary aided church school in the diocese in discharging, or failing to discharge, its functions so far as relating to—
      - (a) the making of any prescribed alteration to the school under Chapter II of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, or
      - (b) the discontinuance of the school under that Chapter, or
      - (c) changing the school’s category in accordance with paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 8 to that Act,is acting in a manner which is not in the interests of that school or of church schools generally, the Board may, subject to subsection (1A) below, give directions to the governing body as to the discharge of those functions.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (1A) The Board may not, under subsection (1) above, give directions as to the publication of proposals under paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 8 to that Act which would prevent the publication of proposals for the school to become a foundation school.”;
- (b) in subsection (2), for “the secretary of the governing body” substitute “ the clerk to the governing body ”;
- (c) in subsection (3), for the words from the beginning of paragraph (a) onwards substitute—
- “(a) publication of proposals for any prescribed alteration to the school under section 28(2)(b) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998; or
- (b) publication of proposals under paragraph 2 or 3 of Schedule 8 to that Act,
- the Board may itself publish those proposals, and the provisions of that Act shall apply to anything done by the Board by virtue of this subsection as if it had been done by the governing body of the school. ”;
- (d) omit subsection (5); and
- (e) for the sidenote substitute “ Powers of Board to give directions to governing bodies of voluntary aided church schools. ”
- 32 (1) Section 10 (interpretation) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) omit the definition of “Church of England voluntary school”, and
- (b) for the definition of “church school” substitute—
- ““church school” means a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school as defined by section 142(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;”.
- (3) Omit subsection (2).
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) Expressions used in this Measure which are also used in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 shall, unless the context otherwise requires, have the same meaning as in that Act.”

*Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c.13)*

- 33 The Further and Higher Education Act 1992 shall be amended as follows.
- 34 In section 5(4) (administration of funds by councils), for “grant-maintained school” substitute “ maintained school ”.
- 35 In section 21 (initial instruments and articles)—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit—
- (i) paragraph (a), and
- (ii) “(b) in any other case;”;
- (b) in subsection (2), omit—
- (i) “orders and”,
- (ii) in paragraph (a), “grant-maintained school or other”, and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iii) in paragraph (b), “grant-maintained schools or other”; and
- (c) in subsection (3), for the words from “a grant-maintained” to “earlier enactment)” substitute “ a maintained school, the governing body incorporated under Chapter III of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.

36 For section 25 substitute—

**“25 Transfer of property, etc. from foundation bodies.**

- (1) This section applies where a further education corporation is established to conduct an institution which, on the date the corporation is established, is a foundation or voluntary school belonging to the group of schools for which a foundation body acts under section 21 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.
- (2) Regulations may make such provision as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in connection with the transfer, in any such case, of property, rights and liabilities from the foundation body to the further education corporation.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may, in relation to any such transfer of property, rights or liabilities—
  - (a) modify any provision made by or under any of sections 23, 24, 36 and 38 of this Act and Schedule 5 to this Act;
  - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications;
  - (c) make provision corresponding or similar to any such provision.
- (4) In this section “foundation body” and “group of schools” have the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

37 In section 26 (transfer of staff to further education corporation)—

- (a) in subsection (1), omit “or was a grant-maintained school”; and
- (b) in subsection (6)—
  - (i) for “that authority” substitute “ references to that authority, and ”, and
  - (ii) for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute—
    - “(b) in relation to a corporation established to conduct an institution which, on that date, was a foundation or voluntary aided school, references to the governing body of that school.”

38 In section 28(2)(a) (designation of institutions as eligible for funds) after “school” insert “ (other than one belonging to a group of schools for which a foundation body acts under section 21 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) ”.

39 In section 32 (transfer of property, etc., to designated institutions), after subsection (2) insert—

- “(2A) In the case of an institution which when designated was a voluntary aided school, on the designation date—
  - (a) all land and other property which, immediately before that date, was property of the governing body of the school incorporated under

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

*Changes to legislation: School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Chapter III of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, and

- (b) all rights and liabilities of that body subsisting immediately before that date,

shall be transferred to and, by virtue of this Act, vest in the governing body of the designated institution; and the governing body of the school shall be dissolved on that date.”

40 In section 37 (attribution of surpluses and deficits)—

- (a) in subsection (1), for “section 103 of the Education Act 1996 (schemes for financing schools)” substitute “ section 48 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (LEAs’ financial schemes) ”; and
- (b) in subsection (7), in the definition of “budget share”, for “Part II of the Education Act 1996” substitute “ Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.

F260 41 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F260** Sch. 30 para. 41 repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes, 1.10.2000 for E. and 1.4.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, Sch. 11; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, Sch. Pt. I

F261 42 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F261** Sch. 30 para. 42 repealed (28.7.2000 for specified purposes and 1.10.2000 for E. and 1.4.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, Sch. 11; S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2, Sch. Pt. I

43 In section 47(2) (transfer of higher education institutions to further education sector) for the words from “any provision” to the end substitute “ provision as to the initial name of the corporation as a further education corporation. ”

44 F262 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F262** Sch. 30 para. 44 repealed (1.10.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 1 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 2 (with Sch.)

45 In section 58(3) (reorganisations of schools involving establishment of further education corporation), for paragraph (b) substitute—

- “(b) a prescribed alteration within the meaning of section 28 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 has been made to the school,”.

46 In section 90 (interpretation)—

- (a) after subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) In this Act references to a voluntary aided school are—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in relation to any time before the appointed day within the meaning of the <sup>M157</sup>School Standards and Framework Act 1998, references to a voluntary aided school within the meaning of the Education Act 1996; or
  - (b) in relation to any time on or after that day, references to a voluntary aided school within the meaning of the 1998 Act.”; and
- (b) in subsection (5), at end insert “ and section 140(2) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 has effect for defining the expressions there mentioned. ”

#### Marginal Citations

[M157 1996 c. 56.](#)

#### *Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c.53)*

- 47 In paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 to the Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (tribunals under general supervision of Council on Tribunals)—
- (a) for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute—
    - “(b) exclusion appeal panels constituted in accordance with Schedule 18 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31);
    - (c) admission appeal panels constituted in accordance with Schedule 24 or paragraph 3 of Schedule 25 to that Act;”;and
  - (b) in paragraph (d), for “(c. 38)” substitute “ (c. 57) ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I61** [Sch. 30 para. 47](#) wholly in force at 1.9.1999; [Sch. 30 para. 47](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 145\(3\)](#); [Sch. 30 para. 47](#) in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6, Sch. 4](#)); [Sch. 30 para. 47](#) in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7](#)).

#### *Charities Act 1993 (c.10)*

- 48 In section 3 of the <sup>M158</sup>Charities Act 1993 (the register of charities), after subsection (5A) (inserted by Schedule 3 to the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998) insert—
- “(5B) In addition, in subsection (5) above—
- (a) paragraph (a) shall be read as referring also to—
    - (i) any body to which section 23(1)(a) or (b) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 applies, and
    - (ii) any Education Action Forum established by virtue of section 10(1) of that Act; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) paragraph (b) shall be read as referring also to any foundation to which section 23(3) of that Act applies;

but an order of the Commissioners, or regulations made by the Secretary of State, may provide that section 23(3) of that Act shall cease to apply to any such foundation as is mentioned in that provision or to any such foundation of a description specified in the order or regulations.”

**Marginal Citations**

**M158** 1998 c. 30.

49 In section 79(9) of that Act (parochial charities), for the words from “voluntary or” to the end substitute “ foundation or voluntary school within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998. ”

*Welsh Language Act 1993 (c.38)*

50 In section 6(1) of the Welsh Language Act 1993 (meaning of “public body”), for paragraph (l) substitute—

“(l) the governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school (within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998);”.

*Value Added Tax Act 1994 (c.23)*

51 In Schedule 9 to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 (exemptions), in paragraph (a) of Note (1) to Group 6 (education)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (iii), for the <sup>M159</sup>words from “a county” to “Education Act 1996” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary school within the meaning of the <sup>M160</sup>School Standards and Framework Act 1998, a special school within the meaning of section 337 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
- (b) omit sub-paragraphs (v) and (vii).

**Marginal Citations**

**M159** 1996 c. 56.

**M160** 1996 c. 56.

*Education Act 1994 (c.30)*

52 The Education Act 1994 shall be amended as follows.

**Commencement Information**

**I62** Sch. 30 para. 54 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 54 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 54 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. IV; Sch. 30 para. 54 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 53 In section 11A (general duty of Secretary of State with respect to training), omit “grant-maintained schools.”
- 54 In section 12 (power of schools to provide courses of initial teacher training)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “any county, voluntary or maintained special school or of any grant-maintained school” substitute “any community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school”;
  - (b) omit subsections (4) and (5); and
  - (c) in subsection (6), for the words from “purposes of” onwards substitute “purposes of Chapter IV of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (financing of maintained schools), as being undertaken for the purposes of the school.”

#### Commencement Information

**I63** Sch. 30 para. 54 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 54 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 154(3); Sch. 30 para. 54(c) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. IV; Sch. 30 para. 54 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### *Employment Rights Act 1996 (c.18)*

- 55 In section 134(1) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (teachers in aided schools), for the words from “an aided school” to “1996” substitute “a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school is dismissed by the governing body of the school in pursuance of a requirement of the local education authority under section 55(5) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998”.

#### *Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (c.50)*

- 56 In section 4(1) of the <sup>M161</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (children with special educational needs), for the words from “(except where” to the end substitute “(except where a duty is already imposed under section 313(2) of the <sup>M162</sup>Education Act 1996 or section 123(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) to have regard to the provisions of the code of practice issued under section 313 (practical guidance in respect of the discharge of functions under Part IV of the Education Act 1996).”

#### Marginal Citations

**M161** 1996 c. 56.

**M162** 1996 c. 56.

#### *Education Act 1996 (c.56)*

- 57 The Education Act 1996 shall be amended as follows.
- 58 In section 1(2) (the stages of education), omit paragraph (b) and the “and” preceding it.
- 59 In section 5 (primary, secondary and middle schools)—
- (a) in subsection (3) for “section 49, 198(6) or 291” substitute “section 28(4) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998”, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in subsection (5) for “sections 49, 198(6) and 291” substitute “ section 28(4) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- 60 In section 6(2) (nursery schools and special schools), for the words from “and” onwards substitute “ and (in the case of a school which is not maintained by a local education authority) is for the time being approved, as mentioned in section 337. ”
- 61 In section 9 (pupils to be educated in accordance with parents’ wishes), for the words from “State,” to “funding authorities” substitute “ State and local education authorities ”.
- 62 In section 14 (functions of local education authorities in respect of provision of primary and secondary schools), omit subsection (5).
- 63 After section 15 insert—

**“15A Functions in respect of full-time education for 16 to 18 year olds.**

- (1) A local education authority may secure the provision for their area of full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age who have not attained the age of 19, including provision for persons from other areas.
- (2) Subsections (6) and (7) of section 14 shall apply in relation to functions under this section as they apply in relation to functions under that section.”

VALID FROM 12/01/2010

- 64 (1) Section 16 (power to establish, maintain and assist primary and secondary schools) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (c) and the “and” preceding it.
- (3) In subsection (2), for “, maintain and assist” substitute “ and maintain ”.
- (4) For the sidenote substitute “ Power to establish and maintain primary and secondary schools. ”

PROSPECTIVE

- 65 In section 17(2) (powers in respect of nursery education), for “establish, maintain and assist” substitute “ establish and maintain ”.
- 66 Omit sections 20 to 28 (the funding authorities).

**Commencement Information**

- I64** Sch. 30 para. 66 wholly in force at 1.11.1999; Sch. 30 para. 66 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 66 in force for specified purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 66 in force at 1.11.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 67 In section 29 (provision of information by local education authorities)—  
(a) omit subsection (2), and  
(b) in subsection (3), omit the words “and the funding authority”.
- 68 Omit section 30 (provision of information by funding authorities).
- 69 Part II (schools maintained by local education authorities) shall be omitted.

#### Commencement Information

**I65** Sch. 30 para. 69 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 69 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 69 in force for specified purposes at 1.10.1998 and 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I and IV; Sch. 30 para. 69 in force for specified purposes at 10.3.1999 by S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), Sch. 2; Sch. 30 para. 69 in force for specified purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para 69 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 70 Part III (grant-maintained schools) shall be omitted.

#### Commencement Information

**I66** Sch. 30 para. 70 partly in force; Sch. 30 para. 70 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 70 in force at 1.10.1998 for certain purposes by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 70 in force at 1.4.1999 for certain purposes by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 70 in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 71 In section 312 (definitions for purposes of Part IV)—  
(a) in subsection (4)(a) omit “or grant-maintained schools in their area”; and  
(b) in subsection (5) for the definition of “maintained school” substitute—  
““maintained school” means any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school not established in a hospital.”
- 72 In section 313(1) (code of practice on special educational needs), for “maintained or grant-maintained schools, or grant-maintained special schools,” substitute “maintained schools”.
- 73 In section 315(2) (review of arrangements for special educational provision), for the words from “the funding” onwards substitute “the governing bodies of community, foundation and voluntary and community and foundation special schools in their area.”
- 74 (1) Section 317 (duties of governing body or local education authority in relation to pupils with special educational needs) shall be amended as follows.  
(2) In subsection (1), for “a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school,” substitute “a community, foundation or voluntary school,”.  
(3) In subsection (2), for “a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school,” substitute “a community, foundation or voluntary school,”.  
(4) In subsection (3)—  
(a) in paragraph (a)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) for “county, voluntary and grant-maintained schools” substitute “community, foundation and voluntary schools”, and
  - (ii) omit “, the funding authority”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for the words from “the funding” onwards substitute “the governing bodies of community, foundation and voluntary schools.”
- (5) In subsection (4), for “a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school” substitute “a community, foundation or voluntary school”.
- (6) In subsection (5), for “each county, voluntary, maintained special or grant-maintained school” substitute “each community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school”.
- (7) In subsection (6), for “each county, voluntary or grant-maintained school” substitute “each community, foundation or voluntary school”.
- (8) In subsection (7), for the words from “the articles” onwards substitute “section 42 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”
- 75 (1) Section 318 (provision of goods and services in connection with special educational needs) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “county, voluntary or grant-maintained schools” substitute “community, foundation or voluntary schools”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “maintained or grant-maintained special schools” substitute “community or foundation special schools”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for the words from “this section” to “in any other area” substitute “this section to the governing bodies of community, foundation or voluntary schools or community or foundation special schools in any other area”.
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) A local education authority may supply goods and services to any authority or other person (other than a governing body within subsection (1)) for the purpose only of assisting them in making for any child to whom subsection (3A) applies any special educational provision which any learning difficulty of the child calls for.
- (3A) This subsection applies to any child—
- (a) who is receiving relevant nursery education within the meaning of section 123 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, or
  - (b) in respect of whose education grants are (or are to be) made under section 1 of the <sup>M163</sup>Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.”

#### Commencement Information

**I67** Sch. 30 para. 75 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 75 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 75(4) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 75 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M163 1996 c. 50.

- 76 In section 321(3) (general duty of local education authority towards children for whom they are responsible)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “maintained” onwards substitute “maintained school”, and
  - (b) for paragraph (b) substitute—
    - “(b) education is provided for him at a school which is not a maintained school but is so provided at the expense of the authority.”.
- 77 In section 324 (statement of special educational needs)—
- (a) in subsection (5)(b), for “maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school” substitute “maintained school”; and
  - (b) after subsection (5) insert—
    - “(5A) Subsection (5)(b) has effect regardless of any duty imposed on the governing body of a school by section 1(6) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”

### Commencement Information

**I68** Sch. 30 para. 77 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 77 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 77(b) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 77(a) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 78 In section 327 (access for local education authority to certain schools), for subsection (b) substitute—
  - “(b) in pursuance of the statement education is provided for the child at a school maintained by another local education authority.”
- 79 Omit section 330 (assessment of education needs at request of governing body of grant-maintained school).
- 80 For section 337 substitute—
- “337 Special schools.**
- (1) A school is a special school if it is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs.
  - (2) There are the following categories of special school—
    - (a) special schools maintained by local education authorities, comprising—
      - (i) community special schools, and
      - (ii) foundation special schools; and
    - (b) special schools which are not so maintained but are for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 342.”
- 81 Omit sections 338 to 341 (establishment of maintained and grant-maintained special schools).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I69** Sch. 30 para. 81 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 81 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 81 in force for specified purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 81 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as it is not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Sch. 5-7).

82 For section 342 substitute—

### *“ Approval of non-maintained special schools*

#### **342 Approval of non-maintained special schools.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may approve under this section any school which—
  - (a) is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs, and
  - (b) is not a community or foundation special school,
 and may give his approval before or after the school is established.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to the requirements which are to be complied with as a condition of approval under subsection (1) above.
- (3) Any school which was a special school immediately before 1st April 1994 shall be treated, subject to subsection (4) below, as approved under this section.
- (4) Regulations may make provision as to—
  - (a) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school while approved under this section, and
  - (b) the withdrawal of approval from a school (including approval treated as given under subsection (3)) at the request of the proprietor or on the ground that there has been a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (2) and (4), the requirements which may be imposed by the regulations include requirements—
  - (a) which call for arrangements to be approved by the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) as to the organisation of any special school as a primary school or as a secondary school.
- (6) Regulations shall make provision for securing that, so far as practicable, every pupil attending a special school approved under this section—
  - (a) receives religious education and attends religious worship, or
  - (b) is withdrawn from receiving such education or from attendance at such worship in accordance with the wishes of his parent.”

83 Omit sections 343 to 346 (government etc. of special schools).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I70** Sch. 30 para. 83 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 83 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 83 in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 83 partly in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 83 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

84 In section 348 (provision of special education at non-maintained schools), for subsection (3) substitute—

“(3) In this section “maintained school” means a school maintained by a local education authority.”

85 [F263] In section 350 (definitions for purposes of Part V), for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) In this Part “maintained school” means—  
(a) any community, foundation or voluntary school; or  
(b) except where otherwise stated, any community or foundation special school not established in a hospital.”]

### Textual Amendments

**F263** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

86 [F264] In section 352(1)(a) (basic curriculum for maintained schools), for “sections 376 to 381” substitute “Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.]

### Textual Amendments

**F264** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

87 [F265] In section 356 (establishment of the National Curriculum by order)—  
(a) in each of subsections (4) and (8), for “by Her Majesty’s Stationery Office” substitute “as specified in the order ”; and  
(b) in subsection (5)(a)(ii), omit the words “(except in the case of grant-maintained schools)”.]

### Textual Amendments

**F265** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

- I71** Sch. 30 para. 87 wholly in force at 1.4.1999; Sch. 30 para. 87 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 87(a) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. 1; Sch. 30 para. 87(b) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

88

[<sup>F266</sup>In section 357 (implementation of National Curriculum in schools), omit subsection (2).]

### Textual Amendments

- F266** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

89

[<sup>F267</sup>In section 362 (National Curriculum: development work and experiments)—

- (a) in subsection (3), for “a county, controlled or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, voluntary controlled or community special school ”, and
- (b) in subsection (4), for “a grant-maintained, aided or special agreement school” substitute “ a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school ”.]

### Textual Amendments

- F267** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

90

[<sup>F268</sup>In section 366 (information concerning directions under section 365)—

- (a) in subsection (1)(b), omit the words from “where” to “special school,”;
- (b) in subsection (4), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a maintained school ”;
- (c) omit subsection (5); and
- (d) in subsection (6), for “subsection (1), (4) or (5)” substitute “ subsection (1) or (4) ”.]

### Textual Amendments

- F268** Sch. 30 para. 85-90 repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

91

Omit sections 370 to 374 (functions of local education authority etc. in relation to curriculum).

### Commencement Information

- I72** Sch. 30 para. 91 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 91 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 91 in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. 1; Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

30 para. 91 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 92 Omit sections 376 to 389 (religious education and worship).
- 93 In section 390 (constitution of advisory councils), for subsection (2) substitute—
- “(2) The council shall consist of such groups of persons appointed by the authority as representative members (“representative groups”) as are required by subsection (4).”
- 94 (1) Section 391 (functions of advisory councils) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) to advise the local education authority on such matters connected with—
- (i) religious worship in community schools or in foundation schools which (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) do not have a religious character, and
- (ii) the religious education to be given in accordance with an agreed or other syllabus in accordance with Schedule 19 to that Act,
- as the authority may refer to the council or as the council may see fit, and”.
- (3) Omit subsections (8) and (9).
- 95 In section 392 (advisory councils: supplementary provisions), omit subsection (4).
- 96 Omit section 393 (duty to constitute new standing advisory council).
- 97 (1) Section 394 (determination of cases in which requirement for Christian worship is not to apply) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “county school” substitute “community school”;
- (b) for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) any foundation school which has not been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 by the Secretary of State as having a religious character,”; and
- (c) for “section 386(2)” substitute “paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (requirement for Christian collective worship)”.
- (3) In subsection (4), for “section 387” substitute “paragraph 4 of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (disapplication of requirement for Christian collective worship)”.
- (4) In subsection (8), for “a school which becomes a grant-maintained school” substitute “a community school which becomes a foundation school (by virtue of section 35 of, and Schedule 8 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998)”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 98 In section 395(1) (review of determinations under section 394), for “section 386(2)” substitute “ paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- 99 In section 396(1) (power of Secretary of State to direct council to revoke determination or discharge duty), for “section 386(2)” substitute “ paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- 100 In section 399 (determination of question whether religious education in accordance with trust deed), for “a voluntary or grant-maintained school” substitute “ a foundation or voluntary school ”.
- 101 In section 402(6) (obligation to enter pupils for public examinations), for “a maintained special school” substitute “ a community or foundation special school ”.
- 102 In section 403(2) (sex education: manner of provision), for “a maintained special school” substitute “ a community or foundation special school ”.
- 103 In section 404 (sex education: statements of policy)—
- (a) in subsection (2), for “a maintained special school” substitute “ a community or foundation special school ”; and
  - (b) omit subsection (3).

#### Commencement Information

**I73** Sch. 30 para. 103 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 103 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 103(b) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I.1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 103(a) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 104 In section 406(3) (political indoctrination), for “a maintained special school” substitute “ a community or foundation special school ”.
- 105 In section 407(2) (duty to secure balanced treatment of political issues), for “a maintained special school” substitute “ a community or foundation special school ”.
- 106 In section 408 (provision of information)—
- (a) omit subsection (1)(b);
  - (b) in subsection (2)(d), for “pupils at such categories of school” substitute “ such classes or descriptions of pupils ”;
  - (c) omit subsection (3); and
  - (d) in subsection (4)—
    - (i) omit paragraphs (b) and (c); and
    - (ii) in paragraph (d), for “389” substitute “ 390 ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I74** Sch. 30 para. 106 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 106 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 106(b) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 106 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 107 In section 409 (complaints and enforcement: maintained schools)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “of aided schools and of special agreement schools,” substitute “ of foundation and voluntary aided schools, ”;



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in subsection (2), for the words from “any county” to “special school” substitute “ any community, foundation or voluntary school maintained by the authority or any community or foundation special school ”;
  - (c) in subsection (3)(b), omit “other than grant-maintained schools”; and
  - (d) for the sidenote substitute “ Complaints and enforcement: maintained schools. ”
- 108 For the cross-heading “SCHOOL ADMISSIONS” preceding section 411 substitute — “ ADMISSION, REGISTRATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF PUPILS ”.
- 109 Omit sections 411 to 432 (admission of pupils: general).

#### Commencement Information

**I75** Sch. 30 para. 109 partly in force; Sch. 30 para. 109 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 109 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 109 in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4).

- 110 Omit section 433(4) (time for admission of pupils: admission for nursery education).
- 111 In section 434(4)(c) (registration of pupils: returns)—
- (a) at the end of sub-paragraph (i) insert “ and ”; and
  - (b) omit sub-paragraph (ii).
- 112 Omit section 436 (effect of admission for nursery education).
- 113 In section 437 (school attendance orders)—
- (a) in each of subsections (5) and (6), omit “or grant-maintained”; and
  - (b) in subsection (8), for the definition of “maintained school” substitute—  
““maintained school” means any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school not established in a hospital; and”.
- 114 In section 438 (choice of school: child without statement of special educational needs)—
- (a) for subsection (4)(a) substitute—  
“(a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school maintained by a local education authority and, where that authority are not the authority by whom the notice was served, notifies the latter authority of the application, and”;
  - (b) for subsection (5) substitute—  
“(5) If—
    - (a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3), the parent applies to the local education authority by whom the notice was served for education to be provided at a school which is not a school maintained by a local education authority, and
    - (b) the child is offered a place at the school and the authority are required by virtue of regulations under section 18(3) to

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- pay the fees payable in respect of the education provided for him at the school,  
 that school shall be named in the order.”; and  
 (c) in subsection (6)(a)(i), omit “and is not a grant-maintained school”.

#### Commencement Information

**I76** Sch. 30 para. 114 partly in force; Sch. 30 para. 114 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 114 in force at 1.9.1999 for certain purposes by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 115 (1) Section 439 (specification of schools in notices under section 438(2)) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for the words from “fixed” to “as the number” substitute “ fixed in accordance with section 93 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (fixing admission numbers) as the number ”.
- (3) In subsections (3), (5) and (6), omit “or grant-maintained” wherever occurring.
- (4) After subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) A local education authority shall not specify a school in a notice under section 438(2) if the admission of the child concerned would result in prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (parental preferences) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section.”
- 116 In section 440 (amendment of order at request of parent: child without statement of special educational needs)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(a), omit “or grant-maintained school”;
- (b) in subsection (3), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—
- “(a) the parent applies to the authority for education to be provided for the child at a school which is not a school maintained by a local education authority and which is different from the school named in the order,
- (b) the child is offered a place at the school and the authority are required by virtue of regulations under section 18(3) to pay the fees payable in respect of the education provided for him at the school, and”;
- (c) in subsection (4)(a), omit “and is not a grant-maintained school”.

#### Commencement Information

**I77** Sch. 30 para. 116 partly in force; Sch. 30 para. 116 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 116 in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 117 In section 444(4)(b) (offence: failure to secure regular attendance at school of registered pupil), omit the words “or the funding authority”.
- 118 Omit section 448 (exemption where child becomes five during term).
- 119 For section 449 and the cross-headings preceding it substitute—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### “CHAPTER III

#### CHARGES IN CONNECTION WITH EDUCATION AT MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

##### *Preliminary*

#### **449 Meaning of “maintained school” in Chapter III.**

In this Chapter “maintained school” means any school maintained by a local education authority.”

- 120 In section 451 (prohibition of charges for provision of education)—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit “Subject to subsection (5)”;
  - (b) in subsection (3)(b), for the words from “or 384” onwards substitute “ (implementation of National Curriculum) or section 69 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (duty to secure due provision of religious education). ”;
  - (c) in subsection (4)(b), for “384” substitute “ section 69 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”, and
  - (d) omit subsection (5).
- 121 In section 456(1) (regulation of permitted charges), omit the words from “, other than” to “section 231(8)”.
- 122 In section 457 (charges and remissions policies)—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit the words from “This subsection” onwards; and
  - (b) in subsection (3), omit “other than a grant-maintained school”.
- 123 In section 458 (charges for board and lodging at boarding schools)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) for the words from “pupil concerned” to “charges” substitute “ pupil concerned, to the local education authority, charges ”, and
    - (ii) omit “or governing body”;
  - (b) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) omit paragraph (a), and
    - (ii) in paragraph (b), for “for his area” substitute “ for that pupil’s area ”;
  - (c) omit subsection (3); and
  - (d) in subsection (4)(b), omit “or to the governing body of a grant-maintained school”.
- 124 In section 463 (meaning of “independent school”)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (b) insert “ or ”; and
  - (b) omit paragraph (c) and the “or” preceding it.
- 125 In section 484 (grants for education support and training)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “grants for education support and training,” substitute “ education standards grants, ”;
  - (b) in subsections (3) and (4), for “any grant for education support and training” substitute “ any education standards grant ”; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) for the sidenote substitute “ Education standards grants. ”
- 126 In section 489 (conditions as to payment of grants under sections 484 to 488), in subsection (2)(a) for “grant for education support and training,” substitute “ education standards grant, ”.
- 127 In section 490(1) (grants in respect of special provision for ethnic minorities), omit paragraph (a).
- 128 For section 494 substitute—

**“494 Recoupment: excluded pupils.**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority (“the old authority”) and, in the financial year in which the exclusion first takes effect, he is subsequently provided with education by another local education authority (“the new authority”), whether at a school maintained by that authority or otherwise than at school.
- (2) The old authority shall pay to the new authority, in connection with the provision of education for that pupil in that financial year, such amount, if any, as is payable in accordance with regulations.
- (3) Where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority and, in the financial year in which the exclusion first takes effect, the following events subsequently occur—
- (a) he is first provided by another local education authority (“the intermediate authority”) with education in a pupil referral unit or otherwise than at school, and
- (b) at any time afterwards he is provided with education by a local education authority other than the intermediate authority (“the last authority”), whether at a school maintained by that authority or otherwise than at school,
- then, in connection with the provision of the education mentioned in paragraph (b), subsection (2) shall apply to the intermediate authority and the last authority as if they were an old authority and a new authority respectively.
- (4) Any dispute as to whether any local education authority are entitled to be paid any amount under this section by any other such authority shall be determined by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Regulations may prescribe the time when the permanent exclusion of a pupil is to be regarded as taking effect for the purposes of this section.”
- 129 In section 496 (power of Secretary of State to prevent unreasonable use of functions), in subsection (2)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”; and
- (b) for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute—
- “(b) the governing body of any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school.”
- 130 In section 497 (general default powers of the Secretary of State), in subsection (2)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”; and
  - (b) for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute—
    - “(b) the governing body of any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school.”
- 131 In section 498 (powers of Secretary of State where no properly constituted governing body), for subsection (2) substitute—  
“(2) This section applies to any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school.”
- 132 Omit sections 500 to 505 (rationalisation of school places).

#### Commencement Information

**178** Sch. 30 para. 132 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 132 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 132 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 132 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 133 In section 509 (provision of transport etc.)—
- (a) omit subsection (5)(a); and
  - (b) for subsection (6) substitute—
    - “(6) Regulations may require a local education authority to publish, at such times and in such manner as may be prescribed, such information as may be prescribed with respect to the authority’s policy and arrangements relating to the making of—
      - (a) provision under this section for persons attending institutions mentioned in subsection (1)(c) or (d) who are over compulsory school age and have not attained the age of 19; or
      - (b) provision under section 509A (travel arrangements for children receiving nursery education otherwise than at school).”

#### Commencement Information

**179** Sch. 30 para. 133 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 133 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 133(b) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. IV; Sch. 30 para. 133(a) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 134 In section 510 (provision of clothing)—
- (a) in subsection (1)(a) and (c), omit “or at a grant-maintained school” wherever occurring;
  - (b) in subsection (3)(a), omit “or a grant-maintained school”;
  - (c) in subsection (4)(a), omit “, at a grant-maintained school”; and
  - (d) in subsection (5)(a), omit “grant-maintained school or”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 135 In section 514 (provision of board and lodging otherwise than at school), in subsection (1)(a), for the words from “particular” onwards substitute “ particular community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school, but ”.
- 136 In section 515(2) (provision of teaching services for day nurseries), for “voluntary school” substitute “ foundation or voluntary school ”.
- 137 Omit section 516 (supply by LEA of goods and services to grant-maintained schools).

PROSPECTIVE

- 138 Omit section 517 (payment of fees at schools not maintained by a <sup>[F269]</sup>local authority).

**Textual Amendments**

**F269** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children’s Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 10(2)** (with Sch. 2 para. 10(4))

- 139 (1) Section 519 (allowances for governors, etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from “travelling” to “section 115);” substitute “such allowances as may be prescribed to governors of—
- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school or community or foundation special school which does not have a delegated budget (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998);”.
- (3) In subsection (3), for “travelling and subsistence allowances” substitute “ such allowances as may be prescribed ”.
- (4) After subsection (6) add—
- “(7) Regulations may impose a limit on the amount which may be paid by way of any allowance under this section.”

**Commencement Information**

**180** Sch. 30 para. 139 wholly in force; Sch. 30 para. 139 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 139 in force at 20.11.1998 for certain purposes and at 1.4.1999 for all other purposes by S.I. 1998/2791, art. 2

- 140 Omit section 520(3) (medical inspection and treatment of pupils: grant-maintained schools excluded).
- 141 In section 521 (examination of pupils for cleanliness), in subsection (4), omit paragraph (b) and the “and” preceding it.
- 142 In section 524 (removal of pupil at direction of medical officer)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “excluded” substitute “ suspended ”;
- (b) omit subsection (3)(b) and the “or” preceding it; and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) for the sidenote substitute “ Suspension of a pupil pending examination or cleansing. ”
- 143 In section 525 (offence of neglecting the cleanliness of a pupil), in subsection (3), omit “or a grant-maintained school”.
- 144 In section 527A (local education authority plans for children with behavioural difficulties), as inserted by section 9 of the <sup>M164</sup>Education Act 1997, for subsection (7) substitute—
- “(7) In this section “relevant school”, in relation to a local education authority, means a school maintained by the authority (whether situated in their area or not).”
- Marginal Citations**  
M164 1997 c. 44.
- 145 In section 529 (power to accept gifts on trust for educational purposes)—
- (a) in subsection (2) for the words from “section 35(1)” onwards substitute “ section 28 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as an intention to establish a new community school (so that proposals for that purpose shall be published as required by that section); and Schedule 6 to that Act (statutory proposals: procedure and implementation) shall apply accordingly. ”; and
- (b) in subsection (3) for “a county school” substitute “ a community school ”.
- 146 In section 530 (compulsory purchase of land)—
- (a) in subsection (2) for “voluntary school” substitute “ foundation, voluntary or foundation special school ”; and
- (b) in subsection (3) for the words from “under” onwards substitute “ under paragraph 18 of Schedule 6 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (power to give assistance to governing body of voluntary aided school in carrying out statutory proposals). ”
- 147 In section 531(2) (acquisition of land by agreement) for “voluntary school” substitute “ foundation, voluntary or foundation special school ”.
- 148 In section 533 (duties of governing bodies of maintained schools with respect to provision of school meals etc.)—
- (a) in subsection (2), for “a voluntary” substitute “ any such ”; and
- (b) in subsection (3), after “Part II” insert “ of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- 149 Omit section 534 (duties of governing bodies of grant-maintained schools with respect to school meals).
- 150 In section 535(1) (provision of teaching services for day nurseries), for “a county or voluntary primary school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary primary school ”.
- 151 Omit section 536 (medical inspection and treatment of pupils at grant-maintained schools).
- 152 In section 537 (power of Secretary of State to require information from governing bodies etc.)—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.*

*Changes to legislation: School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(a) for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision requiring—

(a) the governing body of every school which is—

(i) maintained by a local education authority, or

(ii) a special school which is not maintained by such an authority, and

(b) the proprietor of every independent school,

to provide such information about the school as may be prescribed.”; and

(b) in subsection (7)(a), omit “or which is a grant-maintained school”.

153 For section 537A substitute—

**“537A Provision of information about individual pupils.**

(1) Regulations may make provision requiring—

(a) the governing body of every school which is—

(i) maintained by a local education authority, or

(ii) a special school which is not maintained by such an authority, and

(b) the proprietor of every independent school,

to provide to the relevant person such individual pupil information as may be prescribed.

(2) In subsection (1) “the relevant person” means one or more of the following—

(a) the Secretary of State, and

(b) any prescribed person.

(3) Where any person within paragraph (b) of subsection (2) receives information by virtue of subsection (1), the Secretary of State may require that person to provide any such information—

(a) to him, or

(b) to any prescribed person.

(4) The Secretary of State may provide any individual pupil information—

(a) to any information collator,

(b) to any prescribed person, or

(c) to any person falling within a prescribed category.

(5) Any information collator—

(a) may provide any individual pupil information—

(i) to the Secretary of State,

(ii) to any other information collator, or

(iii) to the governing body or proprietor of the school attended by the pupil or pupils to whom the information relates; and

(b) may, at such times as the Secretary of State may determine, provide such individual pupil information as may be prescribed—

(i) to any prescribed person, or



*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(ii) to any person falling within a prescribed category.

(6) Any person holding any individual pupil information (other than the Secretary of State or an information collator) may provide that information to—

- (a) the Secretary of State,
- (b) any information collator, or
- (c) any prescribed person.

(7) No information received under or by virtue of this section shall be published in any form which includes the name of the pupil or pupils to whom it relates.

(8) Regulations under this section may provide that, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, the provision of information to a person other than the Secretary of State is to be treated, for the purposes of any provision of such regulations or this section, as compliance with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of any such provision and relating to the provision of information to the Secretary of State.

(9) In this section—

“individual pupil information” means information relating to and identifying individual pupils or former pupils at any school within subsection (1), whether obtained under subsection (1) or otherwise;

“information collator” means any body which, for the purposes of or in connection with the functions of the Secretary of State relating to education, is responsible for collating or checking information relating to pupils.”

154 In section 538 (provision of information to Secretary of State by governing bodies of maintained schools), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school ”.

155 Omit section 539 (provision of information by governing body of grant-maintained schools).

156 In section 540 (distribution of information about schools providing a secondary education), for subsection (2) substitute—

“(2) In this section “school” means—

- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school, or
- (b) any community or foundation special school (which is not established in a hospital).”

157 In section 541 (distribution of information about further education institutions), for subsection (4) substitute—

“(4) In this section “school” means—

- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school, or
- (b) any community or foundation special school (which is not established in a hospital).”

158 In section 542 (prescribed standards for school premises)—

- (a) in subsection (1), omit “and of grant-maintained schools”;
- (b) omit subsection (3); and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in subsection (4), for “subsections (2) and (3) have” substitute “subsection (2) has”.
- 159 In section 543 (relaxation of prescribed standards in special cases)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “or (4)” substitute “, (4) or (4A)”; and
- (b) after subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) This subsection applies, in relation to any playing fields used by the school for the purposes of the school, if the Secretary of State is satisfied that, having regard to other facilities for physical education available to the school, it would be unreasonable to require conformity with any prescribed requirement relating to playing fields.
- In this subsection “playing fields” has the same meaning as in section 77 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (control of disposals or changing use of school playing fields).”
- 160 In section 544 (approval etc. of school premises and boarding houses)—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit the words from “(or,” to “authority”); and
- (b) in subsection (3)—
- (i) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”, and
- (ii) omit paragraph (b).
- Commencement Information**

**181** Sch. 30 para. 160 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 160 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 160(a) in force at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 160(b) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).
- 161 In section 545(2) (exemption from building byelaws of approved buildings), omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding it.
- 162 In section 546(2) (control of potentially harmful materials and apparatus in schools)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”; and
- (b) omit paragraph (b).
- 163 In section 547 (nuisance or disturbance on school premises)—
- (a) in subsection (2), omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding it;
- (b) in each of subsections (4) and (7), for “an aided, special agreement or grant-maintained school” substitute “ a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school ”; and
- (c) in each of subsections (5) and (8), for “a voluntary or grant-maintained school” substitute “ a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school ”.
- 164 Omit sections 549 and 550 (provisions about corporal punishment).
- 165 In section 550B(2) (detention), as inserted by section 5 of the <sup>M165</sup>Education Act 1997, omit “(b) a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school;”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Marginal Citations

M165 1997 c. 44.

- 166 In section 551(2) (regulations as to duration of school day etc.)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”; and
  - (b) omit paragraph (b).
- 167 Omit section 552 (transitional exemption orders for purposes of Sex Discrimination Act 1975).

### Commencement Information

**182** Sch. 30 para. 167 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 167 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 167 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 167 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 168 (1) Section 554 (power to make new provision as to use of endowments) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) This section applies where—
- (a) in relation to any time before the appointed day, the premises of a voluntary or grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) have ceased to be used for such a voluntary or (as the case may be) grant-maintained school; or
  - (b) in relation to any time on or after the appointed day—
    - (i) the premises of a foundation or voluntary school (within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) have ceased to be used for such a foundation or (as the case may be) voluntary school; or
    - (ii) in the opinion of the Secretary of State it is likely such premises will cease to be so used;
- and in this subsection “the appointed day” has the meaning given by section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”
- (3) In subsection (3)—
- (a) for paragraph (a) substitute—
    - “(a) that the school was or has been maintained as a voluntary or grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) or as a foundation or voluntary school (within the meaning of the <sup>M166</sup>School Standards and Framework Act 1998) since 1st April 1945 (the date when Part II of the Education Act 1944 came into force); and”;
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “(or any corresponding earlier enactment)”, substitute “of this Act (or any corresponding earlier enactment) or paragraph 3 or 4 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- (4) For subsection (4)(b) substitute—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “(b) where religious education in accordance with such tenets is shown to have been given to any pupils at—
- (i) a controlled school (within the meaning of this Act),
  - (ii) a grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) which was a controlled school immediately before it became a grant-maintained school, or
  - (iii) a foundation or voluntary controlled school with a religious character (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998),
- the religious education shall be taken to have been given to them at the request of their parents, unless the contrary is shown.”

### Marginal Citations

M166 1944 c. 31.

- 169 In section 556(2) (content of orders under section 554)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “voluntary schools or grant-maintained schools” substitute “ foundation schools or voluntary schools ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “voluntary” onwards substitute “ school at the premises referred to in section 554(1). ”
- 170 In section 557(9) (adoption of statutory trusts), in the definition of “relevant school” for “a voluntary school or a grant-maintained school” substitute “ a foundation or voluntary school ”.
- 171 In section 559 (power of local education authorities to prohibit or restrict employment of children)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “county” substitute “ community, foundation ”; and
  - (b) in subsection (2), for “county” substitute “ community, foundation ”.
- 172 In section 563(3) (educational records)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ and ”; and
  - (b) omit paragraph (b).
- 173 In section 566(1)(b) (evidence: documents), for “a county or voluntary school” substitute “ a maintained school ”.
- 174 Omit section 567 (stamp duty).
- 175 In section 568 (orders)—
- (a) for subsection (2) substitute—
    - “(2) For the purposes of subsection (1) “the excepted provisions” are—
    - section 349;
    - sections 468, 471(1) and 474;
    - section 489(3);
    - section 497; and
    - section 545.”;
  - (b) in subsection (3), omit “section 517(6),”; and
  - (c) omit subsection (5)(b) and the “or” preceding it.
- 176 In section 569 (regulations)—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in subsection (2), for “section 480 or 492 or paragraph 1(4) of Schedule 20,” substitute “ section 492, ”; and
  - (b) in subsection (3), for “section 480 or 492 or paragraph 1(4) of Schedule 20” substitute “ section 492 ”.
- 177 In section 570 (revocation and variation of certain orders and directions)—
  - (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “ or ”, and
    - (ii) omit paragraph (b); and
  - (b) in subsection (2), omit “, the funding authority”.
- 178 In section 573 (meaning of expressions relating to alteration etc. of premises or character of schools)—
  - (a) in subsection (2), omit the words from “and “alterations”” onwards; and
  - (b) omit subsections (4) to (6).
- 179 Omit section 575 (meaning of expressions relating to employment).
- 180 In section 576 (meaning of “parent”)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), for “the provisions mentioned in subsection (2)” substitute “ section 499(8) ”; and
  - (b) omit subsection (2).
- 181 Omit section 577 (minor authorities).
- 182 In section 578 (meaning of “the Education Acts”), insert at the appropriate place—  
“ the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- 183 In section 579 (general interpretation)—
  - (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) at the appropriate place insert—  
““assist”, in relation to any school, institution or university, shall be construed in accordance with subsections (5) to (7) below;”,
    - (ii) omit the definitions of “the appropriate further education funding council”, “exclude”, “governing body” (and “governors”), “the local education authority”, “reception class” and “relevant age group”,
    - (iii) in the definition of “proprietor”, for “a county, voluntary or grant-maintained school,” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school, ”, and
    - (iv) for the definition of “trust deed” substitute—  
““trust deed” includes any instrument (other than an instrument of government) regulating the constitution of the school’s governing body or the maintenance, management or conduct of the school;”,  
and
  - (b) omit subsection (3).
- 184 In Schedule 1 (pupil referral units)—
  - (a) in paragraph 6—
    - (i) for sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) substitute—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(1) In relation to every pupil referral unit, the local education authority, the management committee (where applicable) and the teacher in charge shall exercise their functions with a view to securing that the curriculum for the unit satisfies the requirements of section 351(1) (balanced and broadly based curriculum).

(2) Regulations may make provision for the determination and organisation of the curriculum in relation to every pupil referral unit, including provision as to making, and keeping up to date, a written statement of the policy in relation to that curriculum for the unit; and such regulations may require—

- (a) the local education authority, the management committee (where applicable), or the teacher in charge to exercise, or
- (b) such of them as may be prescribed to collaborate with each other in exercising,

such functions in relation to the curriculum as may be prescribed.”, and

(ii) in sub-paragraph (3)(a), for “or under any enactment referred to in sub-paragraph (2)” substitute “ sub-paragraph (1) or (2) ”;

(b) omit paragraphs 12 and 13; and

(c) in paragraph 15(2)(c) omit the words “(including grant-maintained schools)”.

**Commencement Information**

**183** Sch. 30 para. 184 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 184 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 184(a) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 184 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

185 Schedules 2 to 25A shall be omitted.

**Commencement Information**

**184** Sch. 30 para. 185 partly in force; Sch. 30 para. 185 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 185 in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998 and 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pts. I and IV; Sch. 30 para. 185 in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 185 in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7); Sch. 30 para. 185 in force for certain purposes at 1.11.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

186 (1) Schedule 27 (making and maintenance of statements under section 324) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph 3—

(a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “the maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school” substitute “ the maintained school ”; and

<sup>F270</sup>(b) .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In paragraph 8(1)(a), for “a maintained, grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school” substitute “ a maintained school ”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F270** Sch. 30 para. 186(2)(b) repealed (1.1.2002 for E. and 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1)(6), Sch. 8 Pt. 2 para. 23(4), Sch. 9; S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (which S.I. was amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

- 187 Schedule 28 (government and conduct of grant-maintained special schools) shall be omitted.
- 188 In Schedule 31 (agreed syllabuses of religious education), omit paragraphs 11 and 15.
- 189 The following provisions shall be omitted—
- (a) Schedule 32 (reduction of standard number for admission of pupils);
  - (b) Schedule 33 (admission appeals);
  - (c) Schedule 33A (children to whom section 411A(2) applies: appeals by governing bodies);
  - (d) Schedule 33B (restrictions on admissions to grant-maintained schools);
  - (e) in Schedule 37 (consequential amendments), paragraphs 9, 27, 33, 37(a), 41, 42(4)(b), 75, 82(1)(b) and the “and” preceding it, 82(2)(a), 82(2)(c) and the “and” preceding it, 82(3), 96(2), 97, 102, 103, 104(3), 105 to 108, 110(2) and (3)(a), 122 and 125(c) and (d);
  - (f) in Schedule 39 (transitional provisions and savings), paragraphs 2(3) and 15; and
  - (g) Schedule 40 (transitory provisions).

#### Commencement Information

**I85** Sch. 30 para. 189 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 189 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 189(g) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I; Sch. 30 para. 189(a)-(d) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); Sch. 30 para. 189(e) (f) in force at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### School Inspections Act 1996 (c.57)

- 190 The School Inspections Act 1996 shall be amended as follows.
- 191 (1) Section 10 (inspection of certain schools by registered inspectors) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)—
- (a) omit “(4) or”;
  - (b) for paragraph (a) substitute—  
“(a) community, foundation and voluntary schools;”;
  - (c) omit paragraph (b);
  - (d) for paragraph (c) substitute—  
“(c) community and foundation special schools;”;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(e) for paragraph (d) substitute—

“(d) special schools which are not community or foundation special schools but are for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 342 of the <sup>M167</sup>Education Act 1996 (approval of special schools);”.

(3) Omit subsection (4).

(4) For subsection (4B) substitute—

“(4B) In subsection (4A) a “closing school” means—

- (a) a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school in respect of which proposals to discontinue the school have been approved, adopted or determined under Schedule 6 or 7 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
- (b) a foundation or voluntary school in respect of which the governing body have given notice of discontinuance under section 30 of that Act;
- (c) a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school in respect of which the Secretary of State has given a direction to discontinue the school under section 19 or 32 of that Act;
- (d) a city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts in respect of which notice of termination of an agreement made under section 482 of the <sup>M168</sup>Education Act 1996 has been given;
- (e) a special school which is not a community or foundation special school but which is for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 342 of the Education Act 1996 and which the proprietor has decided to close; or
- (f) an independent school falling within subsection (3)(e) which the proprietor has decided to close.”

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M167** 1996 c. 56.

**M168** 1996 c. 56.

192 (1) Section 11 (application of provisions for inspections) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), for the words from “county” onwards substitute “ community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special schools. ”

(3) In subsection (4)—

- (a) in the definition of “appropriate appointing authority”, for “aided or special agreement school” substitute “ voluntary aided ”; and
- (b) for the definition of “appropriate authority” substitute—

““appropriate authority” means in relation to a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school, the school’s governing body or, if the school does not have a delegated budget within the meaning of section 49 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, the local education authority.”

(4) In subsection (5)—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in paragraph (a), for “paragraph (e),” substitute “ paragraph (d), (e), ”; and
- (b) in paragraph (b), omit “whose governing body does not have a delegated budget”.

#### Commencement Information

**I86** Sch. 30 para. 192 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 192 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 192(4)(b) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)); Sch. 30 para. 192 wholly in force at 1.9.1999 by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

193 In section 15(3)(b) (timing of inspections), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school ”.

194 (1) Section 16 (destination of reports) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) in paragraph (a), omit the words from “and, if” to “of State”; and
- (b) in paragraph (b), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school ”.

(3) In subsection (3)—

- (a) in paragraph (c)—
  - (i) for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school ”, and
  - (ii) <sup>F271</sup> .....
- (b) omit paragraphs (e) and (f).

#### Textual Amendments

**F271** Sch. 30 para. 194(3)(a)(ii) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 215\(2\), 216](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#))

195 (1) Section 17 (special measures by appropriate authority) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (3)—

- (a) in paragraph (b)—
  - (i) for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school ”, and
  - (ii) at the end add “and”; and
- (b) omit paragraph (c).

(3) In subsection (4), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “ a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school ”.

(4) Omit subsection (5)(b) and (c).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) In subsection (7), for the words from “referred to” to “the case may be,” substitute “under section 42 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (governors’ reports),”.
- 196 (1) Section 18 (additional special measures by local education authority) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a), for “a county, voluntary or maintained special school” substitute “a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school”.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b), for “an aided or special agreement school” substitute “a voluntary aided school”.
- 197 In section 20(3) (destination of reports)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “a maintained or grant-maintained special school” substitute “a community or foundation special school”; and
- (b) omit “the funding authority, or”.

#### Commencement Information

**I87** Sch. 30 para. 197 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 197 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 197(b) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-6, [Sch. 4](#)); Sch. 30 para. 197 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

- 198 In section 21(4) (special measures by appropriate authority)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “a maintained or grant-maintained special school” substitute “a community or foundation special school”; and
- (b) omit “the funding authority, or”.

#### Commencement Information

**I88** Sch. 30 para. 198 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 198 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 198(b) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-6, [Sch. 4](#)); Sch. 30 para. 198 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5, [Schs. 5-7](#)).

- 199 (1) Section 23 (inspection of religious education) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) It shall be the duty of the governing body of any voluntary or foundation school, which has been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 by the Secretary of State as having a religious character, to secure that—
- (a) denominational education given to any pupils, and
- (b) the content of the school’s collective worship (required by section 70 of that Act),
- are inspected under this section.”
- (3) Omit subsections (2) and (3).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In subsection (4)(ii), for “section 385 of that Act” substitute “ section 70 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ”.
- (5) In subsection (5)(a), for “a controlled school” substitute “ a voluntary controlled school ”.
- (6) In subsection (8)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (1),”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (b), omit “if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (2),”.
- 200 Omit the following sections—
- (a) sections 26 to 30 (miscellaneous powers over schools requiring special measures);
  - (b) sections 31 to 41 (education associations); and
  - (c) section 44 (stamp duty on transfer under section 38 or 39).
- 201 In section 45 (orders and regulations)—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit the words “(except an order under section 38)”; and
  - (b) in subsection (2), omit the words “(except an order under section 31, 33, or 39)”.
- 202 (1) Section 46(1) (interpretation) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In the definition of “Church in Wales school” etc, for “section 311(1)” onwards substitute “ section 142 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998; ”.
- (3) In the definition of “delegated budget”, for “section 116” onwards substitute “ section 49 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998; ”.
- (4) Omit the definition of “the transfer date”.

#### Commencement Information

**I89** Sch. 30 para. 202 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 202 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 202(3)(4) in force at 1.4.1999 by [S.I. 1999/1016](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-6](#), [Sch. 4](#)); Sch. 30 para. 202 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 3-5](#), [Schs. 5-7](#)).

- 203 In paragraph 1 of Schedule 3 (inspections under section 10), for the definition of “appropriate authority” substitute—
- ““appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school, the school’s governing body or, if the school does not have a delegated budget within the meaning of section 49 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, the local education authority;
  - (b) in relation to a maintained nursery school, the local education authority;
  - (c) in the case of a school falling within paragraph (d), (e), (f) or (g) of section 10(3), the proprietor of the school;”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 204 In paragraph 3 of Schedule 4 (inspections of denominational education)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (2), for the words from “governors and” to “and to such” substitute “governors, to the local education authority and to such”, and
  - (b) <sup>[F272]</sup> in sub-paragraph (5), for the words from “means” onwards substitute “means the governors’ report under section 42 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.”]

#### Textual Amendments

**F272** Sch. 30 para. 204(b) repealed (1.10.2002 for E. otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with Sch.)

- 205 Schedule 5 (education associations) shall be omitted.
- 206 In Schedule 6 (consequential amendments), omit paragraph 7.

#### *Education Act 1997 (c.44)*

- 207 The Education Act 1997 shall be amended as follows.
- 208 Omit the following provisions—
- (a) sections 2 and 3 (school discipline);
  - (b) sections 6 to 8 (exclusion of pupils);
  - (c) Part III (school admissions).

#### Commencement Information

**I90** Sch. 30 para. 208 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 208 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 208(c) in force at 1.2.1999 for certain purposes by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. III; Sch. 30 para. 208 (c) in force otherwise at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1060, art. 2(3), Sch. 3; Sch. 30 para. 208 in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 209 In section 15 (baseline assessments: interpretation), in the definition of “maintained primary school”, for paragraphs (a) to (c) substitute—
- “(a) a community, foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) a community or foundation special school (other than one established in a hospital),”.
- 210 In section 16(5) (adoption of baseline assessment schemes), for “a school which is maintained by a local education authority,” substitute “a maintained primary school,”.
- 211 In section 17 (assessment of pupils)—
- (a) in subsection (5), for paragraph (b) substitute—
    - “(b) the local education authority by whom the school is maintained,”; and
  - (b) in subsection (7)(a), omit the words from “(except” to “school)”.
- 212 In section 18 (regulations for Chapter I of Part IV)—
- (a) in subsection (1)(b), omit the words from “(except” to “school)”;
  - (b) in subsection (2)(a), omit the words from “(in” to “school)”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 213 In section 19 (school performance targets), for subsection (3) substitute—  
“(3) In this section “maintained school” means—  
(a) a community, foundation or voluntary school, or  
(b) a community or foundation special school (other than one established in a hospital).”
- 214 In section 23 (functions of Qualifications and Curriculum Authority)—  
(a) <sup>F273</sup> .....  
(b) in subsection (5), in the definition of “maintained school”, for paragraphs (a) to (c) substitute—  
“(a) any community, foundation or voluntary school, and  
(b) any community or foundation special school.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F273** Sch. 30 para. 214(a) repealed (1.10.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 2 (with Sch.)

- 215 In section 29(3) (functions of Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales), for the words from “receiving nursery” onwards substitute “ under compulsory school age. ”
- 216 In section 42 (miscellaneous amendments relating to school inspections), omit the words “and the Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996”.
- 217 In section 43(2) (provision of careers education)—  
(a) for paragraph (a) substitute—  
“(a) community, foundation and voluntary schools;”;  
(b) omit paragraph (b); and  
(c) for paragraph (c) substitute—  
“(c) community or foundation special schools (other than those established in hospitals);”.
- 218 Omit section 50 (recoupment by local education authority of costs of teachers’ premature retirement).
- 219 In section 52 (commencement of compulsory school age), omit subsections (4) and (5).
- 220 In section 57 (minor and consequential amendments, repeals etc), omit subsections (2) and (3).
- 221 In section 58(4) (commencement) omit “section 50,”.
- 222 Omit the following provisions—  
(a) Schedules 1 to 3;  
(b) in Schedule 6, paragraph 5.

#### Commencement Information

**I91** Sch. 30 para. 222 wholly in force at 1.9.1999; Sch. 30 para. 222 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); Sch. 30 para. 222(b) in force at 1.10.1998 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt. I and Sch. 30 para. 222(a) in force for certain purposes at 1.2.1999 by Sch. 1 Pt. III of the same S.I.; Sch. 30 para. 222(a) in

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3** (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); **Sch. 30 para. 222** in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

- 223 In Schedule 7 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 15 to 22, 25, 31 to 35, 40 and 45 to 51.

#### Commencement Information

- I92** **Sch. 30 para. 223** wholly in force at 1.9.1999; **Sch. 30 para. 223** not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); **Sch. 30 para. 223** in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3** (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); **Sch. 30 para. 223** in force at 1.9.1999 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

#### *Education (Schools) Act 1997 (c.59)*

- 224 In section 2 of the Education (Schools) Act 1997 (transitional arrangements for existing assisted pupils), after subsection (6) add—

“(7) Nothing in subsection (1) shall be taken as prejudicing the operation of any regulations under section 3 by virtue of which assisted places authorised to be provided under that subsection by a former participating school may instead be so provided by another such school or a new school created on the merger of such a school with another school.”

#### *Audit Commission Act 1998 (c.18)*

- 225 In section 36(3) of the Audit Commission Act 1998 (studies at request of educational bodies)—
- (a) for the words from “corporation, a” to “school” substitute “corporation or further education corporation”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (b), omit “or governing body”.

## SCHEDULE 31

Section 140(3).

### REPEALS

#### Extent Information

- E12** **Sch. 31:** the entry relating to the Education (Scotland) Act 1998 extends to Scotland only see s. 145(9).

#### Commencement Information

- I93** **Sch. 31** partly in force; **Sch. 31** not in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(3); **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 1.10.1998, 1.2.1999 and 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pts. I, III and IV**; **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 10.3.1999 by S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**; **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 1.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3** (with arts. 3-6, Sch. 4); **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7); **Sch. 31** in force for certain purposes at 1.11.1999 by S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-5, Schs. 5-7).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Chapter or number	Short title	Extent of repeal
1958 c. 51.	Public Records Act 1958.	In Schedule 1, in Part II of the Table at the end of paragraph 3, the entry relating to the Schools Funding Council for Wales.
1963 c. 33.	London Government Act 1963.	Section 31.
1972 c. 11.	Superannuation Act 1972.	In Schedule 1, the entries relating to the Funding Agency for Schools and the Schools Funding Council for Wales.
1972 c. 70.	Local Government Act 1972.	In section 134(1) and (2), the words “or of a grant-maintained school”.  In section 177(1), the words from the beginning to “committees),”.
1974 c. 7.	Local Government Act 1974.	In Schedule 5, paragraph 5(1).
1975 c. 24.	House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975.	In Part III of Schedule 1, the entries “Any member of an education association in receipt of remuneration”, “Any member of the Funding Agency for Schools in receipt of remuneration”, and “Any member of the Funding Council for Wales in receipt of remuneration”.
1975 c. 65.	Sex Discrimination Act 1975.	In sections 22, in the Table, paragraph 3A.  Section 23C.  In section 25, in subsections (2) and (4), “, 23C”; and in subsection (6), in paragraph (c)(i) “3A” and paragraph (e).  In Schedule 2, paragraph 1.
1976 c. 74.	Race Relations Act 1976.	In section 17, in the Table, paragraph 3A.  Section 18C.  In section 19, in subsections (2) and (4) “, 18C” wherever occurring and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		in subsection (6), in paragraph (c)(i) “3A” and paragraph (e).
1977 c. 49.	National Health Service Act 1977.	In section 5, in subsections (1)(a) and (1A)(a) the words “or at grant-maintained schools”.
1980 c. 44.	Education (Scotland) Act 1980.	In section 75A(9A), the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (b).
1981 c. 67.	Acquisition of Land Act 1981.	In section 17(4), paragraphs (ab) and (ac).
1983 c. 2.	Representation of the People Act 1983.	In Schedule 1, in paragraph 22(1)(i) the words “a grant-maintained school”.
1984 c. 55.	Building Act 1984.	In section 4(1)(a), in paragraph (ii) the words “under section 39 or 44 of the Education Act 1996 or” and paragraphs (iii) and (iv).
1986 c. 61.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986.	Section 49(3)(ba).
1988 c. 40.	Education Reform Act 1988.	Sections 166 and 167. In section 197(7), the words “or grant-maintained”. In section 236(1), the entry relating to section 219. In Schedule 8, paragraph 6(3) and in paragraph 8(4) the words “given with the consent of the Treasury”.
1989 c. 41.	Children Act 1989.	In Schedule 12, paragraphs 11, 13, 15, 16, 18 to 22, 30, 31 and 36. In Schedule 9, in paragraph 3, sub-paragraph (1)(f), and in sub-paragraph (3) the definition of “grant maintained”.
1991 c. 49.	School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991.	In section 1, in subsection (5) the words from “and, where” to “that subsection” and subsection (6). In section 2, subsection (2), in subsection (4), in paragraph (a) the words “, in the case of a grant-



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

1991 No. 2.	Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991.	<p>maintained school,” and the words from “and provide” to the end and paragraph (h), in subsection (5) the words from “and, where” to “(2) above” and in subsection (6)(a) the words from “or, in” to “such schools.”</p> <p>In section 3, subsections (4) and (5) and in subsection (6), the words “or (5)”.</p> <p>Section 5.</p> <p>Section 6(2).</p> <p>Section 7(5).</p> <p>Section 9.</p> <p>In section 10, in subsection (1) the definition of “Church of England voluntary school” and subsection (2).</p>
1992 c. 13.	Further and Higher Education Act 1992.	<p>In section 2(6), the words “grant-maintained schools.”</p> <p>In section 16, in subsection (2), the words “or any grant-maintained school” wherever occurring, and in subsection (3)(a) the words “or is a grant-maintained school”.</p> <p>In section 21, in subsection (1) paragraph (a) and the words “(b) in any other case,” and in subsection (2) the words “orders and”, “grant-maintained school or other” and “grant-maintained schools or other”.</p> <p>In section 26(1), the words “or was a grant-maintained school”.</p> <p>In section 54(1)(b), the words “grant-maintained school.”</p> <p>In Schedule 8, paragraphs 61 to 64.</p>

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

1993 c. 10.	Charities Act 1993.	In Schedule 2, paragraph (d).
1994 c. 23.	Value Added Tax Act 1994.	In Schedule 9, Group 6, Note (1), paragraph (a)(v) and (vii).
1994 c. 30.	Education Act 1994.	In section 11A, the words “grant-maintained schools,”. Section 12(4) and (5). Section 18(1)(a).
1995 c. 50.	Disability Discrimination Act 1995.	Section 19(6)(c) and (d).
1996 c. 18.	Employment Rights Act 1996.	In section 50(9)(b) the words “grant-maintained school,”.
1996 c. 50.	Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.	Section 5.  Schedule 1.
1996 c. 56.	Education Act 1996.	In section 1(2), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it. Section 14(5). In section 16(1), paragraph (c) and the “and” preceding it. Sections 20 to 28. In section 29, subsection (2) and in subsection (3) the words “and the funding authority”. Section 30. . Part II Part III. In section 312(4)(a), the words “or grant-maintained schools in their area”. In section 317(3)(a), the words “, the funding authority”. Section 330. Sections 338 to 341. Sections 343 to 346. In section 356(5)(a)(ii), the words “(except in the case of grant-maintained schools)”. Section 357(2).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

In section 366, in subsection (1)(b) the words from “where” to “special school,” and subsection (5).

Sections 370 to 374.

Sections 376 to 389.

Section 391(8) and (9).

Section 392(4).

Section 393.

Section 404(3).

In section 408, subsections (1)(b), (3) and (4)(b) and (c).

In section 409(3)(b), the words “other than grant-maintained schools”.

Sections 411 to 432.

Sections 433(4).

Section 434(4)(c)(ii).

Section 436.

In section 437, in subsections (5) and (6) the words “or grant-maintained” wherever occurring.

In section 438(6)(a)(i), the words “and is not a grant-maintained school”.

In section 439, in subsections (3), (5) and (6) the words “or grant-maintained” wherever occurring.

In section 440, in subsection (2)(a) the words “or grant-maintained school” and in subsection (4)(a) the words “and is not a grant-maintained school”.

In section 444(4)(b), the words “or the funding authority”. Section 448.

In section 451, in subsection (1) the words “Subject to subsection (5),” and subsection (5).. In section 456(1), the words

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

from “, other than” to  
“section 231(8)”.

In section 457, in  
subsection (1) the words from  
“This subsection” onwards  
and in subsection (3) the  
words “other than a grant-  
maintained school”.

In section 458, in  
subsection (1) the words  
“or governing body”,  
subsections (2)(a) and (3),  
and in subsection (4)(b) the  
words “or to the governing  
body of a grant-maintained  
school”.

In section 463, paragraph (c)  
and the “or” preceding it.

Section 490(1)(a).

Sections 500 to 505.

Section 509(5)(a).

In section 510, in  
subsection (1)(a) and (c)  
the words “or at a grant-  
maintained school” wherever  
occurring; in subsection (3)  
(a) the words “or a grant-  
maintained school”; in  
subsection (4)(a) the words  
“, at a grant-maintained  
school”; in subsection (5)(a)  
the words “grant-maintained  
school or”.

Sections 516 and 517.

Section 520(3).

In section 521(4),  
paragraph (b) and the “and”  
preceding it.

In section 524(3),  
paragraph (b) and the “or”  
preceding it.

In section 525(3), the words  
“or a grant-maintained  
school”.

Section 534.

Section 536.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

In section 537(7)(a), the words “or which is a grant-maintained school”.

Section 539.

In section 542, in subsection (1) the words “and of grant-maintained schools” and subsection (3).

In section 544, in subsection (1) the words from “(or,” to “authority)” and subsection (3)(b).

In section 545(2), paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding it. Section 546(2) (b).

In section 547(2), paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding it.

Sections 549 and 550.

In section 550B(2), the words “(b) a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school;”.

Section 551(2)(b).

Section 552.

In section 560(6), the words “or the governing body of a grant-maintained school”.

Section 563(3)(b).

Section 567.

In section 568, in subsection (3) the words “section 517(6)” and subsection (5)(b) and the “or” preceding it.

In section 570, subsection (1) (b) and in subsection (2) the words “, the funding authority”.

In section 573, in subsection (2) the words from “and “alterations”” onwards, and subsections (4) to (6).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Section 575.

Section 576(2).

Section 577.

In section 579, in subsection (1) the definitions of “the appropriate further education funding council”, “exclude”, “governing body” (and “governors”), “the local education authority”, “reception class” and “relevant age group” and subsection (3).

In Schedule 1, paragraphs 12 and 13 and in paragraph 15(2)(c) the words “(including grant-maintained schools)”.

Schedules 2 to 25A.

Schedule 28.

In Schedule 31, paragraphs 11 and 15.

Schedules 32 to 33B.

In Schedule 37, paragraphs 9, 27, 33, 37(a), 41, 42(4)(b), 75, 82(1)(b) and the “and” preceding it, 82(2)(a), 82(2)(c) and the “and” preceding it, 82(3), 96(2), 97, 102, 103, 104(3), 105 to 108, 110(2) and (3)(a), 122 and 125(c) and (d).

In Schedule 39, paragraphs 2(3) and 15.

Schedule 40.

1996 c. 57.

School Inspections Act 1996. In section 9(3)(a), the words “are exceptional and”.

In section 10, in subsection (3) the words “(4) or” and paragraph (b) and subsection (4).

In section 11(5)(b), the words “whose governing body does not have a delegated budget”.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

In section 16, in subsection (1)(a) the words from “and, if” to “of State” and subsection (3)(e) and (f).

Section 17(3)(c) and (5)(b) and (c).

In section 20(3), the words “the funding authority, or”.

In section 21(4), the words “the funding authority, or”.

In section 23, subsections (2) and (3) and in subsection (8), in paragraph (a) the words “if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (1),” and in paragraph (b) the words “if the inspection is conducted by virtue of subsection (2),”.

## Part II

Section 44.

In section 45, in subsection (1) the words “(except an order under section 38)” and in subsection (2) the words “(except an order under section 31, 33, or 39)”.

In section 46(1), the definition of “the transfer date”.

Schedule 5.

Schedule 6, paragraph 7.

Sections 2 and 3.

Sections 6 to 8.

## Part III

In section 17(7)(a), the words from “(except” to “school)”.

In section 18, in subsection (1)(b) the words from “(except” to “school)” and in subsection (2)(a) the words from “(in” to “school)”.

1997 c. 44.

Education Act 1997.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

		In section 42, the words “and the Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996”.
		Section 43(2)(b).
		Section 50.
		Section 52(4) and (5).
		Section 57(2) and (3).
		In section 58(4), “section 50”.
		Schedules 1 to 3.
		In Schedule 6, paragraph 5.
		In Schedule 7, paragraphs 15 to 22, 25, 31 to 35, 40 and 45 to 51.
1997 c. 59.	Education (Schools) Act 1997.	Section 6(1).
		In section 7, in subsection (3) (a) “section 6(1)”, and in subsection (4)(a) “(1) and”.
1998 c. 18.	Audit Commission Act 1998.	In section 36, in subsection (1) the entries relating to the Funding Agency for Schools, the Schools Funding Council for Wales and the governing body of a grant-maintained school, and in subsection (3) (b) the words “or governing body”.
		In Schedule 3, paragraphs 25 and 32.

---



*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

*Changes to legislation:* School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 32

Section 144.

### TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

#### PART I

#### FUNDING

##### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Part of this Schedule—
- “the 1996 Act” means the <sup>M169</sup>Education Act 1996;
  - “the appointed day”, in relation to any provision of this Schedule, means such day as may be appointed for the purposes of that provision by an order made by the Secretary of State.

#### Marginal Citations

M169 1996 c. 56.

##### *Continued operation of GMS grants provisions*

- 2 (1) Subject to the provisions of this paragraph, the GMS grants provisions shall continue to have effect on and after the appointed day in relation to—
- (a) any payments of maintenance grant under section 244 or 250 of the 1996 Act in respect of any financial year (or part of such a year) beginning before that day; and
  - (b) any payments of capital or special purpose grants under section 245, 246, 251 or 252 of that Act made before that day.
- (2) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for any functions of the funding authority under the GMS grants provisions—
    - (i) to be discharged instead by the Secretary of State as from a date specified in the regulations, or
    - (ii) to be discharged instead by local education authorities as from the appointed day (either subject to obtaining the Secretary of State’s consent or otherwise); and
  - (b) for any of those provisions to have effect, for any purposes specified in the regulations, with such modifications as are so specified.
- (3) Regulations under sub-paragraph (2) shall not authorise a local education authority to impose any requirement under section 247(1) of that Act (as it has effect by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)); but the Secretary of State may by order—
- (a) impose such a requirement; or
  - (b) waive or remove such a requirement even though a local education authority is by such regulations also authorised to do so.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In this paragraph “the GMS grants provisions” means sections 244 to 254 and 256 to 258 of the 1996 Act and any regulations in force under any of those provisions immediately before the appointed day.

**Commencement Information**

**I94** Sch. 32 in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(4); by S.I. 1999/531, art. 2 it is provided that the appointed day for the purpose of Sch. 32 para. 2(1) and (4) shall be 1.4.1999

*Existing loans*

- 3 (1) Any loan made under section 255 of the 1996 Act (loans to governing bodies) shall not be affected by the repeal of that section by this Act.
- (2) Where such a loan was made by the funding authority, any rights or liabilities of the authority in respect of the loan shall become rights or liabilities of the Secretary of State on the appointed day.

**Commencement Information**

**I95** Sch. 32 in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(4); by S.I. 1999/531, art. 2(2) it is provided that the appointed day for the purpose of Sch. 32 para. 3 shall be 1.4.1999

*Grants by Secretary of State in respect of planned expenditure*

- 4 (1) Regulations may provide for the payment by the Secretary of State of grants to—
- (a) the governing bodies of schools to which this paragraph applies, or
  - (b) local education authorities,
- in respect of relevant expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them.
- (2) Regulations under this paragraph may—
- (a) in relation to grants made to the governing bodies of any such schools, make provision corresponding to sub-paragraphs (6) and (7) of paragraph 5 of Schedule 3; and
  - (b) in relation to grants made to the governing bodies of voluntary aided schools, make in addition provision corresponding to sub-paragraphs (8) to (10) of paragraph 5 of that Schedule.
- (3) This paragraph applies to a school if immediately before the appointed day—
- (a) the school was a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the 1996 Act, or
  - (b) proposals for the establishment of the school fell to be implemented in accordance with section 215 of that Act.
- (4) Each of the following provisions of Schedule 22, namely—
- (a) paragraph 1(1)(d),
  - (b) paragraph 2(1)(d), and
  - (c) paragraph 3(1)(e),
- shall (subject to sub-paragraph (5) below) apply in relation to any grant made by virtue of this paragraph as if it were such a grant as is mentioned in that provision.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Sub-paragraph (4) does not apply to any grant made by virtue of this paragraph to the governing body of a voluntary aided school.
- (6) In this paragraph “relevant expenditure” means such expenditure (being expenditure arising out of an obligation incurred or decision made before the appointed day) as may be prescribed.

#### Commencement Information

**I96** Sch. 32 in force at Royal Assent see s. 145(4); by S.I. 1999/531, art. 2(3) and by S.I. 1999/1498, art. 2 it is provided that the appointed days for Sch. 32, para. 4(3) and (6) for certain purposes shall be 1.4.1999 and 1.9.1999 respectively  
by S.I. 1999/2221, art. 2 it is provided that the appointed day for Sch. 32 para. 4(3) and (6) for certain purposes shall be 1.9.1999

#### *Deferment of governing body's right to delegated budget*

- 5 (1) A maintained school falling within section 49(1) shall not have a delegated budget as from the day on which section 49 comes into force if—
  - (a) the governing body's right to a delegated budget has been suspended under section 117 of the <sup>M170</sup>Education Act 1996 (suspension of financial delegation for mismanagement etc.) or section 28 of the <sup>M171</sup>School Inspections Act 1996 (suspension of right to delegated budget); and
  - (b) that suspension has not been previously revoked with effect from that or any earlier day.
- (2) Such a school shall, however, have a delegated budget as from the day with effect from which that suspension is revoked.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order determine that a relevant school shall not have a delegated budget as from the day on which section 49 comes into force where he considers that it would not be expedient for the school to have such a budget as from that day for reasons connected with—
  - (a) the financial position, or
  - (b) the financial management,of the school.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State makes an order under sub-paragraph (3) in relation to a school—
  - (a) for the purposes of Part II of this Act the right of the governing body to a delegated budget shall be treated as if it had been suspended by the local education authority under paragraph 1 of Schedule 15 on the day on which section 49 comes into force;
  - (b) paragraphs 2 to 4 (but not 3(1)(a)) of that Schedule shall apply to any such suspension; and
  - (c) the school shall have a delegated budget as from the day with effect from which that suspension is revoked.
- (5) Any reference in any of sections 54 to 57 to any suspension of a school's delegated budget under Schedule 15 includes a reference to—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) any suspension of a school’s delegated budget by virtue of sub-paragraph (1); and
  - (b) (in accordance with sub-paragraph (4)), any such suspension by virtue of sub-paragraph (3).
- (6) Where the day on which section 49 comes into force is earlier than the day appointed under section 20(7) any reference in this paragraph to a maintained school is a reference to a school which is (within the meaning of the <sup>M172</sup>Education Act 1996)—
- (a) a school maintained by a local education authority, or
  - (b) a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school,
- and to which section 49 applies in accordance with regulations under section 144(1).
- (7) In this paragraph—
- (a) “relevant school” means a maintained school which immediately before the day on which section 49 comes into force was a grant-maintained or grant-maintained special school within the meaning of the <sup>M173</sup>Education Act 1996; and
  - (b) references to a school having a delegated budget or to a governing body’s right to such a budget shall be construed in accordance with section 49(7).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C211** Sch. 32 para. 5(5)(a) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg. 5(2)

**Marginal Citations**

**M170** 1996 c. 56.

**M171** 1996 c. 57.

**M172** 1996 c. 56.

**M173** 1996 c. 56.

## PART II

### OTHER PROVISIONS

#### *Limit on class sizes*

- 6 (1) The transitional provision which may be made for the purposes of section 1 by regulations under section 144(1) includes provision with respect to any relevant time—
- (a) for disapplying to any extent in relation to existing maintained schools (whether or not subject to compliance with any prescribed requirements) section 411(6), 416(1) or 426(1) of the <sup>M174</sup>Education Act 1996 (provisions about admission numbers);
  - (b) for otherwise modifying any of the provisions (whether statutory provisions or articles of government) which are relevant to the determination or publication of the arrangements—
    - (i) for the admission of pupils to such schools, or
    - (ii) for appeals by parents against decisions taken in relation to the admission of pupils to such schools,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- or to the procedure relating to such appeals;
- (c) for requiring or authorising bodies responsible for determining such arrangements to determine and publish fresh arrangements, subject to such consultation as may be prescribed, where arrangements previously determined (or previously determined and published) by them are to any extent inconsistent with the provisions mentioned in paragraph (b) as they have effect in accordance with the regulations.
- (2) Regulations made in pursuance of paragraph (b) of sub-paragraph (1) may, in particular, modify the provisions mentioned in that paragraph so that they apply in relation to existing maintained schools with the addition of provisions whose purposes correspond to those of any of paragraphs 6(5), 10(5) and 11 of Schedule 23 to this Act.
- (3) In this paragraph—
- “existing maintained school” means—
- (a) any county or voluntary school, or
- (b) any grant-maintained school,
- within the meaning of the <sup>M175</sup>Education Act 1996;
- “relevant time”, in relation to an existing maintained school, means any time after the coming into force of regulations under section 1 by virtue of which any limit on class sizes is to apply, or be varied, in relation to the school.

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M174</sup> 1996 c. 56.

<sup>M175</sup> 1996 c. 56.

*School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991*

- 7 The amendment made by section 13 of this Act shall not affect the operation of section 3 of the <sup>M176</sup>School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991, as in force immediately before that amendment comes into force, in relation to any order made under section 3 of that Act which—
- (a) is then in force; and
- (b) relates to a grant-maintained school which becomes a foundation or voluntary aided school on the appointed day in accordance with Schedule 2 to this Act;
- and any such order may be varied or revoked accordingly.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

<sup>C212</sup> Sch. 32 para. 7 applied with modification (from 1.9.1998 to 1.9.1999) by *S.I. 1998/2115*, **regs.2,3** and 4

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M176</sup> 1991 c. 49.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Orders for purposes of section 20(5)*

- 8 The Secretary of State may only make an order under section 20(5) where he considers it appropriate to do so on an application made for the purpose by—
- (a) the former maintaining authority (within the meaning of that provision), or
  - (b) the local education authority in whose area the school in question will be situated immediately before the appointed day,
- and received by him not later than 30th November 1998.

*Notice by trustees to terminate former voluntary school's occupation of land*

- 9 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) at any time before the appointed day, whether before or after the date on which this Act is passed, any trustees (being entitled to do so) have given to the governing body of a former voluntary school a notice which is effective to terminate, on or after that day, the school's occupation of any land held by the trustees for the purposes of the school; and
  - (b) the termination of the school's occupation of that land would have the result that it was not reasonably practicable for the school to continue to be conducted at its existing site.
- (2) Paragraph 8(2) of Schedule 22 shall apply in relation to the land to which such a notice relates as it applies in relation to the land to which a notice falling within section 30(10) relates.
- (3) Section 30(12) and (13) shall apply, with any necessary modifications, for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(b) as they apply for the purposes of section 30(10)(b).
- (4) In this paragraph “former voluntary school” means—
- (a) any voluntary school, or
  - (b) any grant-maintained school which was a voluntary school immediately before becoming grant-maintained or was established by promoters,
- within the meaning of the <sup>M177</sup>Education Act 1996, which on the appointed day becomes a foundation or voluntary school within the meaning of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M177</sup> 1996 c. 56.

*Transfer of sites provided under sections 60 and 61 of the Education Act 1996*

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) before the appointed day a site was provided for a school by a local education authority under section 60 or 61 of the <sup>M178</sup>Education Act 1996 (obligation of LEAs to provide new sites and buildings for voluntary schools); but
  - (b) no conveyance was made in respect of that site under section 60(2) or (as the case may be) section 61(2) of that Act before that day.
- (2) Where the site was provided under section 60 of that Act, sub-paragraphs (3) to (11) (but not (7)(b)) of paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 to this Act shall apply in relation to the provision of that site as if it had been provided under sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:** School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) Where the site was provided under section 61 of that Act, sub-paragraphs (3) to (9) of paragraph 4 of Schedule 3 to this Act shall apply in relation to the provision of that site as if it had been provided under sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph.

---

**Marginal Citations**

M178 1996 c. 56.

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 01/10/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are not valid for this point in time.

**Changes to legislation:**

School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.